

Xerox[®] C305ae, XC2432, ZC364

Color Multifunction Printers

User's Guide

Copyright and trademarks

© 2026 Xerox Corporation. All rights reserved. Xerox® and the Xerox logo are trademarks of Xerox Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. Lexmark® is a trademark of Lexmark International, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Gmail, Android, Google Play, and Google Chrome are trademarks of Google LLC.

Macintosh, macOS, Safari, and AirPrint are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. iCloud is a service mark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Use of the Works with Apple badge means that an accessory has been designed to work specifically with the technology identified in the badge and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.

Microsoft, Microsoft 365, Microsoft Edge, Outlook, and Windows are trademarks of the Microsoft group of companies.

The Mopria™ word mark is a registered and/or unregistered trademark of Mopria Alliance, Inc. in the United States and other countries. Unauthorized use is strictly prohibited.

PCL® is a registered trademark of the Hewlett-Packard Company. PCL is Hewlett-Packard Company's designation of a set of printer commands (language) and functions included in its printer products. This printer is intended to be compatible with the PCL language. This means the printer recognizes PCL commands used in various application programs, and that the printer emulates the functions corresponding to the commands.

PostScript is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Wi-Fi®, Wi-Fi Direct®, and Wi-Fi Protected Access® are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®. WPA™, WPA2™, and Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ are trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

BR42451

Contents

Copyright and trademarks	2
Safety information	8
Conventions.....	8
Product statements	8
Learn about the printer	13
Finding information about the printer.....	13
Finding the printer serial number.....	14
Printer configurations	15
Using the control panel	16
Home screen icons.....	17
Customizing the home screen	19
Changing the language of the on-screen keyboard.....	19
Colors of the indicator light	19
Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass.....	20
Locating the security slot	20
Selecting paper	21
Additional printer features and support.....	27
Set up, install, and configure.....	30
Selecting a location for the printer	30
Printer ports and socket	31
Xerox Easy Assist (XEA)	33
Configuring the email SMTP settings.....	37
Configuring apps and solutions.....	47
Setting up and using the accessibility features	49
Setting up the printer to fax	57
Loading paper and specialty media	66
Installing and updating software, drivers, and firmware	79
Installing hardware options	89
Networking.....	97
Secure the printer	101
Erasing printer memory	101
Erasing data from a storage drive.....	101
Restoring factory default settings.....	101
Statement of Volatility	102
Print.....	105
Printing from a computer	105
Printing from a mobile device.....	106

Printing from a flash drive	107
Managing secure or confidential print jobs	108
Printing a font sample list.....	111
Canceling a print job.....	111
Adjusting toner darkness	111
Copy	113
Making copies.....	113
Copying photos.....	113
Copying on letterhead	113
Copying on both sides of the paper	114
Reducing or enlarging copies.....	114
Collating copies.....	114
Placing separator sheets between copies	115
Copying multiple pages onto a single sheet.....	115
Copying cards	115
Creating a copy shortcut.....	115
Fax	118
Sending a fax	118
Creating a fax destination shortcut	118
Changing the fax resolution	118
Adjusting the fax darkness.....	119
Printing a fax log.....	119
Blocking junk faxes	119
Holding faxes	119
Forwarding a fax.....	119
Scan	121
Scanning to a computer.....	121
Scanning to email.....	121
Scanning to an FTP server	121
Scanning to a network folder.....	121
Configuring a network folder destination	122
Scanning to a flash drive	122
Splitting a scan job	124
Creating scan shortcuts.....	124
Printer menus.....	127
Menu map.....	127
Device.....	128
Print	145
Paper	155
Copy.....	156
Fax.....	160
Email	177
FTP.....	185

USB Drive	189
Network/Ports	195
Security	212
Cloud Services	223
Reports	223
Troubleshooting	225
Supplies Plan	225
Maintain the printer.....	228
Checking the status of parts and supplies	228
Configuring supply notifications	228
Setting up email alerts.....	228
Printing printer reports and logs.....	229
Ordering parts and supplies.....	230
Replacing parts and supplies.....	232
Cleaning printer parts.....	252
Saving energy and paper	262
Moving the printer to another location.....	263
Troubleshoot a problem.....	265
Print quality issues	265
Printer error codes.....	286
Paper jams.....	294
Printing problems	326
Connectivity problems	327
Hardware options problems	328
Issues with supplies.....	329
Paper handling problems.....	338
Emailing problems	340
Faxing problems.....	341
Scanning problems.....	343
System problems	349
Color quality problems.....	351
Contacting customer support.....	353
Recycling and disposal.....	355
All Countries.....	355
North America	355
European Union.....	355
Other Countries	356
Notices.....	358
Product information.....	358
Edition and legal notices.....	358
Specifications.....	359
Environmental and sustainability notices	361
Notices for fax products	364

Notices for wireless products.....	367
Class B device notices.....	370
Other regulatory notices.....	372

Safety information

This chapter contains

Conventions.....	8
Product statements.....	8

1. Safety information

Conventions

Note: A *note* identifies information that could help you.

Warning: A *warning* identifies something that could damage the product hardware or software.

WARNING (in full capitals): A *WARNING* indicates a risk of death or serious injury if not avoided.

CAUTION: A *caution* indicates a potentially hazardous situation that could injure you.

Different types of caution statements include:

	CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY Indicates a risk of injury.
	CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD Indicates a risk of electrical shock.
	CAUTION—HOT SURFACE Indicates a risk of burn if touched.
	CAUTION—PINCH HAZARD Indicates a risk of being caught between moving parts.

Product statements

	CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.
	CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.
	CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY Do not use this product with extension cords, multioutlet power strips, multioutlet extenders, or UPS devices. The power capacity of these types of accessories can be easily overloaded by a laser printer and may result in a risk of fire, property damage, or poor printer performance.
	CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY Only a Lexmark Inline Surge Protector that is properly connected between the printer and the power cord provided with the printer may be used with this product. The use of non-Lexmark surge protection devices may result in a risk of fire, property damage, or poor printer performance.
	CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY To reduce the risk of fire, use only a 26 AWG or larger telecommunications (RJ-11) cord when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network. For users in Australia, the cord must be approved by the Australian Communications and Media Authority.
	CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not place or use this product near water or wet locations.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the power cord, fax feature, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

Do not cut, twist, bind, crush, or place heavy objects on the power cord. Do not subject the power cord to abrasion or stress. Do not pinch the power cord between objects such as furniture and walls. If any of these things happen, a risk of fire or electrical shock results. Inspect the power cord regularly for signs of such problems. Remove the power cord from the electrical outlet before inspecting it.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, make sure that all external connections (such as Ethernet and telephone system connections) are properly installed in their marked plug-in ports.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, if you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

If the printer weight is greater than 20 kg (44 lb), then it may require two or more people to lift it safely.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

When moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Make sure that all doors and trays are closed.
- Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer.
- If the printer has separate floor-standing optional trays or output options attached to it, then disconnect them before moving the printer.
- If the printer has a caster base, then carefully roll it to the new location. Use caution when passing over thresholds and breaks in flooring.
- If the printer does not have a caster base but is configured with optional trays or output options, then remove the output options and lift the printer off the trays. Do not try to lift the printer and any options at the same time.
- Always use the handholds on the printer to lift it.
- Any cart used to move the printer must have a surface able to support the full footprint of the printer.
- Any cart used to move the hardware options must have a surface able to support the dimensions of the options.
- Keep the printer in an upright position.
- Avoid severe jarring movements.

- Make sure that your fingers are not under the printer when you set it down.
- Make sure that there is adequate clearance around the printer.



CAUTION—HOT SURFACE

The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.



CAUTION—PINCH HAZARD

To avoid the risk of a pinch injury, use caution in areas marked with this label. Pinch injuries may occur around moving parts, such as gears, doors, trays, and covers.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

This product uses a laser. Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified in the *User's Guide* may result in hazardous radiation exposure.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

Do not use aerosol cleaners. Aerosol cleaners can cause explosions or fires when used on electromechanical equipment.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

When handling cartridges, for example toner cartridges, avoid skin and eye contact. Eye contact with toner can cause irritation and inflammation. Do not attempt to disassemble the cartridge, which can increase the risk of skin or eye contact.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

The lithium battery in this product is not intended to be replaced. There is a danger of explosion if a lithium battery is incorrectly replaced. Do not recharge, disassemble, or incinerate a lithium battery. Discard used lithium batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.



WARNING

- **INGESTION HAZARD:** This product contains a button cell or coin battery.
- **DEATH** or serious injury can occur if ingested.
- A swallowed button cell or coin battery can cause **Internal Chemical Burns** in as little as **2 hours**.
- **KEEP** new and used batteries **OUT OF REACH** of **CHILDREN**.
- **Seek immediate medical attention** if a battery is suspected to be swallowed or inserted inside any part of the body.



Remove and immediately recycle or dispose of used batteries according to local regulations and keep away from children. Do not dispose of batteries in household trash or incinerate. Even used batteries may cause severe injury or death. Call a local poison control center for treatment information.

Battery type: MS621

Nominal battery voltage: 3V

Do not force discharge, recharge, disassemble, heat above 60°C (140°F), or incinerate. Doing so may result in injury due to venting, leakage, or explosion resulting in chemical burns.

For the latest battery information, go to https://www.xerox.com/downloads/usa/en/e/environment_batterydirectivematrix.pdf.

This product is designed, tested, and approved to meet strict global safety standards with the use of specific manufacturer's components. The safety features of some parts may not always be obvious. The manufacturer is not responsible for the use of other replacement parts. Refer service or repairs, other than those described in the user documentation, to a service representative. **SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.**

Learn about the printer

This chapter contains

- Finding information about the printer 13
- Finding the printer serial number 14
- Printer configurations..... 15
- Using the control panel..... 16
- Home screen icons 17
- Customizing the home screen..... 19
- Changing the language of the on-screen keyboard..... 19
- Colors of the indicator light..... 19
- Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass 20
- Locating the security slot..... 20
- Selecting paper 21
- Additional printer features and support 27

2. Learn about the printer

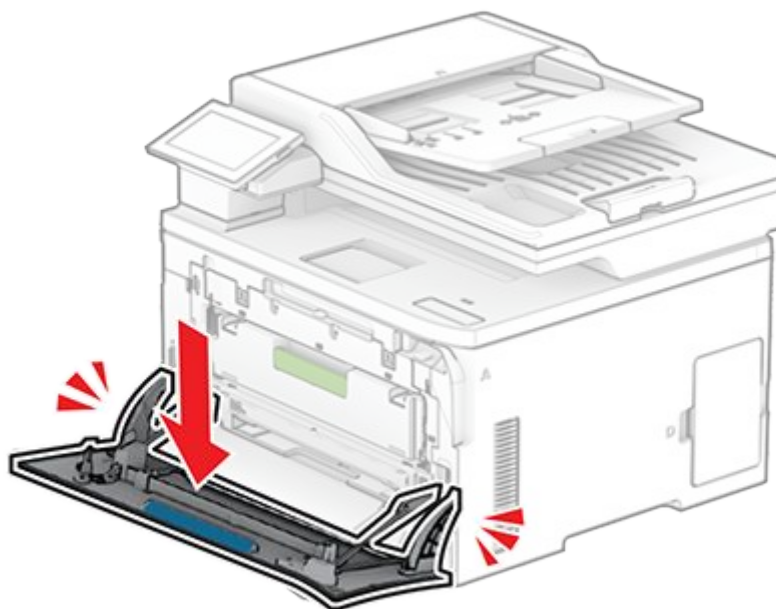
Finding information about the printer

What are you looking for?	Find it here
Initial setup instructions	See the setup documentation that came with the printer.
• Printer software • Print or fax driver • Printer firmware • Utility	Go to www.support.xerox.com .
• Interactive <i>User's Guide</i> • How-to videos	Go to www.support.xerox.com and search for your printer model.
• Documentation • Live chat support • Email support • Voice support	Go to www.support.xerox.com.  Note: Select your country or region, and then select your product to view the appropriate support site. Support contact information for your country or region can be found on the website or on the printed warranty that came with the printer. Have the following information ready when you contact customer support: • Place and date of purchase • Machine type and serial number For more information, see Finding the printer serial number on page 14.
• Safety information • Regulatory information • Warranty information • Environmental information	Warranty information varies by country or region: • In the U.S.—See the Statement of Limited Warranty included with the printer, or go to www.support.xerox.com. • In other countries and regions—See the printed warranty that came with the printer. <i>Safety, Regulatory, Recycling, and Disposal Reference Guide</i>—See the documentation that came with the printer or go to www.support.xerox.com.

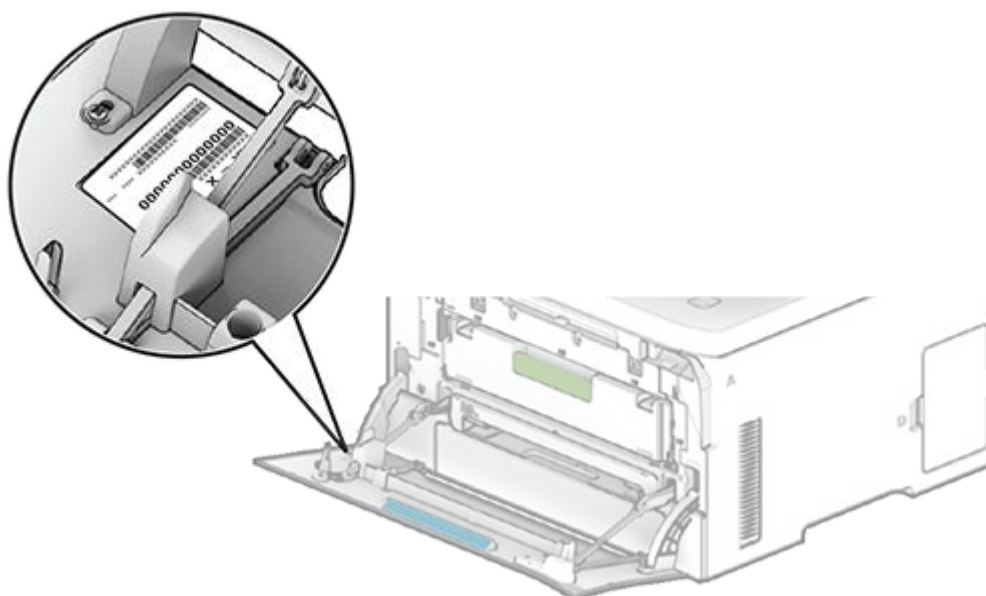
What are you looking for?	Find it here
Xerox product environment, health, safety, and sustainability information: • Carbon footprint • Circular economy • Chemical management • Health and safety	Go to https://www.xerox.com/en-us/about/ehs. For country- or region-specific packaging information, go to https://www.xerox.com/en-us/about/ehs/reduce-waste/packaging-and-sorting.

Finding the printer serial number

1. Open the front door, and then firmly push it down until it clicks into place.

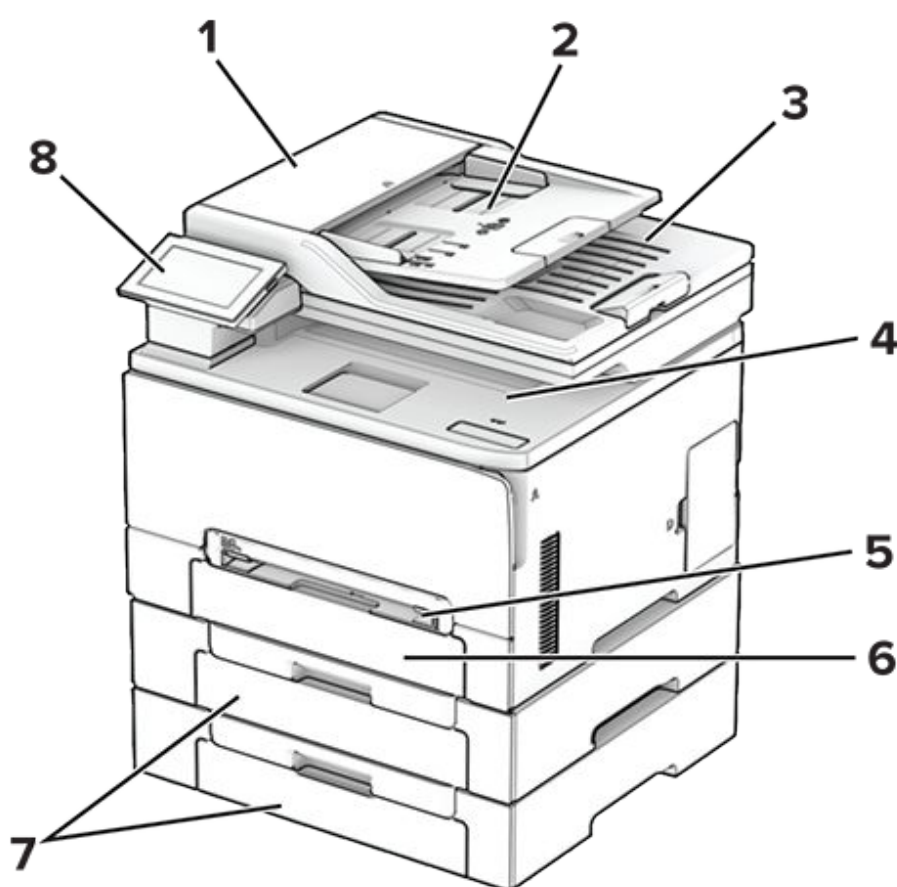


2. Locate the printer serial number behind the front door.



 **Note:** The serial number is 9, 10, or 13 digits long. Look for **SN** or **XSN** on the label.

Printer configurations

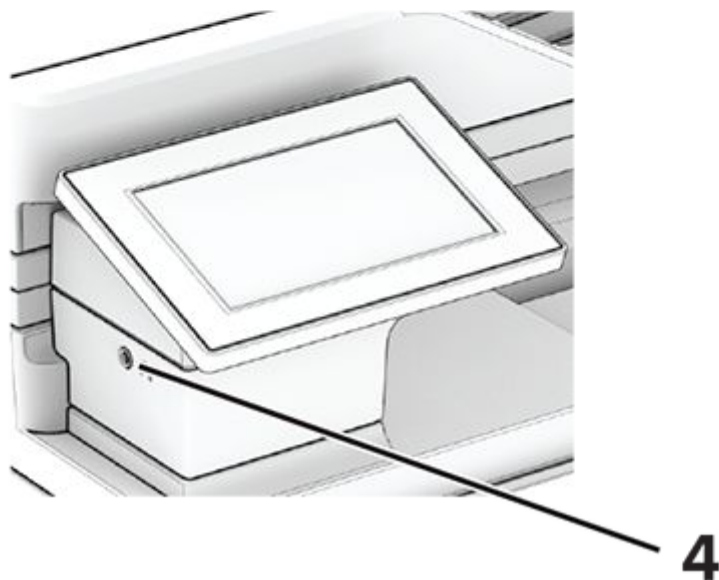
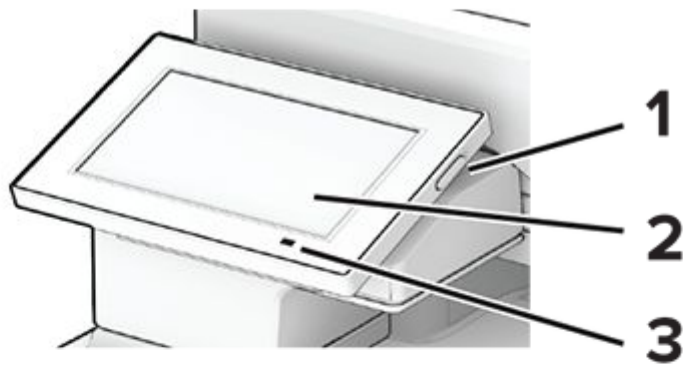


1

Automatic document feeder (ADF)

2	ADF tray
3	ADF bin
4	Standard bin
5	Manual feeder
6	Standard 250-sheet tray
7	Optional 250-sheet trays
8	Control panel

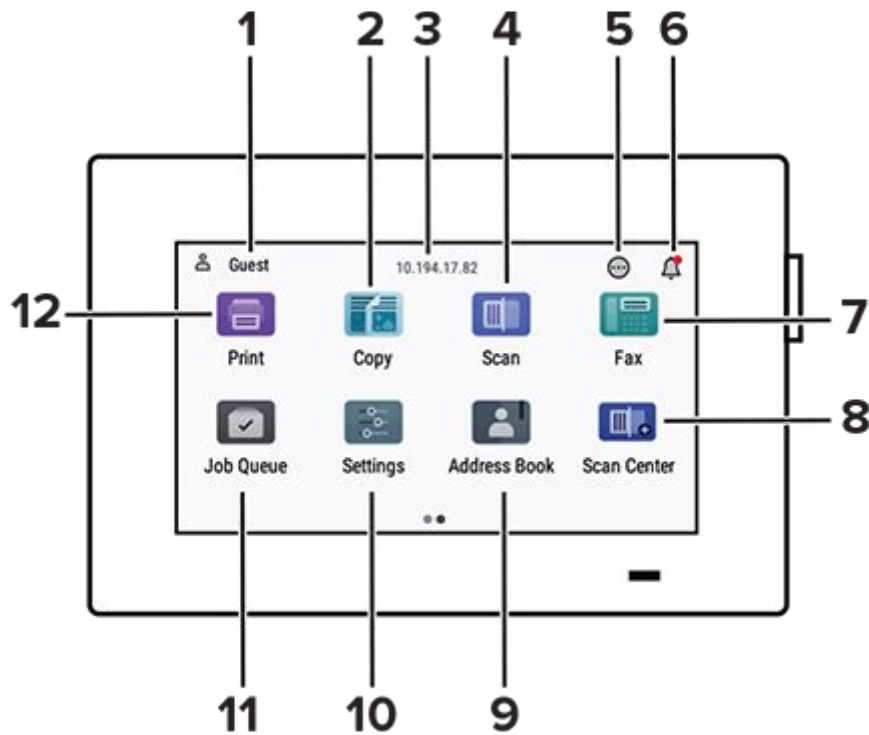
Using the control panel



Control panel part		Function
1	Power button	- Turn on or turn off the printer.  Note: To turn off the printer, press and hold the power button for five seconds. - Set the printer to sleep mode. - Wake the printer from sleep or hibernate mode.
2	Display	- View printer messages and supply status. - Set up and operate the printer. - Wake the printer from sleep mode.
3	Indicator light	Check the status of the printer. For more information, see Colors of the indicator light on page 19 .
4	Headset or speaker port	Attach a headset or speaker.

Home screen icons

 **Note:** Your home screen layout may vary based on customization settings, administrative configuration, and active embedded solutions.



#	Icon name	Function
1	User	Show if a user is logged in to the printer.
2	Copy	Copy photos and documents.
3	Displayed information	Show customized printer information such as the printer IP address or the date and time.
4	Scan	Scan photos and documents.
5	Overflow Menu	Access the Control Center , Status/Supplies , and Xerox Easy Assist .
6	Notification	- Show a printer warning or error message whenever the printer requires intervention to continue processing. - View more information on the printer warning or message and how to clear it.
7	Fax	Send fax messages.
8	Scan Center	Centralizes scan options and scan-to destinations.

#	Icon name	Function
9	Address Book	Manage a consolidated contact list that other applications on the printer can access.
10	Settings	Configure the printer settings.
11	Job Queue	View and configure submitted print jobs.
12	Print	Print photos and documents.

Customizing the home screen

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings** › **Device** › **Home Screen Customization**.

3. Do one or more of the following:

- To add an icon to the home screen, click , select the app name, and then click **Add**.
- To remove a home screen icon, select the app name, and then click **Remove**.
- To customize an app name, select the app name, click **Edit**, and then assign a name.
- To restore the name of an app, select the app name, click **Edit**, and then select **Restore app label**.
- To add a space between apps, click , select **BLANK SPACE**, and then click **Add**.
- To arrange the apps, select an application, and then drag and drop it to the intended page.
- To restore the default home screen, click **Restore home screen**, and then click **Restore** to confirm.

4. Apply the changes.

Changing the language of the on-screen keyboard

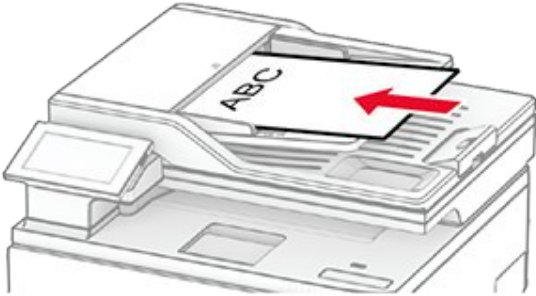
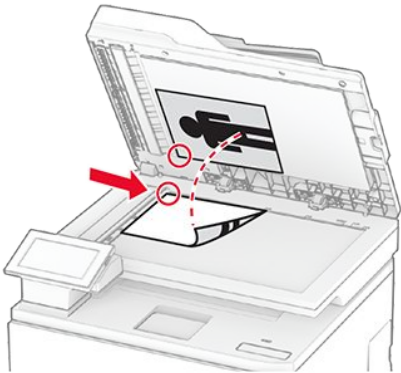
1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Preferences** › **Keyboard** › **Keyboard Type**.
2. Select a language.

Colors of the indicator light

Color of the indicator light	Printer status
Off	The printer is off.
Solid blue	The printer is ready.

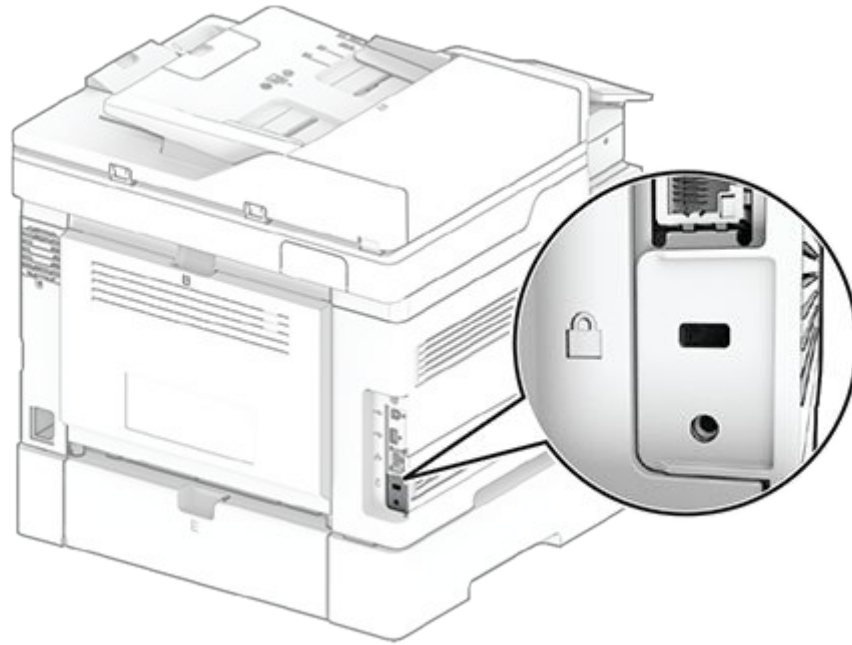
Color of the indicator light	Printer status
Blinking blue	The printer is printing or processing data.
Blinking red	The printer requires user intervention.
Solid amber	The printer is in sleep mode.
Blinking amber	The printer is in deep sleep or hibernate mode.
Alternating between blue and blinking red	The printer is not responding or showing anything on the display. For more information, see Indicator light is alternating between blue and blinking red on page 349.

Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass

Automatic document feeder (ADF)	Scanner glass
 • Use the ADF for multiple-page or two-sided documents. • Load an original document face up. For multiple-page documents, make sure to align the leading edge before loading. • Make sure to adjust the ADF guides to match the width of the paper that you are loading.	 • Use the scanner glass for single-page documents, book pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings). • Place the document face down in the corner with the arrow.

Locating the security slot

The printer is equipped with a security lock feature. Attach a security lock compatible with most laptop computers in the location shown to secure the printer in place.



Selecting paper

PAPER GUIDELINES

Use the appropriate paper to prevent jams and help ensure trouble-free printing.

- Always use new, undamaged paper.
- Before loading paper, know the recommended printable side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- Do not use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- Do not mix paper sizes, types, or weights in the same tray.
- Do not use coated papers unless they are specifically designed for electrophotographic printing.

For more information on recommended paper, see the following:

- Recommended Media List (United States): <https://www.xeroxpaperusa.com/resources/recommended-media-list>
- Recommended Media List (Europe): <https://www.xerox.co.uk/en-gb/printer-supplies/recommended-printer-papers-and-specialty-media>

PAPER CHARACTERISTICS

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. Consider these factors before printing on them.

Weight

Trays can feed paper of varying weights. Paper lighter than 60 gsm (16 lb-bond) may not be stiff enough to feed properly, and may cause jams. For more information, see [Supported paper weights on page 27](#).

Curl

Curl is the tendency for paper to curl at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl can occur after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper unwrapped in hot, humid, cold, or dry conditions can contribute to paper curling before printing and can cause feeding problems.

Smoothness

Paper smoothness directly affects print quality. If paper is too rough, toner cannot fuse to it properly. If paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding or print quality issues. We recommend the use of paper with 50 Sheffield points.

Moisture content

The amount of moisture in paper affects both print quality and the printer ability to feed the paper correctly. Leave the paper in its original wrapper until you use it. Exposure of paper to moisture changes can degrade its performance.

Before printing, store paper in its original wrapper for 24 to 48 hours. The environment in which the paper is stored must be the same as the printer. Extend the time several days if the storage or transportation environment is very different from the printer environment. Thick paper may also require a longer conditioning period.

Grain direction

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either *grain long*, which runs the length of the paper or *grain short*, which runs the width of the paper. For recommended grain direction, see [Supported paper weights on page 27](#).

Fiber content

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100 percent chemically treated pulped wood. This content provides the paper with a high degree of stability, resulting in fewer paper feeding problems and better print quality. Paper containing fibers such as cotton can negatively affect paper handling.

UNACCEPTABLE PAPER

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated papers that are used to make copies without carbon paper. They are also known as carbonless papers, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper.
- Preprinted papers with chemicals that may contaminate the printer.
- Preprinted papers that can be affected by the temperature in the printer fuser.
- Preprinted papers that require a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than ± 2.3 mm (± 0.09 in.). For example, optical character recognition (OCR) forms.

Sometimes, registration can be adjusted with a software app to print successfully on these forms.

- Coated papers (erasable bond), synthetic papers, or thermal papers.
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface papers, or curled papers.
- Papers that fail EN12281:2002 (European).
- Paper weighing less than 60 gsm (16 lb-bond).

- Multiple-part forms or documents.

USING RECYCLED PAPER

Xerox works to reduce the environmental impact of paper by providing customers choices when it comes to printing. One way we achieve this is by testing products to ensure recycled paper may be used—specifically, papers made with 30 %, 50 %, and 100 % post-consumer recycled content. While no official standard exists for office equipment use of paper, Xerox uses European Standard EN 12281 as a minimum properties standard. To ensure breadth of testing, test paper includes 100 % recycled papers from North America, Europe, and Asia, and tests are conducted at 8–80 % relative humidity. Testing includes duplex printing. Office paper using renewable, recycled, or chlorine-free content may all be used.

STORING PAPER

Use these paper storage guidelines to help avoid jams and uneven print quality:

- Store paper in its original wrapper in the same environment as the printer for 24 to 48 hours before printing.
- Extend the time several days if the storage or transportation environment is very different from the printer environment. Thick paper may also require a longer conditioning period.
- For best results, store paper where the temperature is 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40 percent.
- Most label manufacturers recommend printing in a temperature range of 18 to 24°C (65 to 75°F) with relative humidity between 40 and 60 percent.
- Store paper in cartons, on a pallet or shelf, rather than on the floor.
- Store individual packages on a flat surface.
- Do not store anything on top of individual paper packages.
- Take paper out of the carton or wrapper only when you are ready to load it in the printer. The carton and wrapper help keep the paper clean, dry, and flat.

SELECTING PREPRINTED FORMS AND LETTERHEAD

- Use grain long paper.
- Use only forms and letterhead printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Avoid paper with rough or heavily textured surfaces.
- Use inks that are not affected by the resin in the toner. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based generally meet these requirements; latex inks might not.
- Print samples on preprinted forms and letterheads considered for use before buying large quantities. This action determines whether the ink in the preprinted form or letterhead affects print quality.
- When in doubt, contact your paper supplier.
- When printing on letterhead, load the paper in the proper orientation for your printer.

SUPPORTED PAPER SIZES

Paper size	Standard or optional 250-sheet tray	Manual feeder	Two-sided printing	Automatic document feeder
A4 210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓
A5 Portrait (Short-edge feed)¹ 148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓
A5 Landscape (Long-edge feed)² 210 x 148 mm (8.27 x 5.83 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓
JIS B5 182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.1 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓
A6 105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓
1/3 A4 95 x 210 mm (3.7 x 8.3 in.)	✓ ³	✓ ³	X	X
Statement 139.7 x 215.9 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓
Letter 215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓
Folio 215.9 x 330.2 mm (8.5 x 13 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓
Oficio (Mexico) 215.9 x 340.4 mm (8.5 x 13.4 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓

Paper size	Standard or optional 250-sheet tray	Manual feeder	Two-sided printing	Automatic document feeder
Legal 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓
Executive 184.2 x 266.7 mm (7.25 x 10.5 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓
Hagaki 100 x 148 mm (3.94 x 5.83 in.)	✓	✓	X	X
7 3/4 Envelope 98.4 x 190.5 mm (3.875 x 7.5 in.)	✓	✓	X	X
9 Envelope 98.4 x 225.4 mm (3.875 x 8.9 in.)	✓	✓	X	X
10 Envelope 104.8 x 241.3 mm (4.12 x 9.5 in.)	✓	✓	X	X
DL Envelope 110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 in.)	✓	✓	X	X
C5 Envelope 162 x 229 mm (6.38 x 9.01 in.)	✓	✓	X	X
B5 Envelope 176 x 250 mm (6.93 x 9.84 in.)	✓	✓	X	X
Monarch 98.425 x 190.5 mm (3.875 x 7.5 in.)	✓	✓	X	X
Other Envelope 98.4 x 162 mm (3.87 x 6.38 in.) to 176 x 250 mm (6.93 x 9.84 in.)	✓	✓	X	X

Paper size	Standard or optional 250-sheet tray	Manual feeder	Two-sided printing	Automatic document feeder
Universal	✓ ^{4,7}	✓ ^{4,7}	✓ ⁵	✓ ⁶

SUPPORTED PAPER TYPES

Paper type	Standard or optional 250-sheet tray	Manual feeder	Two-sided printing	Automatic document feeder
Plain paper	✓	✓	✓	✓
Card stock	✓	✓	X	X
Transparencies	X	X	X	X
Recycled	✓	✓	✓	✓
Glossy	✓	✓	✓	✓
Heavy Glossy	✓	✓	✓	X
Labels	✓	✓	X	X
Vinyl Labels	X	X	X	X
Bond	✓	✓	✓	✓
Envelope	✓	✓	X	X
Rough Envelope	✓	✓	X	X
Letterhead	✓	✓	✓	✓
Preprinted	✓	✓	✓	✓
Colored Paper	✓	✓	✓	✓
Light Paper	✓	✓	✓	✓
Heavy Paper	✓	✓	✓	X

¹ When running on short-edge feed, A5 is treated as narrow paper.

² The default support is long-edge feed.

³ Feeding performance may vary and should be evaluated on a case-by-case basis to ensure optimal functionality.

⁴ Support paper sizes ranging from 94 x 148 mm (3.7 x 5.83 in.) to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.).

⁵ Support paper sizes ranging from 210 x 279 mm (8.27 x 11 in.) to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.).

⁶ Support paper sizes ranging from 105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in.) to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.).

⁷ Feeding performance for widths smaller than 98 mm or 3.86 in. may vary and should be evaluated on a case-by-case basis to ensure optimal functionality.

Paper type	Standard or optional 250-sheet tray	Manual feeder	Two-sided printing	Automatic document feeder
Rough Cotton	✓	✓	✓	✓
Custom Type	✓	✓	✓	✓

SUPPORTED PAPER WEIGHTS

Standard 250-sheet tray	Manual feeder	Two-sided printing	Optional 250-sheet tray	Automatic document feeder
60–162 gsm (16–43 lb-bond)	60–200 gsm (16–53 lb-bond)	60–105 gsm (16–28 lb-bond)	60–200 gsm (16–53 lb-bond)	60–90 gsm (16–24 lb-bond)

 **Note:** For Hagaki and A6, the manual feeder can support up to 209 gsm. Heavier weight must be tested for acceptability.

Additional printer features and support

SUPPORTED APPLICATIONS

Application	Printer models
Scan Center	Xerox® C305ae, Xerox® XC2432, Xerox® ZC364
Display Customization	Xerox® C305ae, Xerox® XC2432, Xerox® CZ364

SUPPORTED FLASH DRIVES AND FILE TYPES

Flash drives

- Flash drives that support USB 2.0 or lower.
- Flash drives that support a New Technology File System (NTFS) or the File Allocation Table (FAT32) file system.

File types

Documents	Images
• PDF (version 2.0 or earlier) • Microsoft file formats (DOC, DOCX, XLS, XLSX, PPT, PPTX) • PRN	• JPEG or JPG • TIFF or TIF • GIF • BMP • PNG • PCX • DCX

Set up, install, and configure

This chapter contains

- Selecting a location for the printer..... 30
- Printer ports and socket..... 31
- Xerox Easy Assist (XEA)..... 33
- Configuring the email SMTP settings..... 37
- Configuring apps and solutions..... 47
- Setting up and using the accessibility features..... 49
- Setting up the printer to fax..... 57
- Loading paper and specialty media..... 66
- Installing and updating software, drivers, and firmware 79
- Installing hardware options 89
- Networking 97

3. Set up, install, and configure

Selecting a location for the printer

- Leave enough room to open trays, covers, and doors and to install hardware options.
- Set up the printer near an electrical outlet.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

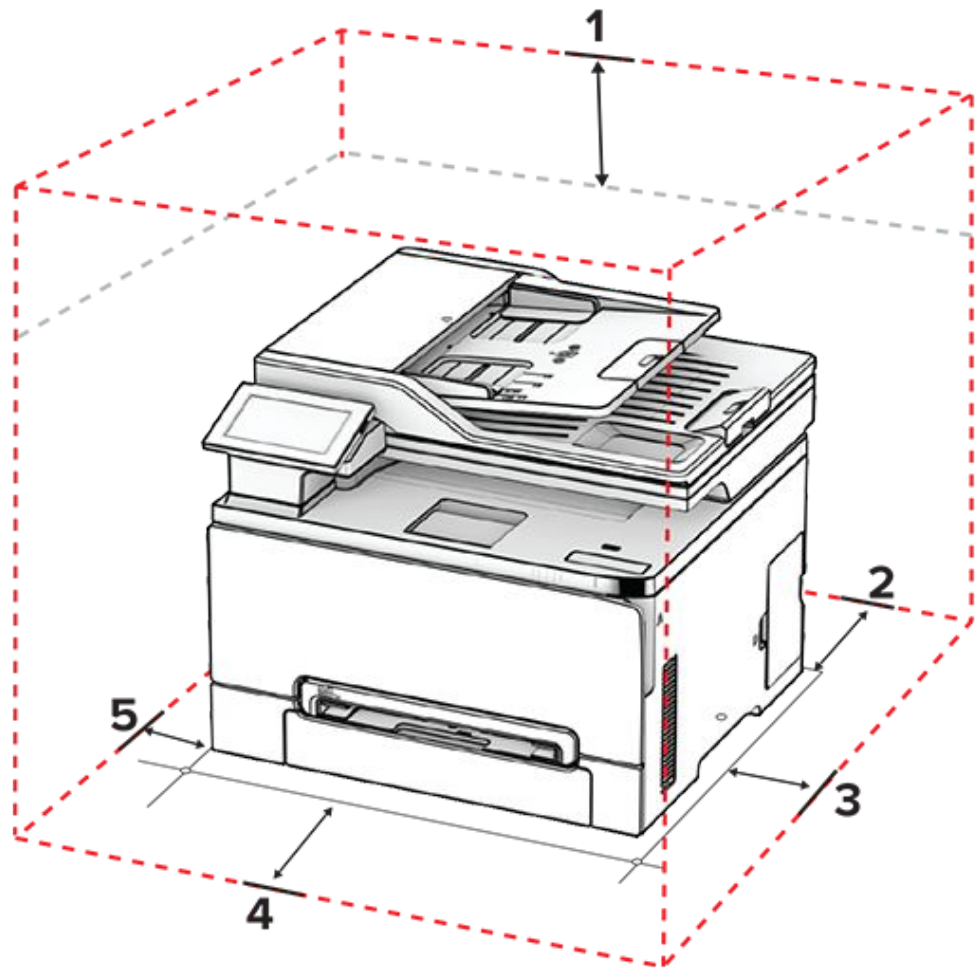
**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not place or use this product near water or wet locations.

- Make sure that airflow in the room meets the latest revision of the ASHRAE 62 standard or the CEN Technical Committee 156 standard.
- Provide a flat, sturdy, and stable surface.
- Keep the printer:
 - Clean, dry, and free of dust.
 - Away from stray staples and paper clips.
 - Away from the direct airflow of air conditioners, heaters, or ventilators.
 - Free from direct sunlight and humidity extremes.
- Observe the recommended temperatures and avoid fluctuations:

Ambient temperature	10 to 32.2°C (50 to 90°F)
Storage temperature	15.6 to 32.2°C (60 to 90°F)

- Allow the following recommended amount of space around the printer for proper ventilation:



1	Top	305 mm (12 in.)
2	Rear	102 mm (4 in.)
3	Right side	76 mm (3 in.)
4	Front	76 mm (3 in.)
5	Left side	76 mm (3 in.)

Printer ports and socket



CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the power cord, fax feature, or telephone, during a lightning storm.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

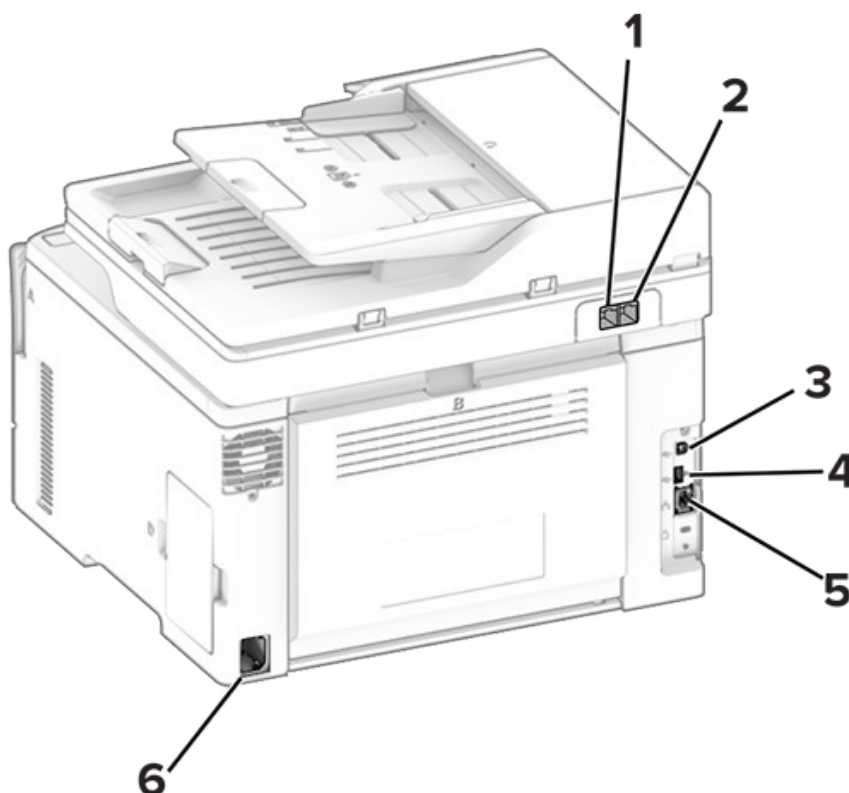
To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To reduce the risk of fire, use only a 26 AWG or larger telecommunications (RJ-11) cord when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network. For users in Australia, the cord must be approved by the Australian Communications and Media Authority.

**Warning—Potential Damage**

To avoid loss of data or printer malfunction, do not touch the USB cable, any wireless network adapter, or the printer in the areas shown while actively printing.



Printer port		Function
1	LINE port	Connect the printer to an active telephone line through a standard wall jack (RJ-11), DSL filter, or VoIP adapter, or any other adapter that allows you to access the telephone line to send and receive faxes.  Note: To enable manual fax in models that have only a LINE port, use a corded fax splitter.

Printer port		Function
2	EXT port	Connect more devices (telephone or answering machine) to the printer and the telephone line. Use this port if you do not have a dedicated fax line for the printer and if this connection method is supported in your country or region.
3	USB printer port	Connect the printer to a computer.
4	USB port	Attach a keyboard or any compatible option.
5	Ethernet port	Connect the printer to a network.
6	Power cord socket	Connect the printer to a properly grounded electrical outlet.

Xerox Easy Assist (XEA)

XEROX® EASY ASSIST (XEA)

The Xerox Easy Assist app lets you manage your printer from your mobile device. With the app, you can:

- Set up your new printer quickly.
- Manage printer settings and configuration.
- View supply alerts and order supplies.
- Get live troubleshooting support.

To install the Xerox Easy Assist app, scan the QR code or search for the app in the Apple App Store or Google Play Store. There are two types of XEA QR codes:

- **QR Code to acquire the XEA app**—Scan this QR Code with your mobile device to install the Xerox Easy Assist app for the first time. You can find the QR Code on the printer packaging or in the *Setup Sheet* that came with the printer.
- **QR Code to connect your mobile device to the printer**—Use this QR Code to set up a wireless connection between your mobile device and the printer (for example, Wi-Fi Direct). On printers with a touchscreen interface, you can find this QR Code on the control panel during the Install Wizard. The QR Code contains all the information needed to connect your mobile device and printer without entering any technical details. To connect, scan the QR Code using the Xerox Easy Assist app. For more information, see [Connecting Xerox Easy Assist app to already installed printers on page 36](#).

If the printer has network connection, you can connect to the XEA app in your mobile device by typing the IP address of the printer.

Primary features of the Xerox Easy Assist app:

- **Set up a new printer**

If you have the QR Code or IP Address, you can set up a new Xerox printer using the Xerox Easy Assist app. On the My Printers screen, tap **Add**, then select **Set Up Your New Printer** and follow the app instructions.

For more information, see [Adding multiple printers to the Xerox Easy Assist app on page 37](#).

- Alerts

The app notifies you of printer errors or issues. To view the error details, tap the  icon.

- Printer status

Displays printer information such as readiness, toner level, and tray status. For more information, tap the

 **Printer** icon. To reorder toner, select the  icon, and then tap **Reorder**.

- Order supplies

Order parts and supplies through the app. If toner is low, tap **Supplies**. You can add your own supplier if not listed:

1. Tap **Add Supplier** when prompted.
2. Enter details in **Device Settings** › **Supplier Profile**
3. After setup, tap **Buy** to visit the supplier web page.

Xerox Retail Store is the default supplier. You can also view the **Supplies Plan** and **Supplies Log** in the **Order Supplies** page.

- Print

Print directly from the app. Select your printer, tap **Print**, choose the document, and confirm.

- Device settings

You can view and edit printer settings in the **Device Settings** tab. If you did not set a password during setup, you must create one to access or modify settings. The **Device Settings** tab includes:

- **About**
- **Language**
- **Wi-Fi Setup**
- **Measurements**
- **Date & Time**
- **Sound**
- **Power Saver**
- **Supplier Profile**
- **Email**
- **Fax**
- **Admin Password**

- Support center

Use the **Support Center** in the Xerox Easy Assist app to request help and find solutions for printer-related issues. Available services include:

- **Printer's Website**—Select your printer, and then navigate to **Support Center** › **Printer's Website** to view full printer configuration and access the printer web page. The **Additional Printer Settings** page also includes **Share Link** to email the printer IP address and other details.
- **Chat**—Select your printer, and then navigate to **Support Center** › **Chat** to connect with a Xerox Support chatbot.

- **Support Website**—Select your printer, and then navigate to **Support Center › Support Website** to access the official website for product support and resources.
 - **Print Driver**—Select your printer, and then navigate to **Support Center › Print Driver** to download print and scan drivers. Enter your email in the **Email** field, tap **+** to add it, and the app sends a Quick Link for driver installation.
 - **Print Test Page**—Select your printer, and then navigate to **Support Center › Print Test Page** to print a test page and confirm settings.
 - **Product Registration**—Select your printer, and then navigate to **Support Center › Product Registration** to access the registration webpage for your printer.
 - **Sustainability**—Select your printer, and then navigate to **Support Center › Sustainability** to access **Xerox Sustainability Efforts**, including waste management, health and safety data, and other initiatives.
- **Remove a printer**

To remove a printer from the Xerox Easy Assist app, select the printer, and then tap the printer icon. At the bottom of Printer Status, tap **Remove From My Printers**.

PRIOR TO INSTALLING THE PRINTER: INITIAL SET UP WITH THE XEROX EASY ASSIST APP

To complete the initial setup and install the Xerox Easy Assist app for the first time, do the following:

1. Turn on the printer.
2. Select your display language and country or region, and then select the arrow icon.
3. Select **Use Mobile Phone**.
4. Scan the QR code on the control panel using your mobile device.
5. Install the app on your mobile device.
6. Select **I Have App**.
7. Open the app and accept the Privacy Statement and End-User License Agreement (EULA) by checking both boxes. Tap **Continue**.



Note: The Xerox Easy Assist app provides instructions for unpacking your printer. To watch an unpacking video, scan the QR code on the packaging. You can also refer to the setup sheet that came with your printer.

8. To add a new printer on the app, navigate to **Add Printer › Set Up Your New Printer**.
9. Select your printer model from the list.
10. Tap **I've unboxed my printer**.
11. Tap **Scan QR Code**, and then tap **I'm ready to scan**.
12. Scan the QR code on the printer control panel.
13. The Wi-Fi Direct Name of the printer appears. Tap **Connect**.
14. Tap **Continue to printer setup**.
15. Using the Xerox Easy Assist app, configure the general settings.
16. To complete the initial setup in the app, enter the required printer information, and then tap **Complete Setup**.

After completing the setup, you can use the Xerox Easy Assist app to:

- Add another printer
- Check printer status
- Order supplies
- Download print and scan drivers
- Print
- Scan
- Access troubleshooting support
- Access the printer website or Embedded Web Server
- View Environment, Health, and Safety information
- Remove a printer from the XEA app My Printers list

For more information on the Xerox Easy Assist app features, see [Xerox® Easy Assist \(XEA\) on page 33](#).

CONNECTING XEROX EASY ASSIST APP TO ALREADY INSTALLED PRINTERS

To use the Xerox Easy Assist (XEA) app for a printer that is already installed and connected to your network, you can connect through QR code or IP address.

Before you begin, make sure that the printer and mobile device are connected to the same network.

Connecting through QR Code

1. Download the Xerox Easy Assist (XEA) app from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
2. Tap **Add Printer**, and then tap **Connect to an Existing Printer**.
3. The app searches for printers on your network. To connect through QR Code, tap **Skip**, and then select your printer model from the list of valid printers.
4. Tap **Scan QR code**, and then tap **I'm Ready to Scan**.
5. On the printer control panel, select , and then select **Xerox Easy Assist**.
6. Scan the QR Code using the XEA app and follow the on-screen instructions.

Connecting through IP address

1. Download the Xerox Easy Assist (XEA) app from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
 2. Tap **Add Printer**, and then tap **Connect to an Existing Printer**.
 3. The app searches for printers on your network. To connect through QR Code, tap **Skip**, and then select your printer model from the list of valid printers.
 4. Tap **Enter IP Address**, and then tap **Enter IP Address**.
-  **Note:** You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
5. Enter the IP Address, tap **OK**, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

ADDING MULTIPLE PRINTERS TO THE XEROX EASY ASSIST APP

If your printer is already set up on your network and the initial setup is complete, you can add additional printers to the My Printers list in the XEA app. The app lets you view printer status, install drivers, and access Chatbot support. To add printers on the same network:

1. Open the XEA app on your mobile device.

2. Tap , and then tap **My Printers**.

3. Tap **Add**.

4. Select **Connect to Existing Printer**. You can add a printer using any of the following methods:

- **QR Code**

Use the XEA app scanner to scan the printer QR code. Tap **Scan QR Code** in the app. For more information, see [Connecting Xerox Easy Assist app to already installed printers on page 36](#).

- **IP Address**

Add the printer manually by entering its IP address. Tap **IP Address**, enter the printer IP address, then tap **OK**. For more information, see [Connecting Xerox Easy Assist app to already installed printers on page 36](#).

- **Finding the Nearby Network Printers**

When your mobile device is connected to the same wireless or wired network as the printer, the app automatically searches for printers.

- If the app finds the printer, you can select it and add it directly.
- If the app does not find the printer, you can still add it manually using the IP address.



Note: If the printer and mobile device fail to communicate, ensure both are connected to the same network.

Configuring the email SMTP settings

Configure the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) settings to send a scanned document through email. The settings vary with each service provider. For more information, see [Email service providers](#).

Before you begin, make sure that the printer is connected to a network and the network is connected to the Internet.

USING THE EMBEDDED WEB SERVER

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- Notes**

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings** › **Email**.

3. Configure the email settings. For more information, see [Email service providers](#).



- For email service providers that are not on the list, contact your provider and ask for the settings.
- For Microsoft 365 or Outlook Live email service provider, you must register your printer to OAuth 2.0 Authentication. For more information, see [Setting up OAuth 2.0 Authentication for Email Server using the Embedded Web Server](#).

4. Click **Save**.

SETTING UP OAUTH 2.0 AUTHENTICATION FOR EMAIL SERVER USING THE EMBEDDED WEB SERVER

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings** > **Email**.
3. Click **Set Up OAuth 2 for Email Server**, and then click **Register**.
4. Go to <https://microsoft.com/devicelogin>.
5. Enter the code that was generated in the Embedded Web Server.
6. Log in to your Outlook account.
7. Follow the on-screen instructions.

USING THE EMAIL SETUP WIZARD

Before using the wizard, make sure that the printer firmware is updated. For more information, see the **Updating firmware** section.



- These instructions apply only to certain printer models.
- Setting up the SMTP settings using the email setup wizard is not applicable for OAuth 2.0 Authentication.

1. From the control panel, select **Email**.
2. Select **Set up Now**, type your email address and then select **Next**.
3. Type the password, and then select **Done**.

Notes

- Depending on your email service provider, type your account password, app password, or authentication password. For more information on the password, see [Email service providers](#), and then look for Device Password.
- If your provider is not listed, then contact your provider and ask for the **Primary SMTP Gateway**, **Primary SMTP Gateway Port**, **Use SSL/TLS**, and **SMTP Server Authentication** settings. Proceed with the setup after getting the settings.

4. Select **Next**.
5. Configure the settings, and then select **Next**.
6. Select **Test Setup**.

USING THE SETTINGS MENU

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Email** › **Email Setup**.
2. Configure the email settings. For more information, see [Email service providers](#).

 **Note:** If your service provider is not listed, then contact your provider.

EMAIL SERVICE PROVIDERS

Use the following table to determine the SMTP settings of your service provider.

Notes

- If you encounter errors using the settings provided, then contact your service provider.
- If your service provider is not listed, then contact your provider.

- [AOL Mail](#)
- [Comcast Mail](#)
- [Gmail](#)
- [iCloud Mail](#)
- [Mail.com](#)
- [NetEase Mail \(mail.126.com\)](#)
- [NetEase Mail \(mail.163.com\)](#)
- [NetEase Mail \(mail.yeah.net\)](#)
- [Outlook Live or Microsoft 365](#)
- [QQ Mail](#)
- [Sina Mail](#)
- [Sohu Mail](#)
- [Yahoo! Mail](#)
- [Zoho Mail](#)

AOL Mail

Setting	Value
Primary SMTP Gateway	smtp.aol.com
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	587
Use SSL/TLS	Required
Require Trusted Certificate	Disabled
Reply Address	Your email address
SMTP Server Authentication	Login / Plain
Device-Initiated Email	Use Device SMTP Credentials
Device UserID	Your email address
Device Password	App password  Note: To create an app password, go to the AOL Account Security page, log in to your account, and then click Generate app password .

Comcast Mail

Setting	Value
Primary SMTP Gateway	smtp.comcast.net
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	587
Use SSL/TLS	Required
Require Trusted Certificate	Disabled
Reply Address	Your email address
SMTP Server Authentication	Login / Plain
Device-Initiated Email	Use Device SMTP Credentials
Device UserID	Your email address
Device Password	Account password

Gmail™

 **Note:** Make sure that two-step verification is enabled on your Google account. To enable two-step verification, go to the [Google Account Security](#) page, log in to your account, and then from the **Security & sign-in** section, enable **2-Step Verification**.

Setting	Value
Primary SMTP Gateway	smtp.gmail.com
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	587

Setting	Value
Use SSL/TLS	Required
Require Trusted Certificate	Disabled
Reply Address	Your email address
SMTP Server Authentication	Login / Plain
Device-Initiated Email	Use Device SMTP Credentials
Device UserID	Your email address
Device Password	App password  Notes - To create an app password, go to https://myaccount.google.com/apppasswords. "App passwords" is available only if two-step verification is enabled.

iCloud Mail

 **Note:** Make sure that two-step verification is enabled on your account.

Setting	Value
Primary SMTP Gateway	smtp.mail.me.com
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	587
Use SSL/TLS	Required
Require Trusted Certificate	Disabled
Reply Address	Your email address
SMTP Server Authentication	Login / Plain
Device-Initiated Email	Use Device SMTP Credentials
Device UserID	Your email address
Device Password	App password  Note: To create an app password, go to the iCloud Account Management page, log in to your account, and then from the Security section, click Generate Password .

Mail.com

Setting	Value
Primary SMTP Gateway	smtp.mail.com

Setting	Value
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	587
Use SSL/TLS	Required
Require Trusted Certificate	Disabled
Reply Address	Your email address
SMTP Server Authentication	Login / Plain
Device-Initiated Email	Use Device SMTP Credentials
Device UserID	Your email address
Device Password	Account password

NetEase Mail (mail.126.com)

 **Note:** Make sure that the SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the NetEase Mail home page, click **Settings** > **POP3/SMTP/IMAP**, and then enable either **IMAP/SMTP service** or **POP3/SMTP service**.

Setting	Value
Primary SMTP Gateway	smtp.126.com
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	465
Use SSL/TLS	Required
Require Trusted Certificate	Disabled
Reply Address	Your email address
SMTP Server Authentication	Login / Plain
Device-Initiated Email	Use Device SMTP Credentials
Device UserID	Your email address
Device Password	Authorization password  Note: The authorization password is provided when IMAP/SMTP service or POP3/SMTP service is enabled.

NetEase Mail (mail.163.com)

 **Note:** Make sure that the SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the NetEase Mail home page, click **Settings** > **POP3/SMTP/IMAP**, and then enable either **IMAP/SMTP service** or **POP3/SMTP service**.

Setting	Value
Primary SMTP Gateway	smtp.163.com

Setting	Value
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	465
Use SSL/TLS	Required
Require Trusted Certificate	Disabled
Reply Address	Your email address
SMTP Server Authentication	Login / Plain
Device-Initiated Email	Use Device SMTP Credentials
Device UserID	Your email address
Device Password	Authorization password  Note: The authorization password is provided when IMAP/SMTP service or POP3/SMTP service is enabled.

NetEase Mail (mail.yeah.net)

 **Note:** Make sure that the SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the NetEase Mail home page, click **Settings** > **POP3/SMTP/IMAP**, and then enable either **IMAP/SMTP service** or **POP3/SMTP service**.

Setting	Value
Primary SMTP Gateway	smtp.yeah.net
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	465
Use SSL/TLS	Required
Require Trusted Certificate	Disabled
Reply Address	Your email address
SMTP Server Authentication	Login / Plain
Device-Initiated Email	Use Device SMTP Credentials
Device UserID	Your email address
Device Password	Authorization password  Note: The authorization password is provided when IMAP/SMTP service or POP3/SMTP service is enabled.

Outlook Live or Microsoft 365

Setting	Value (OAuth2.0 Authentication)
Primary SMTP Gateway	smtp.office365.com

Setting	Value (OAuth2.0 Authentication)
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	587
Use SSL/TLS	Required
Require Trusted Certificate	Disabled
Reply Address	The email address used to register OAuth 2.0 Authentication
SMTP Server Authentication	OAuth2.0
User-Initiated Email	Use Device SMTP Credentials
Device-Initiated Email	Use Device SMTP Credentials
Device UserID	N/A
Device Password	N/A

 **Note:** For more setup options for business using Microsoft 365, go to the [Microsoft 365 help page](#).

QQ Mail

 **Note:** Make sure that the SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the QQ Mail home page, click **Settings > Account**, and then from the POP3/IMAP/SMTP/Exchange/CardDAV/CalDAV Service section, enable either **POP3/SMTP service** or **IMAP/SMTP service**.

Setting	Value
Primary SMTP Gateway	smtp.qq.com
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	587
Use SSL/TLS	Required
Require Trusted Certificate	Disabled
Reply Address	Your email address
SMTP Server Authentication	Login / Plain
Device-Initiated Email	Use Device SMTP Credentials
Device UserID	Your email address
Device Password	Authorization code  Note: To generate an authorization code, from the QQ Mail home page, click Settings > Account . From the POP3/IMAP/SMTP/Exchange/CardDAV/CalDAV Service section, click Generate authorization code .

Sina Mail

 **Note:** Make sure that the POP3/SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the Sina Mail home page, click **Settings** › **More settings** › **User-end POP/IMAP/SMTP**, and then enable POP3/SMTP service.

Setting	Value
Primary SMTP Gateway	smtp.sina.com
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	587
Use SSL/TLS	Required
Require Trusted Certificate	Disabled
Reply Address	Your email address
SMTP Server Authentication	Login / Plain
Device-Initiated Email	Use Device SMTP Credentials
Device UserID	Your email address
Device Password	Authorization code  Note: To create an authorization code, from the email home page, click Settings › More settings › User-end POP/IMAP/SMTP , and then enable Authorization code status .

Sohu Mail

 **Note:** Make sure that the SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the Sohu Mail home page, click **Options** › **Settings** › **POP3/SMTP/IMAP**, and then enable either **IMAP/SMTP service** or **POP3/SMTP service**.

Setting	Value
Primary SMTP Gateway	smtp.sohu.com
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	465
Use SSL/TLS	Required
Require Trusted Certificate	Disabled
Reply Address	Your email address
SMTP Server Authentication	Login / Plain
Device-Initiated Email	Use Device SMTP Credentials
Device UserID	Your email address
Device Password	Independent password  Note: The independent password is provided when IMAP/SMTP service or POP3/SMTP service is enabled.

Yahoo! Mail

Setting	Value
Primary SMTP Gateway	smtp.mail.yahoo.com
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	587
Use SSL/TLS	Required
Require Trusted Certificate	Disabled
Reply Address	Your email address
SMTP Server Authentication	Login / Plain
Device-Initiated Email	Use Device SMTP Credentials
Device UserID	Your email address
Device Password	App password  Note: To create an app password, go to the Yahoo Account Security page, log in to your account, and then click Generate app password .

Zoho Mail

Setting	Value
Primary SMTP Gateway	smtp.zoho.com
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	587
Use SSL/TLS	Required
Require Trusted Certificate	Disabled
Reply Address	Your email address
SMTP Server Authentication	Login / Plain
Device-Initiated Email	Use Device SMTP Credentials
Device UserID	Your email address

Setting	Value
Device Password	Account password or app password  Notes • For accounts with two-step verification disabled, use your account password. • For accounts with two-step verification enabled, use an app password. To create an app password, go to the Zoho Mail Account Security page, log in to your account, and then from the Application-Specific Passwords section, click Generate New Password.

Configuring apps and solutions

USING SCAN CENTER

Creating scan destinations

1. From the control panel, select **Scan Center**.
2. Select a destination and configure its settings or enter the required information:
 - **Network Folder**
 - **Email**
 - **Printer**
 - **Remote Printer**
 - **Fax**
3. Select **Done**.

Notes

- To save the destination created, you can add it as a shortcut. Select , and then type the shortcut name.
- You can access the shortcuts only through the **Scan Center** app.

Scanning documents

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).
2. From the control panel, select **Scan Center**.
3. Select one of the following:
 - Select a destination.

- Select , and then select a shortcut.

 **Note:** If you have not created a destination or shortcut, then see [Creating scan destinations on page 47](#).

4. Select **Scan**.

USING DISPLAY CUSTOMIZATION

Use this application to upload images to the printer. You can use the images to create custom slide shows or to set the wallpaper and the screen saver of the printer.

Before using the application, make sure that **Screen Saver Settings**, **Slideshow Settings**, **Wallpaper Settings** and **Enable Flash Drive** are enabled in the Embedded Web Server.

Changing the wallpaper image

1. From the control panel, select **Change Wallpaper**.
2. Select an image to use.
3. Select **Apply**.

Running a slide show from a flash drive

1. Insert a flash drive into the front USB port.
2. From the control panel, select **Slideshow**.

 **Note:** You can remove the flash drive after the slide show starts, but the images are not stored in the printer. If the slide show stops, then insert the flash drive again to view the images.

CONFIGURING BOOKMARKS

Creating bookmarks

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

 **Notes**

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
 - Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
2. Click **Bookmarks > Add Bookmark**, and then type a bookmark name.
 3. Select an **Address** protocol type, and then do one of the following:
 - For HTTP and HTTPS, type the URL that you want to bookmark.
 - For HTTPS, make sure to use the host name instead of the IP address. For example, type **mywebsite.com/sample.pdf** instead of typing **123.123.123.123/sample.pdf**. Make sure that the host name also matches the Common Name (CN) value in the server certificate. For

more information on obtaining the CN value in the server certificate, see the help information for your web browser.

- For FTP, type the FTP address. For example, **myServer/myDirectory**. Enter the FTP port number. Port 21 is the default port for sending commands.
- For SMB, type the network folder address. For example, **myServer/myShare/myFile.pdf**. Type the network domain name.
- If necessary, select the **Authentication** type for FTP and SMB.

Notes

- The application supports the following file types: PDF, JPEG, and TIFF. Other file types such as DOCX and XLSX are supported in certain printer models.
- To limit access to the bookmark, enter a PIN.

4. Click **Save**.

Creating folders

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Navigate to **Bookmarks > Add Folder**, and then type a folder name.

Note: To limit access to the folder, enter a PIN.

3. Click **Save**.

USING ADDRESS BOOK

Use this feature to create and manage a single contact list that other printer applications can access.

1. From the control panel, select **Address Book**.

2. Select , and then do the following:
 - To create a contact, select **Create Contact**, type the contact information, specify a log in method, and then select **Save**.
 - To create a group, select **Create Group**, type a group name, select **OK**, and then select **Save**.
 - To delete a contact, select **Delete Contacts**, select a contact, and then select **Delete**.
 - To delete a group, select **Delete Groups**, select a group, and then select **Delete**.

Setting up and using the accessibility features

ACTIVATING VOICE GUIDANCE

From the home screen

1. In one motion and using one finger, slowly swipe left then up on the display until you hear a voice message.
2. Using two fingers, select **OK**.



Note: If the gesture does not work, then apply more pressure.

From the keyboard



Note: You need a physical keyboard connected to your printer to do this task.

1. Press and hold the **5** key until you hear a voice message.
2. Press **Tab** to navigate the focus cursor to the OK button, and then press **Enter**.



Notes

- When Voice Guidance is activated, always use two fingers to select any item on the display.
- Voice Guidance has limited language support.

DEACTIVATING VOICE GUIDANCE

1. In one motion and using one finger, slowly swipe left then up on the display until you hear a voice message.
2. Using two fingers, do either of the following:
 - Tap **Voice Guidance**, and then select **OK**.
 - Select **Cancel**.



Note: If the gesture does not work, then apply more pressure.

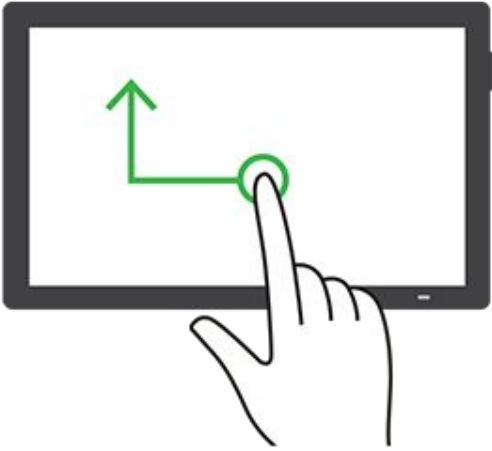
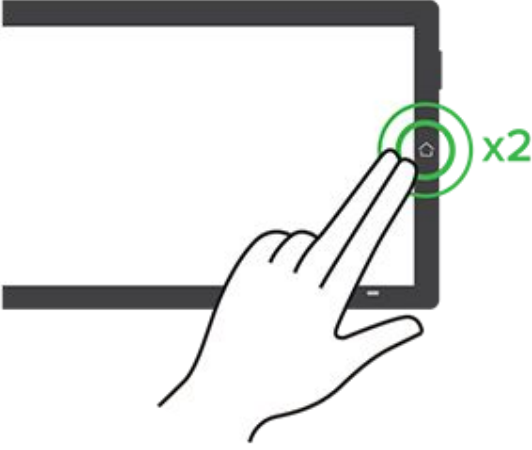
Pressing the power button or putting the printer in Sleep or Hibernate mode also deactivates Voice Guidance.

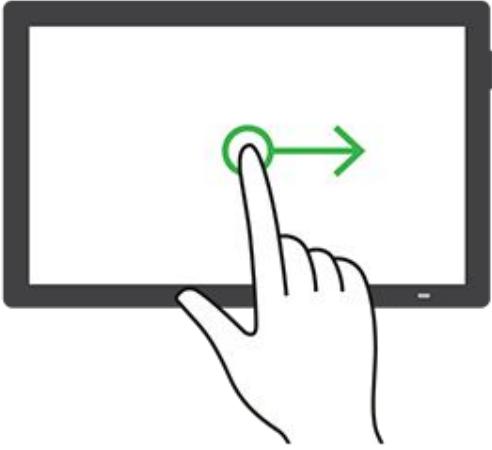
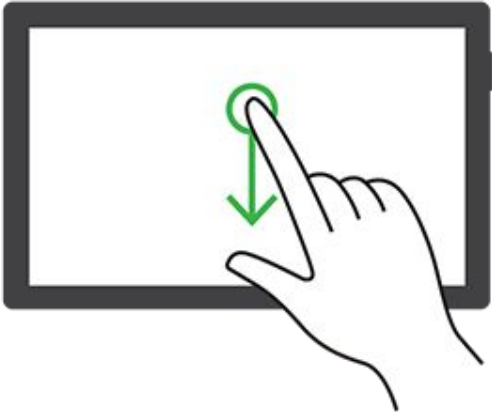
NAVIGATING THE SCREEN USING GESTURES

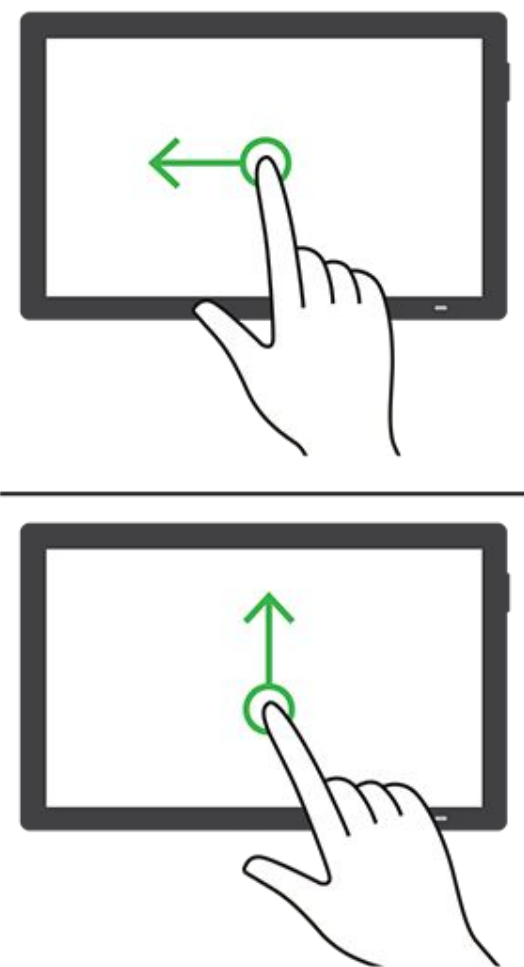
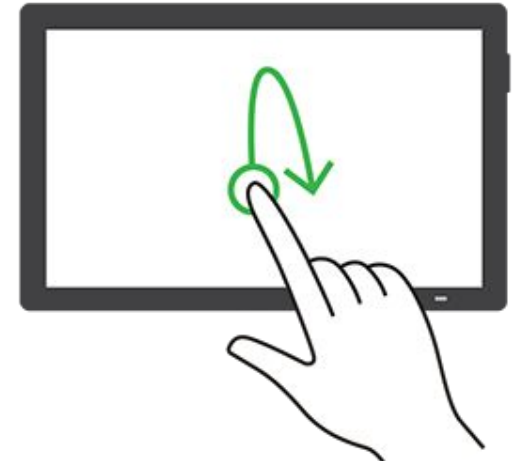


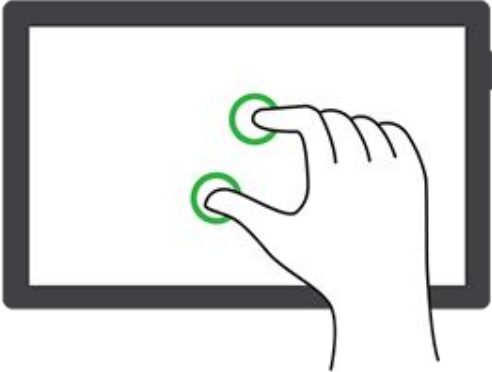
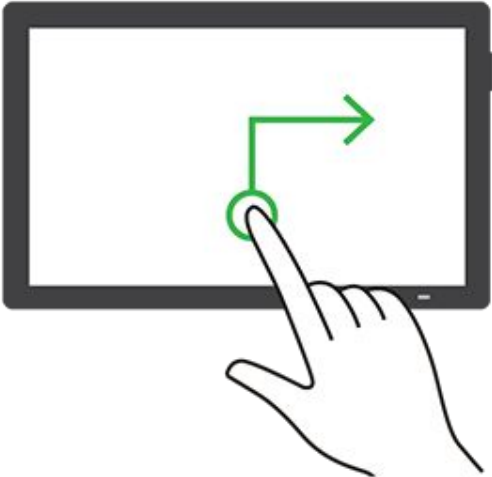
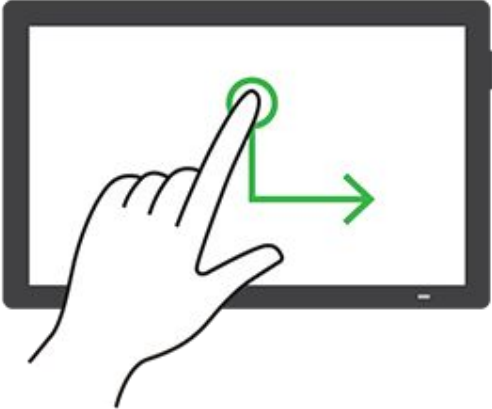
Notes

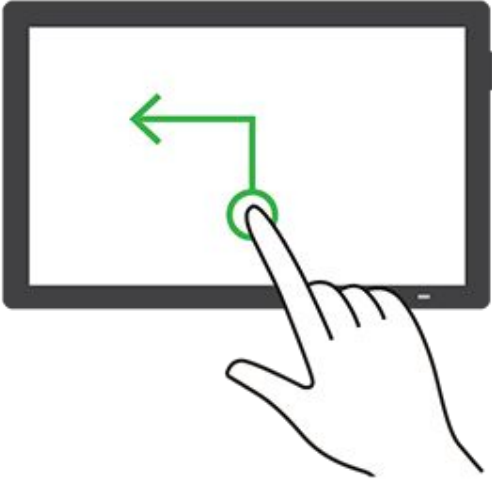
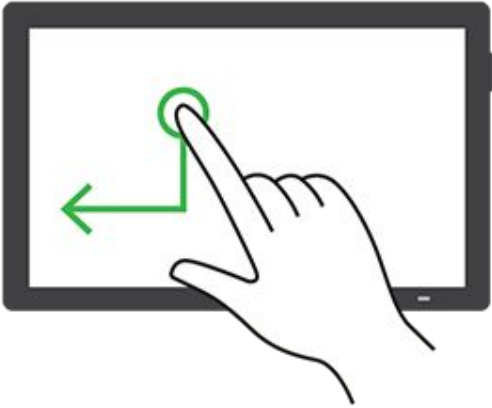
- Most of the gestures are applicable only when Voice Guidance is activated.
- Use a physical keyboard to type characters and adjust certain settings.

Gesture	Function
Swipe left then up using one finger 	Launch or exit Accessibility mode.  Note: This gesture is also applicable when the printer is in normal mode.
Double-tap using one finger 	Select an option or item on the screen.
Double-tap the home icon using two fingers 	Deactivate the Accessibility mode.

Gesture	Function
Triple-tap using one finger 	Zoom in or zoom out text and images.  Note: Enable Magnification mode to use the zoom feature.
Swipe right or swipe down using one finger  	Move to the next item on the screen.

Gesture	Function
Swipe left or swipe up using one finger 	Move to the previous item on the screen.
Swipe up then down using one finger 	Move to the first item on the screen.

Gesture	Function
Pan 	Access parts of the zoomed image that are beyond the limit of the screen.  Notes • Use two fingers to drag a zoomed image. • Enable Magnification mode to use the pan gesture.
Swipe up then right using one finger 	Increase the volume.  Note: This gesture is also applicable when the printer is in normal mode.
Swipe down then right using one finger 	Decrease the volume.  Note: This gesture is also applicable when the printer is in normal mode.

Gesture	Function
Swipe up then left using one finger 	Exit an application and return to the home screen.
Swipe down then left using one finger 	Go back to the previous setting.

USING THE ON-SCREEN KEYBOARD

When the on-screen keyboard appears, do one or more of the following:

- Touch a key to announce and type the character in the field.
- Drag a finger across different characters to announce and type the character in the field.
- Touch a text box using two fingers to announce the characters in the field.
- Touch **Backspace** to delete characters.

ENABLING MAGNIFICATION MODE

1. In one motion and using one finger, slowly swipe left then up on the display until you hear a voice message.



Note: For printer models without built-in speakers, use headphones to hear the message.

2. Using two fingers, do the following:

 **Note:** If the gesture does not work, then apply more pressure.

- a. Touch **Magnification mode**.
- b. Touch **OK**.

 **Note:** If the gesture does not work, then apply more pressure.

For more information on navigating a magnified screen, see [Navigating the screen using gestures on page 50](#).

ADJUSTING THE VOICE GUIDANCE SPEECH RATE

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Accessibility** › **Speech Rate**.
2. Select the speech rate.

ADJUSTING THE DEFAULT HEADPHONE VOLUME

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Accessibility**.
2. Adjust the headphone volume.

 **Note:** The volume resets to the default value after the user exits Accessibility mode or when the printer wakes from sleep or hibernate mode.

ADJUSTING THE DEFAULT INTERNAL SPEAKER VOLUME

1. From the control panel, swipe right to the control center.
2. Adjust the volume.

Notes

- If **Quiet Mode** is enabled, then the audible alerts are turned off. This setting also slows the printer performance.
- The volume resets to the default value after the user exits the Accessibility mode or when the printer wakes from sleep or hibernate mode.

ENABLING SPOKEN PASSWORDS OR PERSONAL IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Accessibility** › **Speak Passwords/PINs**.
2. Enable the setting.

Setting up the printer to fax

SUPPORTED FAX

Printer model	Analog fax	etherFAX ¹	Native fax server (SMTP)	Integrated fax server (eSF App) ²	Fax over IP (FoIP) ²
Xerox® C305ae	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Xerox® XC2432	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Xerox® ZC364	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

¹ Needs a subscription. For more information, go to <https://www.etherfax.net/> or contact the place where you purchased the printer.

² Needs an installed license bundle. For more information, contact the place where you purchased the printer.

SETTING UP THE FAX FUNCTION USING ANALOG FAX



Notes

- A fax card must be installed for the printer to use analog fax.
- Some connection methods are applicable only in some countries or regions.
- If the fax function is enabled and not fully set up, then the indicator light may blink red.
- If you do not have a TCP/IP environment, then use the control panel to set up analog fax.



Warning—Potential Damage

To avoid loss of data or printer malfunction, do not touch cables or the printer in the area shown while actively sending or receiving a fax.



Using the control panel

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **General Fax Settings**.
2. Configure the settings.

Using the Embedded Web Server

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
 - Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
2. Click **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **General Fax Settings**.
 3. Configure the settings.
 4. Apply the changes.

SETTING UP THE FAX FUNCTION USING ETHERFAX

Notes

- The printer firmware must be updated to the latest version. For more information, see the **Printer firmware instructions** section.
- An appropriate license bundle must be installed in your printer. For more information, contact etherFAX.
- Make sure that you have registered your printer to the etherFAX portal. For more information, go to <https://www.etherfax.net/>.

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **General Fax Settings**.



Note: **Fax Setup** appears only if **Fax Mode** is set to **Fax**.

3. In the **Fax Name** field, type a unique name.
4. In the **Fax Number** field, enter the fax number that etherFAX provided.
5. From the **Fax Transport** menu, select **etherFAX**.



- This menu shows up only when more than one fax transport is available.
- If the printer only has etherFAX installed, then it is automatically configured.

6. Apply the changes.

SETTING UP THE FAX FUNCTION USING FAX SERVER



- This feature lets you send fax messages to a fax service provider that supports email receiving.
- This feature supports outgoing fax messages only. To support fax receive, make sure that you have a device-based fax, such as analog fax, etherFAX, or Fax over IP (FoIP), configured in your printer.

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings** › **Fax**.

3. From the **Fax Mode** menu, select **Fax Server**, and then click **Save**.

4. Click **Fax Server Setup**.

5. In the **To Format** field, type **[#]@myfax.com**, where **[#]** is the fax number and **myfax.com** is the fax provider domain.



- If necessary, configure the **Reply Address**, **Subject**, or **Message** fields.
- To let the printer receive fax messages, enable the device-based fax receive setting. Make sure that you have a device-based fax configured.

6. Click **Save**.
7. Click **Fax Server Email Settings**, and then enable **Use Email SMTP Server**.



Note: If the settings are not configured, then see [Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 37](#).

8. Apply the changes.

SETTING UP FAX USING A STANDARD TELEPHONE LINE



Note: These instructions apply only to printers that have a fax card installed.



CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the power cord, fax feature, or telephone, during a lightning storm.



CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

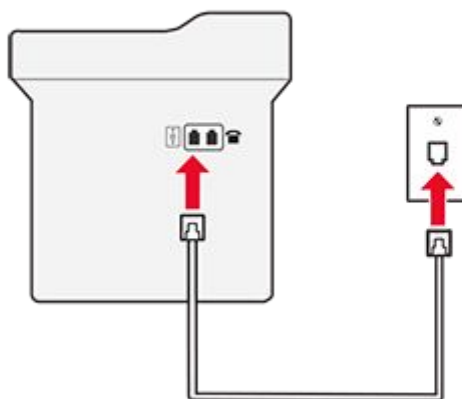
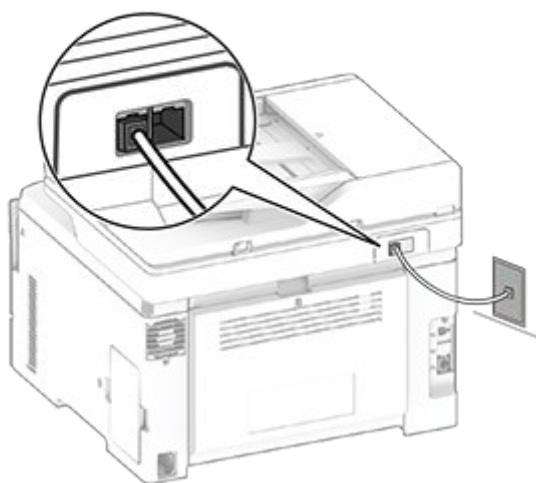
To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To reduce the risk of fire, use only a 26 AWG or larger telecommunications (RJ-11) cord when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network. For users in Australia, the cord must be approved by the Australian Communications and Media Authority.

Setup 1: Printer is connected to a dedicated fax line



1. Connect one end of the telephone cable to the line port of the printer.
2. Connect the other end of the cable to an active analog telephone wall jack.

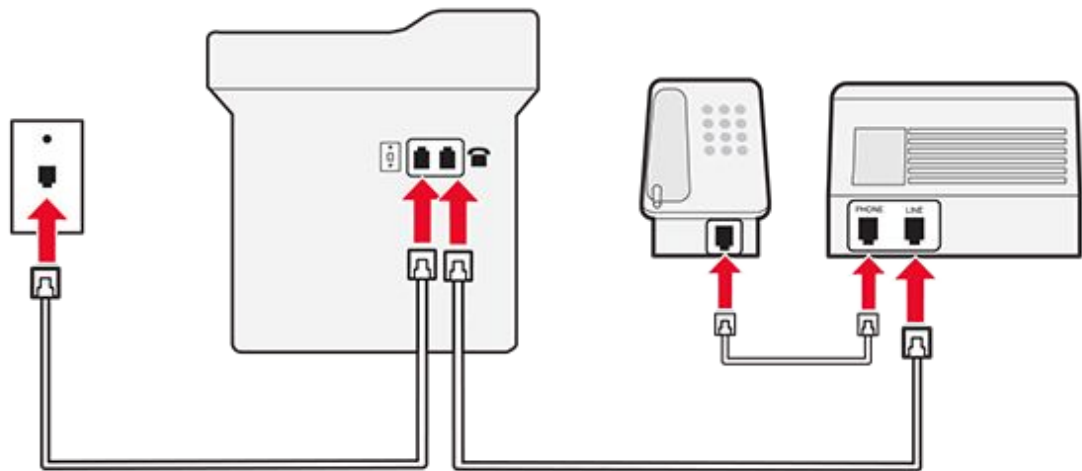
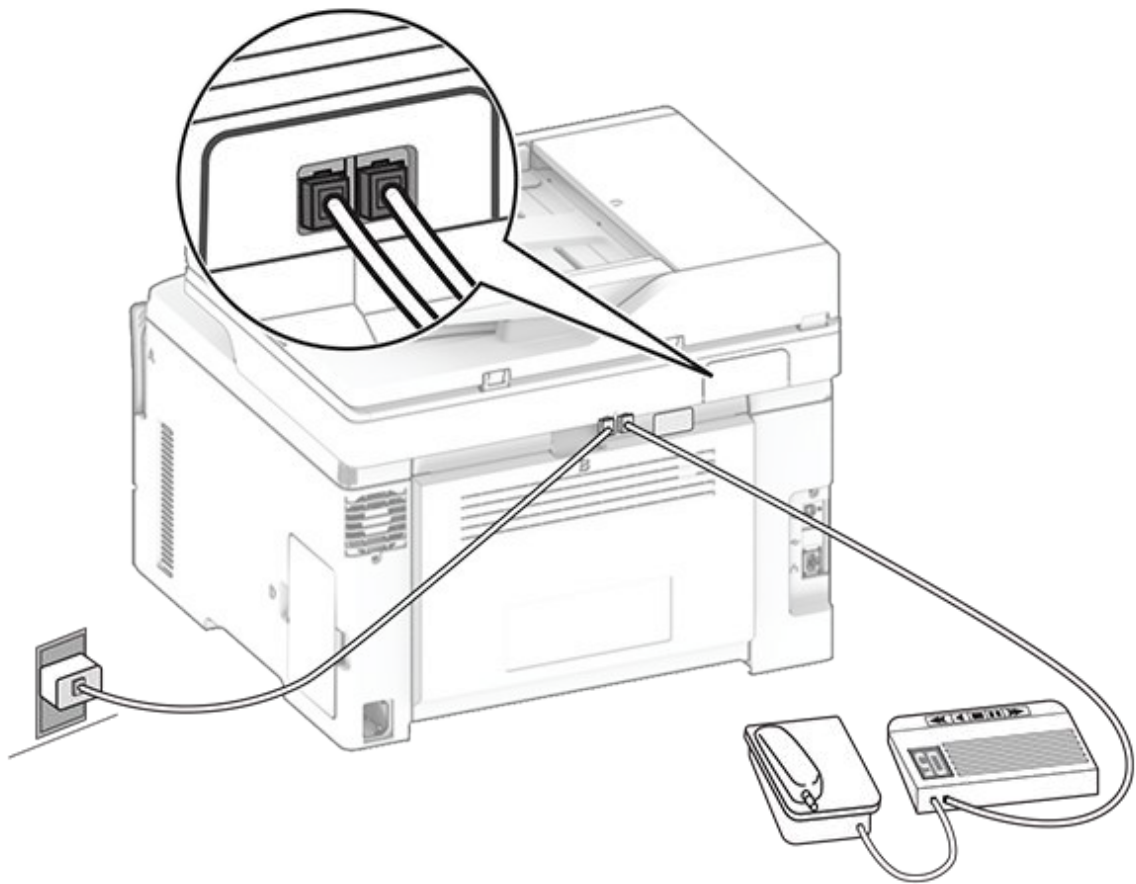
Notes

- You can set the printer to receive faxes automatically (set **Auto Answer** to **On**) or manually (set **Auto Answer** to **Off**).
- If you want to receive faxes automatically, then set the printer to pick up on a specified number of rings.

Setup 2: Printer is sharing the line with an answering machine

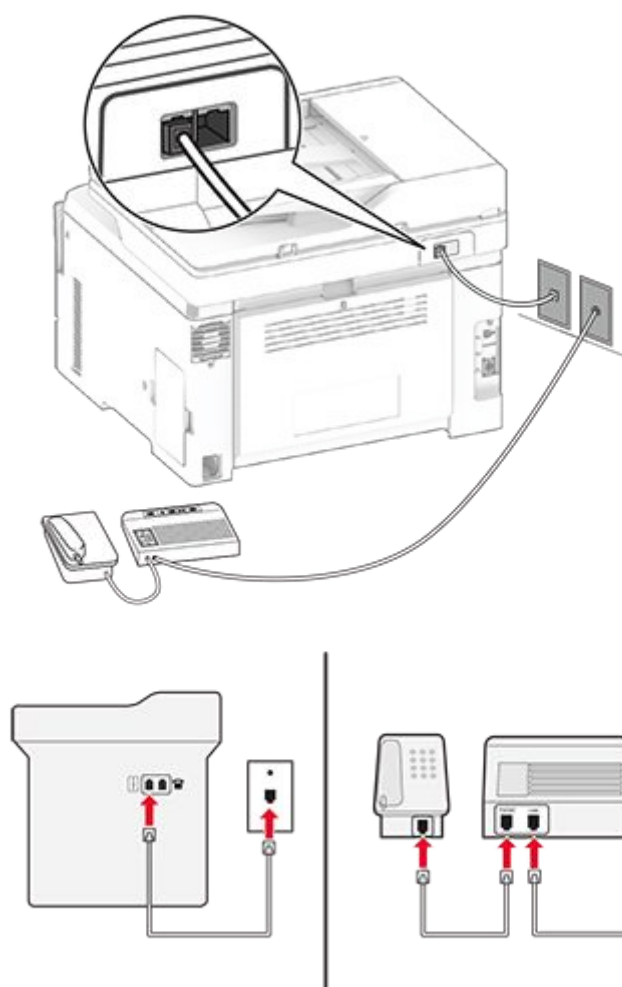
 **Note:** If you subscribe to a distinctive ring service, then make sure that you set the correct ring pattern for the printer. Otherwise, the printer does not receive faxes even if you have set it to receive faxes automatically.

Connected to the same telephone wall jack



1. Connect one end of the telephone cable to the line port of the printer.
2. Connect the other end of the cable to an active analog wall jack.
3. Connect the answering machine to the telephone port of the printer.

Connected to different wall jacks



1. Connect one end of the telephone cable to the line port of the printer.
2. Connect the other end of the cable to an active analog wall jack.

Notes

- If you have only one telephone number on your line, then set the printer to receive faxes automatically.
- Set the printer to pick up calls two rings after the answering machine. For example, if the answering machine picks up calls after four rings, then set the printer **Rings to Answer** setting to **6**.

SETTING UP FAX IN COUNTRIES OR REGIONS WITH DIFFERENT TELEPHONE WALL JACKS AND PLUGS

 **Note:** These instructions apply only to printers that have a fax card installed.



CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the power cord, fax feature, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

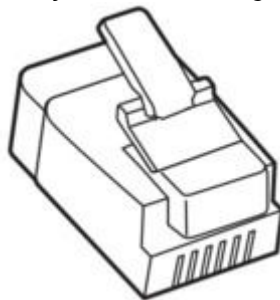
To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

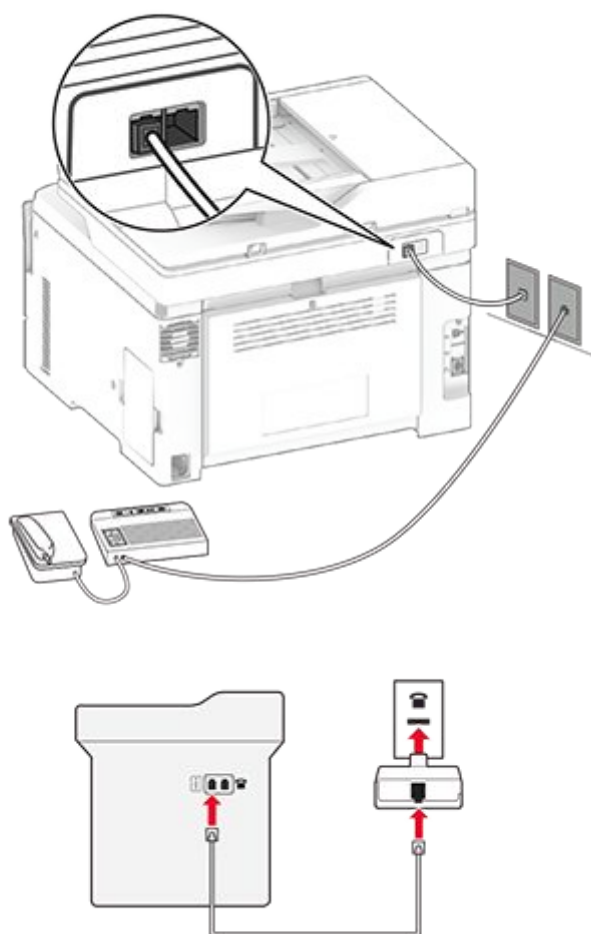
To reduce the risk of fire, use only a 26 AWG or larger telecommunications (RJ-11) cord when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network. For users in Australia, the cord must be approved by the Australian Communications and Media Authority.

The standard wall jack adopted by most countries or regions is RJ-11. If the wall jack or equipment in your facility is not compatible with this type of connection, then use a telephone adapter. An adapter for your country or region may not come with your printer, and you may need to purchase it separately.

There may be an adapter plug installed in the telephone port of the printer. Do not remove the adapter plug from the telephone port of the printer if you are connecting to a serial or cascaded telephone system.



Connecting the printer to a non-RJ-11 wall jack



1. Connect one end of the telephone cable to the line port of the printer.
2. Connect the other end of the cable to the RJ-11 adapter, and then connect the adapter to the wall jack.

 **Note:** If you want to connect another device with a non-RJ-11 connector to the same wall jack, then connect it directly to the telephone adapter.

CONNECTING TO A DISTINCTIVE RING SERVICE

A distinctive ring service lets you have multiple telephone numbers on one telephone line. Each telephone number is assigned a different ring pattern.

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **Fax Receive Settings** › **Admin Controls** › **Answer On**.
2. Select a ring pattern.

SETTING THE FAX DATE AND TIME

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Preferences** › **Date and Time** › **Configure**.
2. Configure the settings.

CONFIGURING DAYLIGHT SAVING TIME

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Preferences** › **Date and Time** › **Configure**.
2. In the **Time Zone** menu, select **(UTC+user) Custom**.
3. In the **Configure** menu, select **UTC (GMT) Offset**.
4. Configure the settings.

CONFIGURING THE FAX SPEAKER SETTINGS

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **Speaker Settings**.
2. Do the following:
 - Set **Speaker Mode** to **Always On**.
 - Set **Speaker Volume** to **High**.
 - Activate **Ringer Volume**.

Loading paper and specialty media

SETTING THE PAPER SIZE AND TYPE

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Paper** › **Tray Configuration** › **Paper Size/Type**.
2. Select a paper source.
3. Set the paper size and type.

SETTING THE PAPER WEIGHT AND TEXTURE

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Paper** › **Media Configuration** › **Media Type Setup**.
2. Select the paper type, and then adjust the **Weight** and **Texture** settings.



Note: Check the ream packaging to confirm the weight of the paper loaded.

Use the following table for reference. The table lists the recommended settings for paper weight, texture, and other print parameters.



Note: Paper type and paper weight support vary by printer model. For more information, see [Supported paper types on page 26](#) and [Supported paper weights](#).

Printer settings					
Paper weight specs	Paper type	Paper weight	Paper texture	Fuser temperature	Toner transfer setting
60–74 gsm (16–20-lb bond)	Plain Paper	Light	Smooth	Light paper low	Light weight, Copy/Office
60–74 gsm (16–20-lb bond)	Plain Paper	Light	Normal	Light paper normal	Light weight, Copy/Office
60–74 gsm (16–20-lb bond)	Plain Paper	Light	Rough	Light paper high	Light weight, Copy/Office
74–90 gsm (20–24-lb bond)	Plain Paper	Normal	Smooth	Plain paper low	Normal weight, Copy/Office
74–90 gsm (20–24-lb bond)	Plain Paper	Normal	Normal	Plain paper normal	Normal weight, Copy/Office
74–90 gsm (20–24-lb bond)	Plain Paper	Normal	Rough	Plain paper high	Normal weight, Copy/Office
90–120 gsm (24–32-lb bond)	Plain Paper	Heavy	Smooth	Heavy paper low	Heavyweight, Premium
90–120 gsm (24–32-lb bond)	Plain Paper	Heavy	Normal	Heavy paper normal	Heavyweight, Premium
90–120 gsm (24–32-lb bond)	Plain Paper	Heavy	Rough	Heavy paper high	Heavyweight, Premium
60–74 gsm Cotton (16–20-lb bond)	Rough/Cotton	Light	Rough	Heavy paper normal	Up to 25 % cotton
74–90 gsm Cotton (20–24-lb bond)	Rough/Cotton	Normal	Rough	Heavy paper normal	Up to 25 % cotton
90–120 gsm Cotton (24–32-lb bond)	Rough/Cotton	Heavy	Rough	Heavy paper normal	100 % cotton
105–165 gsm Coated (39–60-lb cover)	Glossy	Light	Smooth	Light paper normal	High gloss/ Glossy

Printer settings					
Paper weight specs	Paper type	Paper weight	Paper texture	Fuser temperature	Toner transfer setting
105–165 gsm Coated (39–60-lb cover)	Glossy	Light	Normal	Light paper normal	High gloss/ Glossy
105–165 gsm Coated (39–60-lb cover)	Glossy	Light	Rough	Light paper normal	High gloss/ Glossy
165–220 gsm Coated (60–80-lb cover)	Glossy	Normal	Smooth	Light paper high	High gloss/ Glossy
165–220 gsm Coated (60–80-lb cover)	Glossy	Normal	Normal	Light paper high	High gloss/ Glossy
165–220 gsm Coated (60–80-lb cover)	Glossy	Normal	Rough	Light paper high	High gloss/ Glossy
220–300 gsm Coated (80–110-lb cover)	Glossy	Heavy	Smooth	Heavy paper high	High gloss/ Glossy
220–300 gsm Coated (80–110-lb cover)	Glossy	Heavy	Normal	Heavy paper high	High gloss/ Glossy
220–300 gsm Coated (80–110-lb cover)	Glossy	Heavy	Rough	Heavy paper high	High gloss/ Glossy
120–160 gsm (66–90-lb index)	Card Stock	Light	Smooth	Heavy paper low	Card Stock
120–160 gsm (66–90-lb index)	Card Stock	Light	Normal	Heavy paper low	Card stock
120–160 gsm (66–90-lb index)	Card Stock	Light	Rough	Heavy paper low	Card stock
160–220 gsm (90–120-lb index)	Card Stock	Normal	Smooth	Heavy paper normal	Card stock
160–220 gsm (90–120-lb index)	Card Stock	Normal	Normal	Heavy paper normal	Card stock

Printer settings					
Paper weight specs	Paper type	Paper weight	Paper texture	Fuser temperature	Toner transfer setting
160–220 gsm (90–120-lb index)	Card Stock	Normal	Rough	Heavy paper normal	Card stock
220–300 gsm (120–166-lb index)	Card Stock	Heavy	Smooth	Heavy paper high	Card stock
220–300 gsm (120–166-lb index)	Card Stock	Heavy	Normal	Heavy paper high	Card stock
220–300 gsm (120–166-lb index)	Card Stock	Heavy	Rough	Heavy paper high	Card stock
80–130 gsm	Label	Light	Smooth	Heavy paper low	Paper label
80–130 gsm	Label	Light	Normal	Heavy paper low	Paper label
80–130 gsm	Label	Light	Rough	Heavy paper low	Paper label
130–180 gsm	Label	Normal	Smooth	Heavy paper normal	Paper label
130–180 gsm	Label	Normal	Normal	Heavy paper normal	Paper label
130–180 gsm	Label	Normal	Rough	Heavy paper normal	Paper label
180–230 gsm	Label	Heavy	Smooth	Heavy paper high	Paper label
180–230 gsm	Label	Heavy	Normal	Heavy paper high	Paper label
180–230 gsm	Label	Heavy	Rough	Heavy paper high	Paper label
160–180 gsm	Vinyl Label	Light	Smooth	Heavy paper low	Vinyl label
160–180 gsm	Vinyl Label	Light	Normal	Heavy paper low	Vinyl label
160–180 gsm	Vinyl Label	Light	Rough	Heavy paper low	Vinyl label

Printer settings					
Paper weight specs	Paper type	Paper weight	Paper texture	Fuser temperature	Toner transfer setting
180–220 gsm	Vinyl Label	Normal	Smooth	Heavy paper normal	Vinyl label
180–220 gsm	Vinyl Label	Normal	Normal	Heavy paper normal	Vinyl label
180–220 gsm	Vinyl Label	Normal	Rough	Heavy paper normal	Vinyl label
220–300 gsm	Vinyl Label	Heavy	Smooth	Heavy paper high	Vinyl label
220–300 gsm	Vinyl Label	Heavy	Normal	Heavy paper high	Vinyl label
220–300 gsm	Vinyl Label	Heavy	Rough	Heavy paper high	Vinyl label
52–75 gsm (14-lb bond)	Envelope	Light	Smooth	Plain paper low	Envelope
52–75 gsm (14-lb bond)	Envelope	Light	Normal	Plain paper low	Envelope
52–75 gsm (14-lb bond)	Envelope	Light	Rough	Plain paper low	Envelope
75–90 gsm (20-lb bond)	Envelope	Normal	Smooth	Heavy paper low	Envelope
75–90 gsm (20-lb bond)	Envelope	Normal	Normal	Heavy paper low	Envelope
75–90 gsm (20-lb bond)	Envelope	Normal	Rough	Heavy paper low	Envelope
> 90 gsm (24-lb bond)	Envelope	Heavy	Smooth	Heavy paper normal	Envelope
> 90 gsm (24-lb bond)	Envelope	Heavy	Normal	Heavy paper normal	Envelope
> 90 gsm (24-lb bond)	Envelope	Heavy	Rough	Heavy paper normal	Envelope

Notes

- Light Paper uses the same transfer and fuser settings as Plain Paper–Light, based on the selected texture.
- Letterhead, Preprinted, Colored Paper, Bond, and Recycled use the same transfer and fuser settings as Plain Paper–Normal, based on the selected texture.
- Heavy Paper has the same transfer and fuser settings as Plain Paper–Heavy, based on the selected texture.
- Toner transfer is the process of placing the toner on the paper.
- Fusing is the process of melting and fixing the toner to the paper.

CONFIGURING UNIVERSAL PAPER SETTINGS

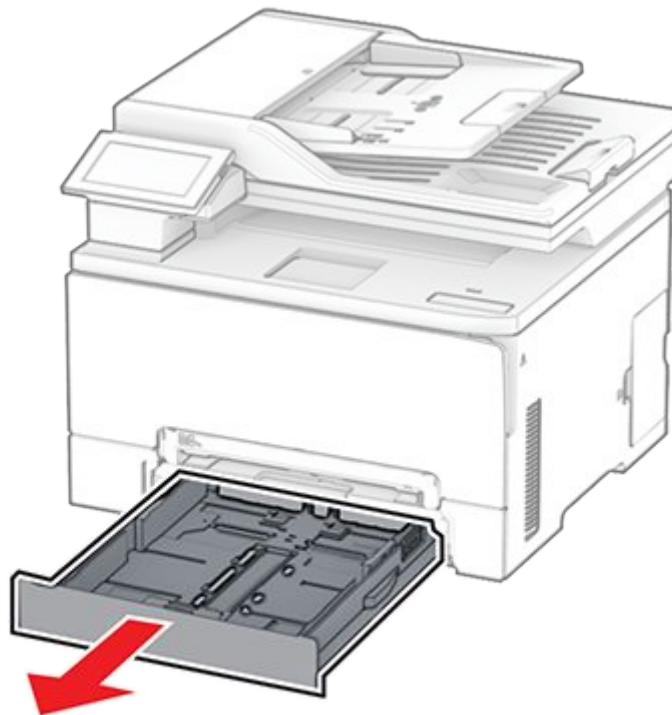
The **Universal Setup** menu lets you set the width and height of a paper size that is not preset in the printer.

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Paper** › **Media Configuration** › **Universal Setup**.
2. Select **All Input Trays**, and then configure the settings for the paper size that you want to customize.

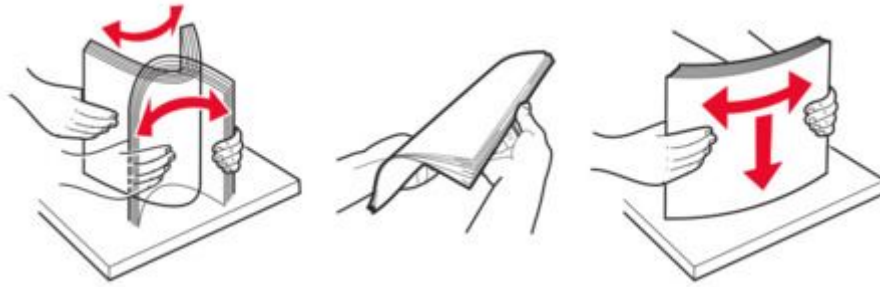
LOADING TRAYS

1. Remove the tray.

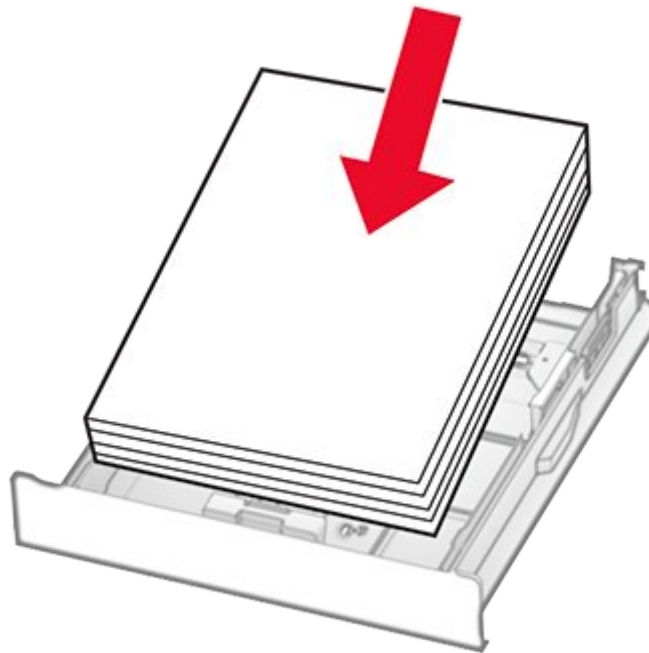
 **Note:** To avoid paper jams, do not remove trays while the printer is busy.



2. Flex, fan, and align the paper edges before loading.

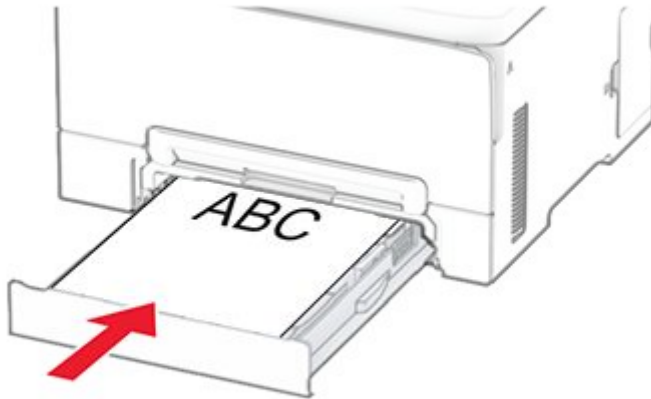


3. Load the paper stack with the printable side face up.

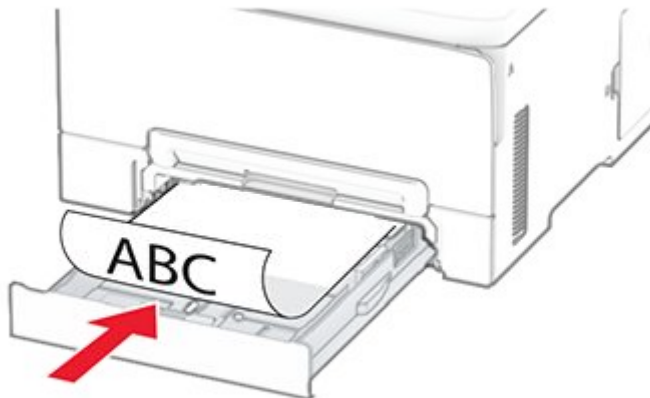


 Notes

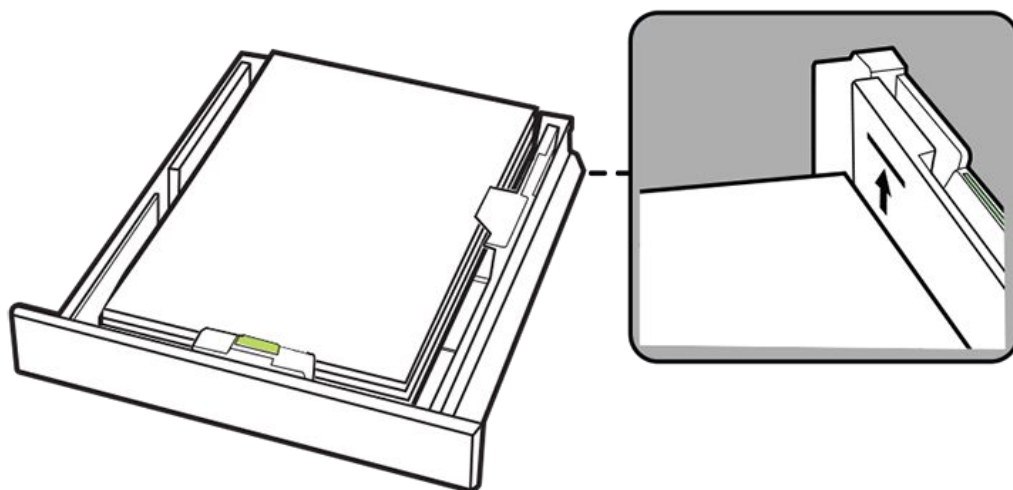
- Load letterhead face up with the header toward the back of the tray for one-sided printing.



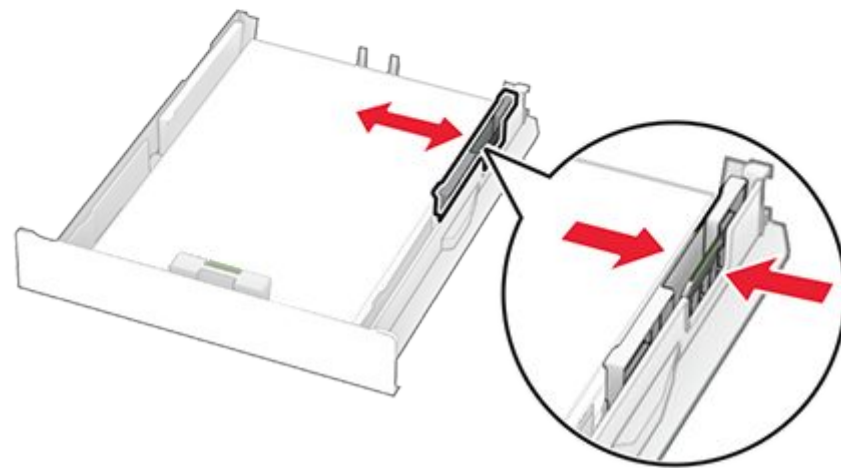
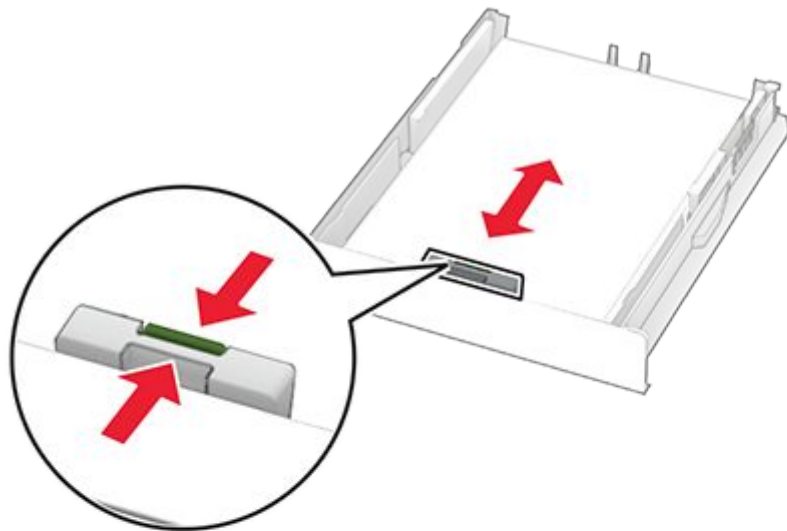
- Load letterhead face down with the header toward the front of the tray for two-sided printing.



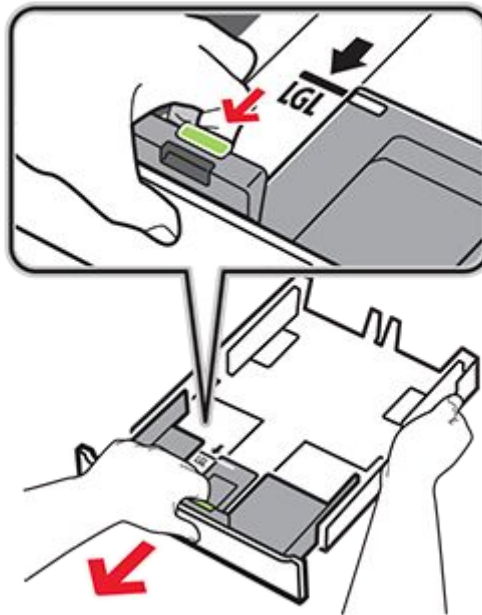
- Do not slide paper into the tray.
- To avoid paper jams, make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line.



4. Adjust the guides to match the size of the paper that you are loading.



 **Note:** When loading paper longer than A4, such as folio or legal, hold the side of the tray, and then press and pull the front guide to extend it.



5. Insert the tray.

 **Note:** The tray does not fully close when paper longer than A4 is loaded.

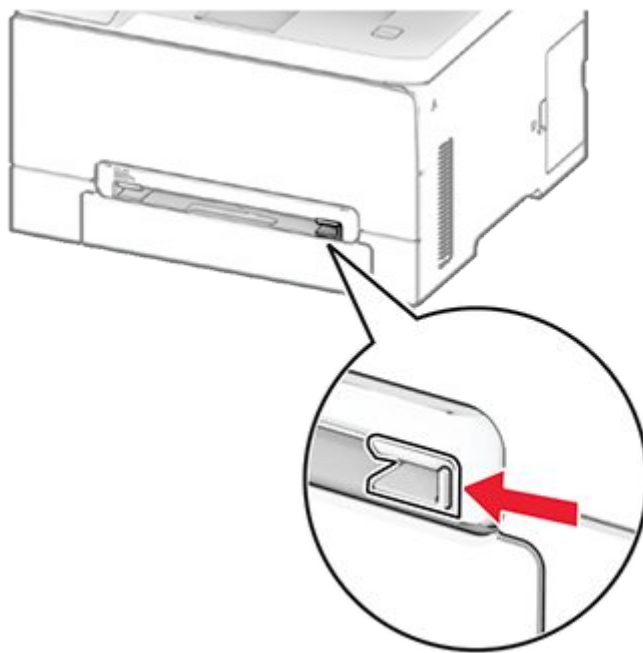
If necessary, set the paper size and paper type from the control panel to match the paper loaded. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).

LOADING THE MANUAL FEEDER

Notes

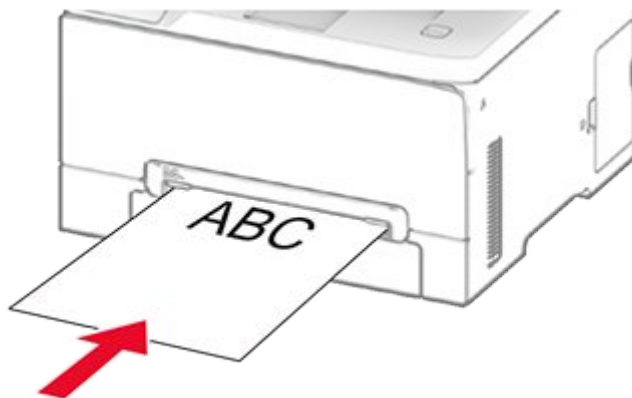
- Do not load the manual feeder until all previous print jobs are complete and the printer has returned to Ready.
- Load only one sheet at a time into the manual feeder.
- If you load a sheet into the manual feeder, the printer will print that sheet next.

1. Adjust the guide to match the size of the paper that you are loading.



2. Load a sheet of paper with the printable side face up.

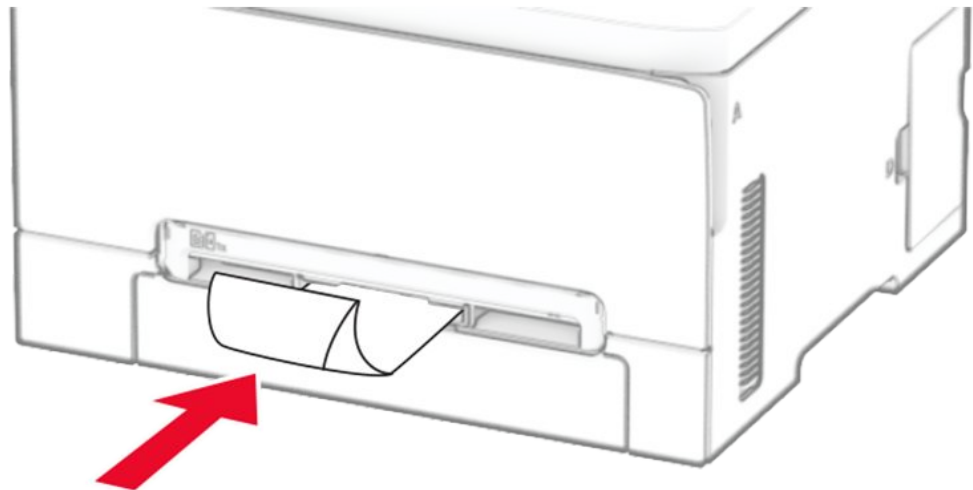
- For one-sided printing, load letterhead with the printable side face up and the top edge entering the printer first.



- For two-sided printing, load letterhead with the printable side face down and the top edge entering the printer last.



- Load envelope with the flap side down and against the right side of the paper guide.



3. Feed the paper until its leading edge gets pulled in.

 **Note:** To avoid paper jams, do not force paper into the manual feeder.

LINKING TRAYS

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Paper** > **Tray Configuration** > **Paper Size/Type**.
2. Select the trays that you want to link, and then set the paper size and paper type.



- Make sure the trays are loaded with the same paper size and paper type.
 - Make sure the paper in each tray is loaded in the same direction.
3. Return to the control panel, and then navigate to **Settings › Device › Maintenance › Configuration Menu › Tray Configuration**.
 4. Set **Tray Linking** to **Automatic**.

To unlink the trays, make sure that no trays have the same paper size and paper type settings.



The temperature of the fuser varies according to the specified paper type. To avoid printing issues, match the paper type setting in the printer with the paper loaded in the tray.

Installing and updating software, drivers, and firmware

DOWNLOADING THE PRINTER SOFTWARE

The printer software may include the print, fax, and scan drivers. Before installing the printer software, verify that the printer is plugged in, powered on, connected correctly, and has a valid IP address.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
- Download the latest drivers from www.support.xerox.com.

After installing the print driver software, you can set printing preferences and default driver settings.

Printing settings, such as banner pages and Page Description Language options, are configured through the Embedded Web Server. To change these settings, contact your system administrator or see the *Embedded Web Server Administrator's Guide* at www.support.xerox.com.

Supported operating systems

- Windows 11, Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2019, Windows Server 2022, and Windows Server 2025
- Macintosh OS version 14 and later
- UNIX and Linux—Your printer supports connection to various UNIX platforms through the network interface

INSTALLING THE PRINT DRIVER FOR A WINDOWS NETWORK PRINTER

1. Go to www.support.xerox.com.
2. In the **Find a product** field, enter your printer model, and then click **Drivers & Downloads**.
3. In the **Xerox Smart Start – Driver Installer** section, select the checkbox for **I agree to the Terms and Conditions**.
4. Click **Download**.

5. When the download completes, double-click **XeroxSmartStart_(version).exe**.
6. Accept the License Agreement by clicking **Agree**.
7. From the list of discovered printers, select your printer.

If your printer is not listed, then do the following:

- a. Click **Don't See Your Printer?**
 - b. Enter the printer IP address, and then click **Advanced Search**.
 - c. Configure the settings, and then click **Install**.
8. Click **Advanced Install**.
 9. Click **Install**.

INSTALLING THE PRINT DRIVERS FOR A WINDOWS USB PRINTER

1. Connect the B end of a standard A/B USB 2.0 or USB 3.0 cable to the USB port at the rear of the printer.



Note: Make sure the USB port is enabled. For more information, see [Enabling the USB port on page 327](#).

2. Connect the A end of the cable to the USB port on the computer.
3. If the Windows Found New Hardware Wizard appears, click **Cancel**.
4. Go to www.support.xerox.com.
5. In the **Find a product** field, enter your printer model, and then click **Drivers & Downloads**.
6. Find Xerox Smart Start, and then click **Agree** to accept the license agreement.
7. Click **Download**.
8. When the download completes, double-click **XeroxSmartStart_(version).exe**.
9. Accept the License Agreement by clicking **Agree**.
10. Select your printer, and then click **Quick Install**.

A confirmation message appears when installation is successful.

11. Click **Done**.

INSTALLING THE DRIVERS AND UTILITIES FOR MACINTOSH OS (MACOS)

1. Go to www.support.xerox.com.
2. In the **Find a product** field, enter your printer model, and then click **Drivers & Downloads**.
3. Select your Macintosh operating system, and then click **Apply filters**.
4. Agree to the terms and conditions and download the driver.
5. Open the Downloads folder, and then double-click the downloaded .dmg file.
6. In the installer window, double-click the driver installer package (.pkg).
7. Click **Continue**.
8. Review the license agreement, click **Continue**, and then click **Agree**.
9. Click **Install** to begin the installation.
10. If prompted, enter the administrator name and password, and then click **Install Software**.

11. From the list of discovered printers, select your printer, and then click **Continue**.

If your printer does not appear in the list, do the following:

- a. Click **Don't See Your Printer?**
- b. Type the printer IP address.
- c. Select your printer and click **Continue**.



Note: If your printer is not detected, then make sure it is powered on and the Ethernet or USB cable is securely connected.

12. Click **Continue**, and then click **Close**.

INSTALLING PRINT DRIVERS AND UTILITIES FOR UNIX AND LINUX PRINTING

To enable network printing, UNIX-based printing uses LPD/LPR port 515 or TCP/IP to port 9100. Xerox printers can support both protocols. For more information on installing print drivers and utilities for UNIX and Linux, go to www.support.xerox.com.

Xerox® Print Manager

Xerox® Printer Manager is an application that helps you manage and print to multiple printers in UNIX and Linux environments.

With Xerox® Print Manager, you can:

- Check the status of and configure network-connected printers.
- Set up printers on your network and monitor their operation.
- Perform maintenance checks and view supplies status any time.
- Ensure a consistent look and feel across different UNIX and Linux operating systems.

Installing Xerox® Print Manager

Before you begin, make sure that you have admin privileges.

1. Download the appropriate package for your operating system from www.support.xerox.com. Available files include:
 - XeroxOSDPkg-AIXpowerpc-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.rpm to support IBM PowerPC family
 - XeroxOSDPkg-HPUIa64-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.depot.gz to support HP Itanium workstations
 - XeroxOfficev5Pkg-Linux686-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.rpm to support RPM-based 32-bit Linux environments
 - XeroxOfficev5Pkg-Linux686-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.deb to support Debian-based 32-bit Linux environments
 - XeroxOfficev5Pkg-Linuxx86_64-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.rpm to support RPM-based 64-bit Linux environments
 - XeroxOfficev5Pkg-Linuxx86_64-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.deb to support Debian-based 64-bit Linux environments
 - XeroxOSDPkg-SunOSi386-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.pkg.gz to support Sun Solaris x86 systems
 - XeroxOSDPkg-SunOSSparc-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.pkg.gz to support Sun Solaris SPARC systems
2. To install the custom print driver, log in as root, and then type the appropriate command for your operating system:

- AIX

```
rpm -U XeroxOSDPkg-AIXpowerpc-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.rpm
```

- HPUX

```
swinstall -s XeroxOSDPkg-HPUXia64-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.depot.gz \*
```

- Solaris, x86 based

```
pkgadd -d XeroxOSDPkg-Sun0Si386-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.pkg
```

- Solaris, SPARC based

```
pkgadd -d XeroxOSDPkg-Sun0Ssparc-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.pkg
```

The installation creates a Xerox directory in `/opt/Xerox/prtsys`.

3. To install the Xerox® Office Standard Driver on Linux, log in as root, and then type the appropriate command for your operating system:

- Linux, RPM based

```
rpm -U XeroxOfficev5Pkg-Linuxi686-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.rpm
```

- Linux, Debian based

```
dpkg -i XeroxOfficev5Pkg-Linuxi686-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.deb
```

The installation creates a XeroxOffice directory in `/opt/XeroxOffice/prtsys`.

Launching Xerox® Print Manager

1. Open a command window on your computer. At the prompt, log in as root, and then type `xerxofficeprtmgr`.
2. Press **Enter** or **Return**.

ADDING PRINTERS TO A COMPUTER

Adding a printer to a computer using the Xerox® Print and Scan Experience app

1. Open the **Xerox® Print and Scan Experience** app.

If you do not have the app, then do the following:

- a. Go to www.xerox.com and search for **Xerox Print and Scan Experience**.
- b. Click **Print and Scan Experience App for Windows 10 and 11 and macOS - Xerox**.
- c. Click **Download now** and choose a location for the file.
- d. Download the application.
- e. Run the installer.

Follow the on-screen instructions. Your computer must have internet access for the installer to work.

2. Click **Add printer**.

If your printer is not listed, then do the following:

- a. Click **Don't See Your Printer?**
 - b. Type the printer IP address.
3. Click **Install**.

Adding a printer as a TCP/IP device

Before you begin, do one of the following:

- Connect the printer and computer to the same network, either Wi-Fi or Ethernet. For more information on Wi-Fi setup, see [Connecting the printer to a Wi-Fi network on page 97](#).
- Enable **Wi-Fi Direct**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Network/Ports > Wi-Fi Direct > Enable Wi-Fi Direct**.

Using Xerox Smart Start - Driver Installer

1. Go to www.support.xerox.com.
2. In the **Find a product** field, enter your printer model, and then click **Drivers & Downloads**.
3. In the **Xerox Smart Start – Driver Installer** section, select the checkbox for **I agree to the Terms and Conditions**.
4. Click **Download**.
5. When the download completes, double-click **XeroxSmartStart_(version).exe**.
6. Accept the License Agreement by clicking **Agree**.
7. From the list of discovered printers, select your printer.

If your printer is not listed, then do the following:

- a. Click **Don't See Your Printer?**
 - b. Enter the printer IP address, and then click **Advanced Search**.
 - c. Configure the settings, and then click **Install**.
8. Click **Advanced Install**.
9. Click **Install**.

Adding a printer to a Windows computer as an IPP device

1. Open **Printers & scanners**.
2. Click **Add device**.

If the printer that you want to add is not listed, then do the following:

- a. Click **Add a new device manually**.
 - b. In the **Add Printer** window select **Add a printer using an IP address or hostname**, and then click **Next**.
 - c. In **Device type**, select **IPP Device**.
 - d. In the **Hostname or IP address** field, type the printer IP address, and then click **Next**.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

e. Click **Finish**.

Adding a printer as a Web Service on Devices

Web Services on Devices (WSD) lets you discover and access remote devices and their services across a network. WSD supports device discovery, control, and use.

Adding a WSD Printer using the Add Device Wizard

1. Open **Printers and scanners**.
2. Click **Add a Device**.
3. From the list of available devices, select your printer, and then click **Next**.



Note: If your printer is not listed, then click **Cancel**. To add the printer manually, use its IP address.

4. Click **Close**.

Adding a printer to a Mac computer

Using AirPrint

1. Open **Printers & Scanners**.
2. Click **Add Printer, Scanner, or Fax**, and then select a printer.



Notes

- If you want custom printing features, then install the macOS Print Driver Installer. For more information, see [Downloading the printer software on page 79](#).
- If the macOS Print Driver Installer is already installed, then do the following:
 - a. In the **Use** menu, choose **Select Software**, and then choose the macOS Print Driver.
 - b. Click **OK**.

3. Click **Add**.



Note: Depending on your printer model, a dialog may appear asking you to add a Fax printer.

Adding the printer by specifying the IP address

1. From the computer Applications folder or from the dock, open **System Preferences**.
2. Click **Printers & Scanners**.
3. In the list of printers, click the Plus (+) icon.

4. Click **IP**.
5. From the Protocol list, select the protocol.
6. In the **Address** field, enter the IP address of the printer.
7. In the **Name** field, enter a name for the printer.
8. From the Use list, choose **Select a driver to use**.
9. From the printer software list, select the print driver for your printer model.
10. Click **Add**.

EXPORTING A CONFIGURATION FILE

Exporting a configuration file lets you save the current settings of your printer to a file, which you can use as a backup or apply to another printer.

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. In the Embedded Web Server, click **Export Configuration**.
3. Select a configuration to export.



Note: Depending on the configuration that you selected, the files are exported in either ZIP or CSV format.

IMPORTING A CONFIGURATION FILE

Importing a configuration file lets you apply previously saved settings to your printer. This is useful when restoring a backup or setting up another printer with the same configuration.

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. In the Embedded Web Server, click **Import Configuration**.
3. Browse to the location where the file is saved.



Note: Depending on the configuration that you selected, the files are saved in either ZIP or CSV format.

4. Click **Import**.

PRINTER FIRMWARE INSTRUCTIONS

Checking the printer firmware version

Using the Embedded Web Server

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Reports** › **Device** › **Device Information**.
3. Look for **Base**.



Note: The firmware version appears as sets of letters and numbers separated by periods. For example, ABCDE.123.123.

Using the control panel

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **About this Printer**.
2. Look for **Firmware Version**.



Note: The firmware version appears as sets of letters and numbers separated by periods. For example, ABCDE.123.123.

Downloading the printer firmware



Note: Download the firmware only if you plan to update it using the Embedded Web Server with a firmware flash file or a flash drive.

1. Go to www.support.xerox.com.
2. In the **Find a product** field, enter the printer model.
3. Go to **Drivers & Downloads**.
4. In the **Category** menu, select **Firmware**, and then click **Apply Filters**.
5. Select **I agree to the Terms and Conditions**.
6. Click **Download**.

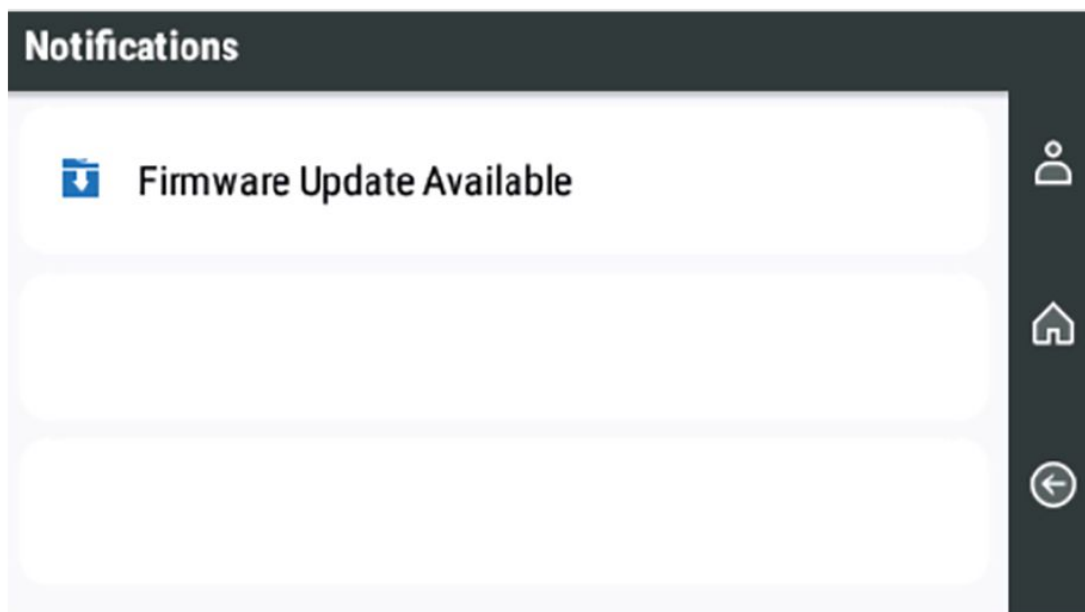
Updating firmware

Updating the firmware using the control panel

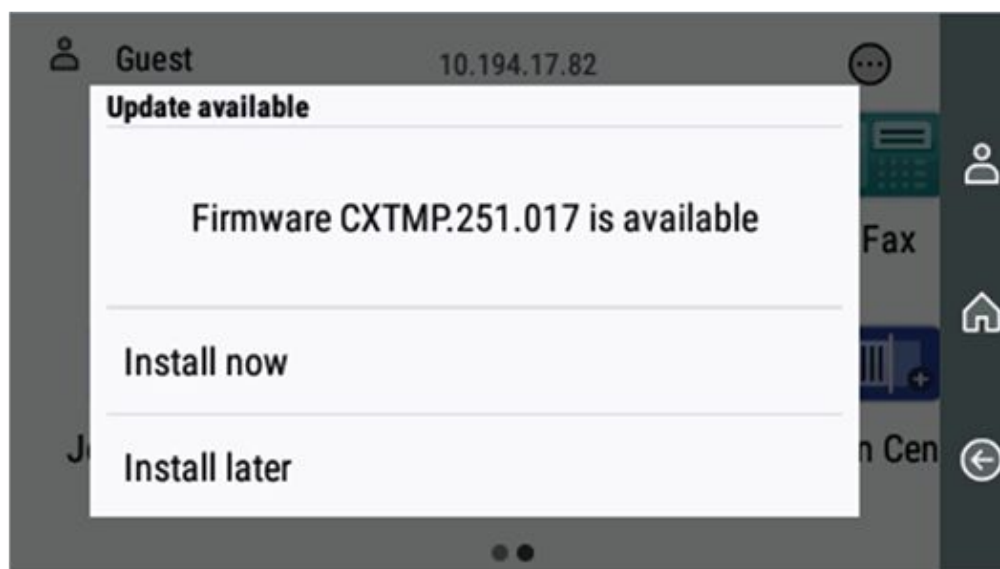
Keeping your printer firmware updated helps it run efficiently and securely. Firmware updates can improve performance, add new features, fix firmware or hardware issues, and enhance the security of your printer and network.

Using Notification Center

1. From the home screen, select the notification icon to go to the Notification Center screen.
2. Select **Firmware update available**.



3. Select **Install now**.



The printer restarts automatically after the update.

Using the Settings menu

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Device**.

2. Depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
 - Select **Firmware Update** › **Check for updates**.
 - Select **Update firmware** › **Check for updates now**.

3. If an update is available, then select **Install now**.

The printer restarts automatically after the update.

Updating the firmware using the Embedded Web Server

Keeping your printer firmware up-to-date helps it run efficiently and securely. Firmware updates can improve performance, add new features, fix firmware or hardware issues, and enhance the security of your printer and network.

Using the update button

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
 - Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
2. Click **Device**.
 3. Depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
 - Select **Firmware Update** › **Check for updates**.
 - Select **Update firmware** › **Check for updates now**.
 4. If an update is available, then select **Install now**.

The printer restarts automatically after the update.

Using the firmware flash file (.fls)

Before you begin, make sure that:

- The printer and computer are connected to the same network.
- You have downloaded the firmware file (.fls). For more information, see [Downloading the printer firmware on page 86](#).

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
2. Click **Device**.
 3. Click **Firmware Update**.

4. In the **Update Firmware from File** section, click **Browse**.
5. Search, and then select the **.fls** file.
6. Click **Upload**.

The printer restarts automatically after the update.

Updating the firmware using a flash drive

Before you begin, make sure that:

- You have downloaded the firmware to your computer or flash drive. For more information, see [Downloading the printer firmware on page 86](#).
- The flash drive is formatted to FAT32.

1. Insert the flash drive into the front USB port of the printer.

The flash drive contents appear automatically on the display. If they do not, select **USB Drive** on the control panel.

2. Locate and select the **.fls** file.
3. Select **Update Code**.

The printer restarts automatically after the update.

Installing hardware options

AVAILABLE INTERNAL OPTIONS

- Intelligent storage drive
 - Fonts
 - Simplified Chinese
 - Traditional Chinese
 - Japanese
 - Korean
 - Arabic
 - Licensed features
 - IPDS
 - Bar Code
 - Formsmerge support
 - PRESCRIBE support
- Card reader
 - USB Contactless Front Reader TWN MultiTech-PI
 - Desktop Contactless Reader TWN4 MultiTech 2 LF HF-PI
 - USB Contactless Front Reader TWN4 MultiTech-P LEGIC
 - USB Smart Card Contact Front Reader (CAC)

INSTALLING OPTIONAL TRAYS



CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

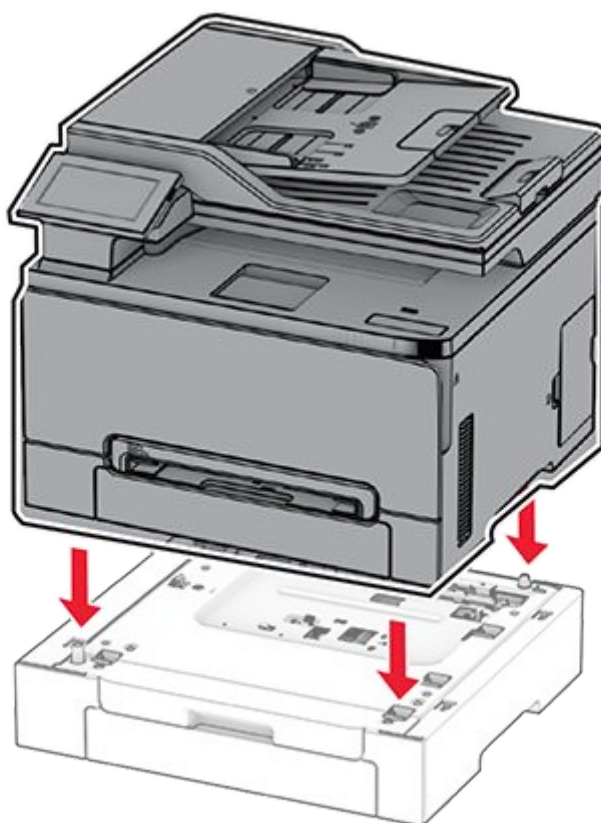
To avoid the risk of electrical shock, if you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then from the printer.
3. Unpack the optional tray, and then remove all packing material.
4. Align the printer with the optional tray, and then lower the printer into place.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

If the printer weight is greater than 20 kg (44 lb), then it may require two or more people to lift it safely.



5. Connect the power cord to the printer, and then to the electrical outlet.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

6. Turn on the printer.

INSTALLING THE CARD READER

Before installing the card reader, make sure the printer is updated to the latest firmware and completely dry.

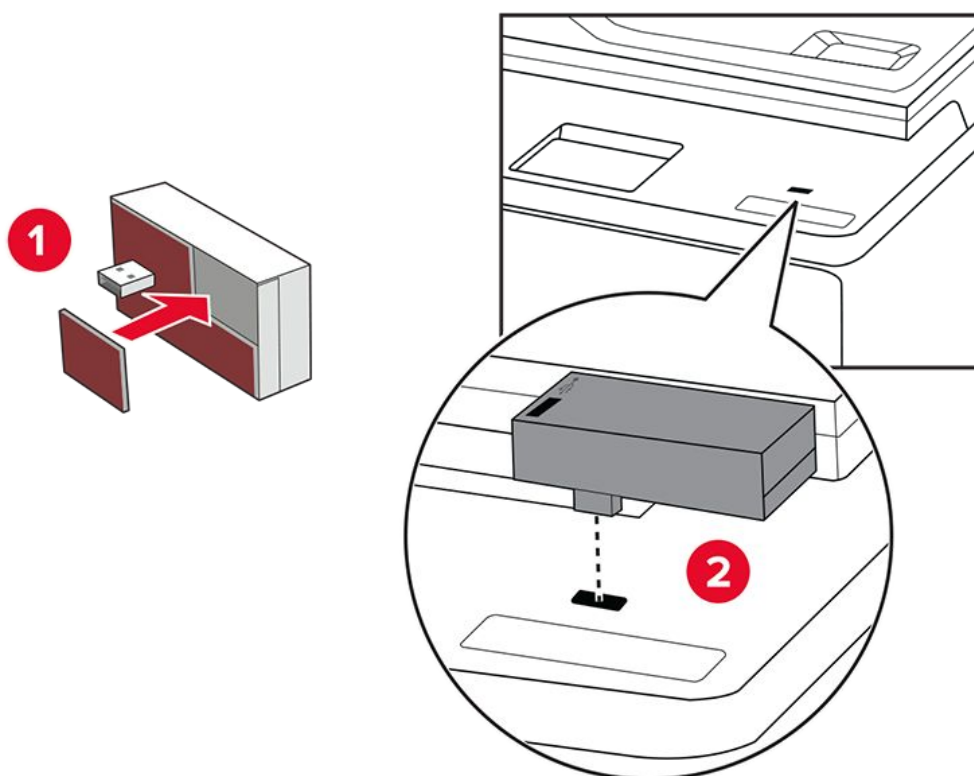
Notes

- The card reader uses strong adhesive and is difficult to remove once attached.
- Some card readers require a separate license.
- Some card readers require you to install the Smart Card Authentication Client application on the printer.

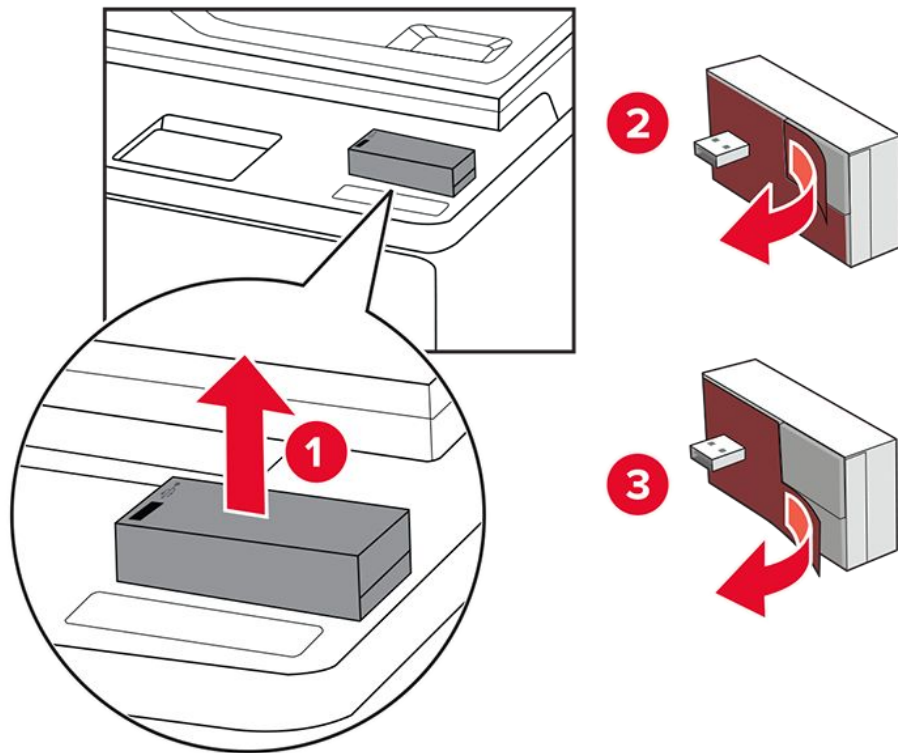
1. Turn off the printer.
2. Apply isopropyl alcohol to a soft, lint-free cloth, and then wipe the area around the front USB.
3. Depending on your card reader, do one of the following:
 - If your card reader includes a holder, attach it to the front or side of the printer, and then insert the card reader into the rear USB port.

 **Note:** Do not attach the holder on the door, vent or paper exit path.

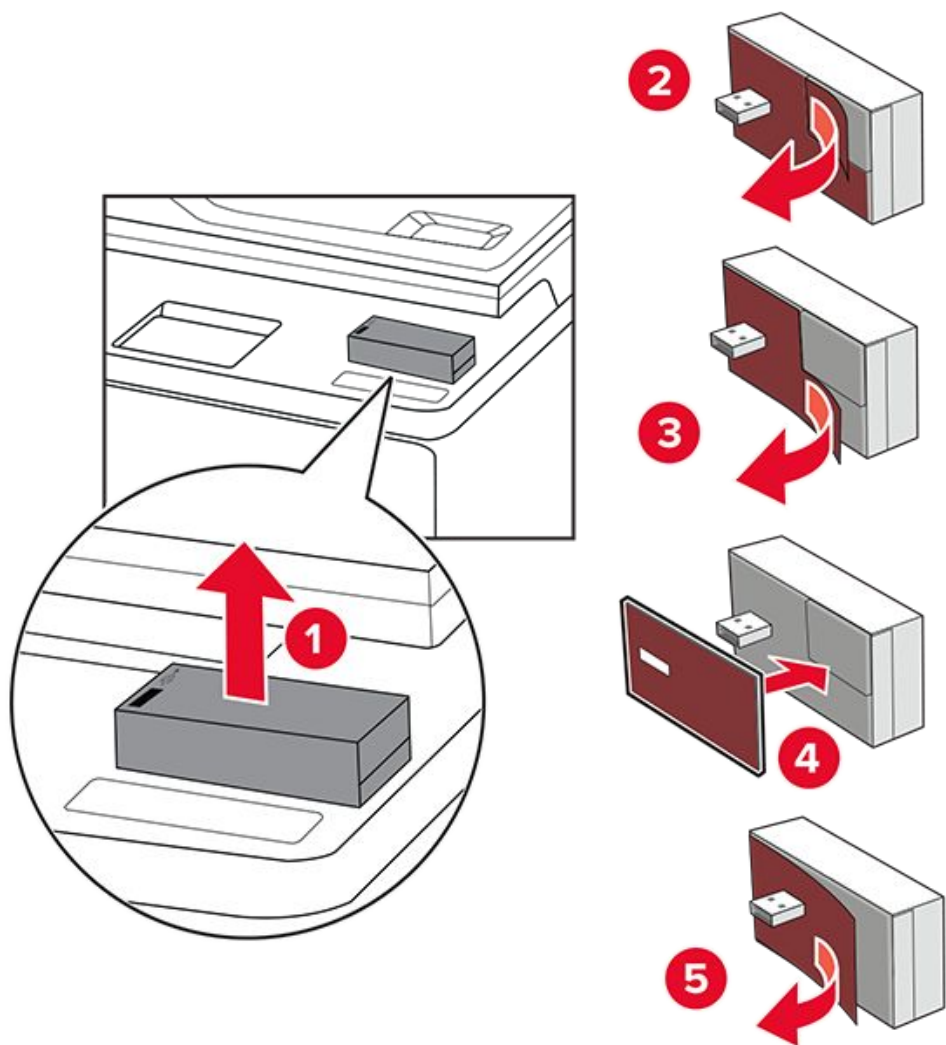
- If your card reader includes a spacer, then do the following:
 - a. Check for any gaps between the card reader and the printer. Without removing the liner, place the small spacer on the card reader, and then insert the card reader into the front USB port.



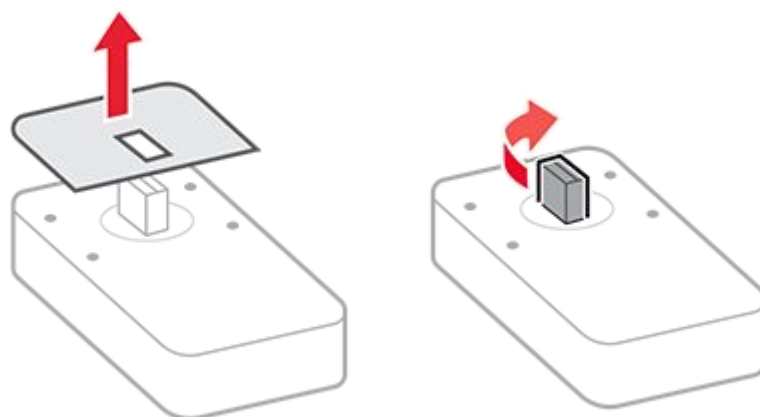
- If there is no gap, then remove the card reader and peel off the liners from the card reader.



- If there is a gap, remove the card reader, and then peel off the liners from the card reader. Attach the large spacer, and then remove the liners from the spacer.



- b. Insert the card reader into the front USB port.
- If your card reader has a protective cover, then do the following:
 - a. Remove the protective cover and rotate the USB connector 90°.



- b. Attach the adhesive pads or the mounting bracket.
- c. Insert the card reader into the front USB port.

4. Turn on the printer.

 **Note:** Some card readers may require you to wait for 24–72 hours before you can use the printer.

INSTALLING THE INTELLIGENT STORAGE DRIVE

 **Note:** The intelligent storage drive is available only in certain printer models.



CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

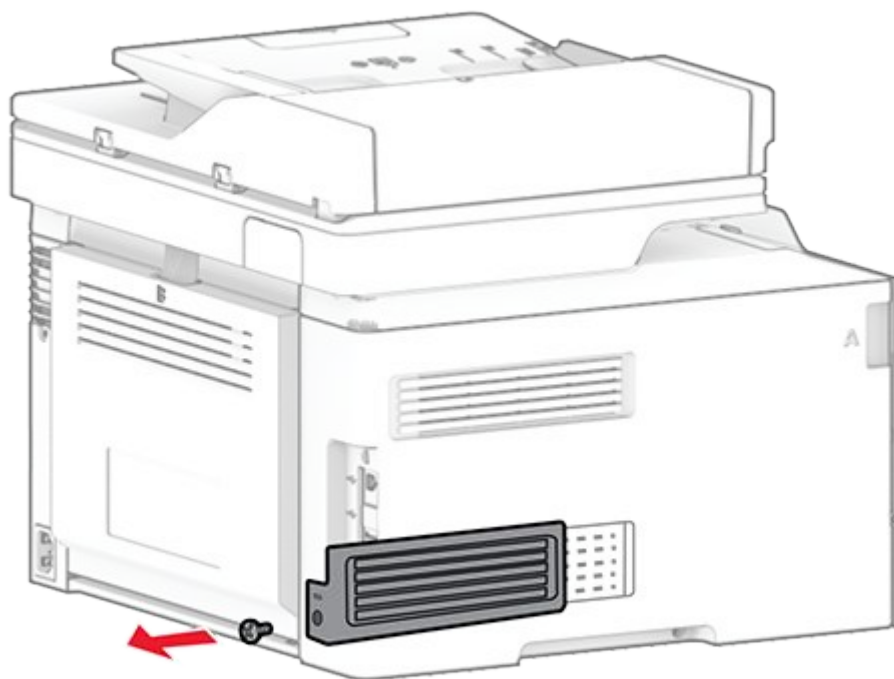
To avoid the risk of electrical shock, if you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then from the printer.
3. Using a flat-head screwdriver, open the controller board access cover.



Warning—Potential Damage

Controller board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch a metal surface on the printer before touching any controller board components or connectors.

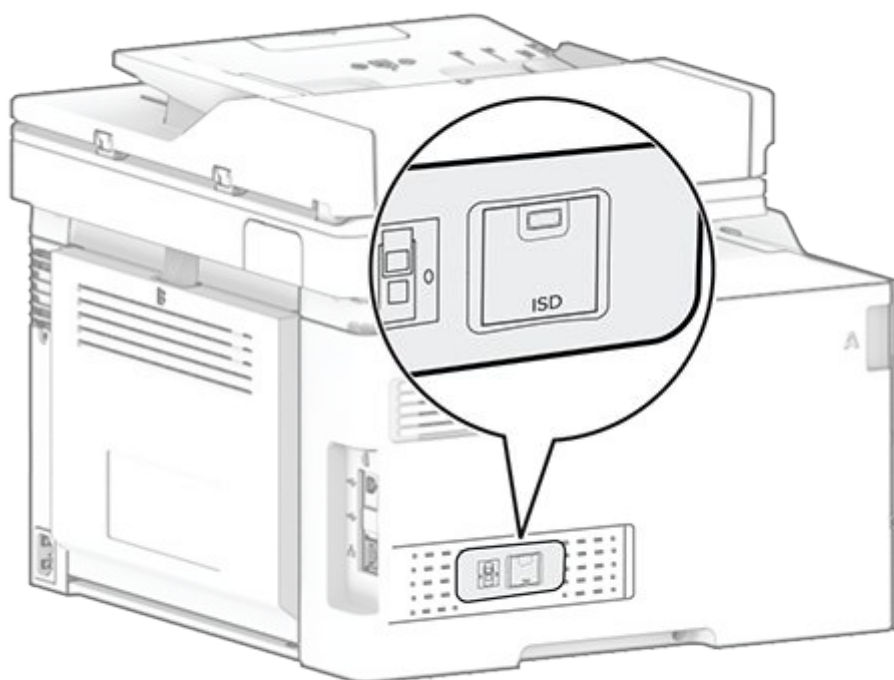


4. Unpack the intelligent storage drive (ISD).

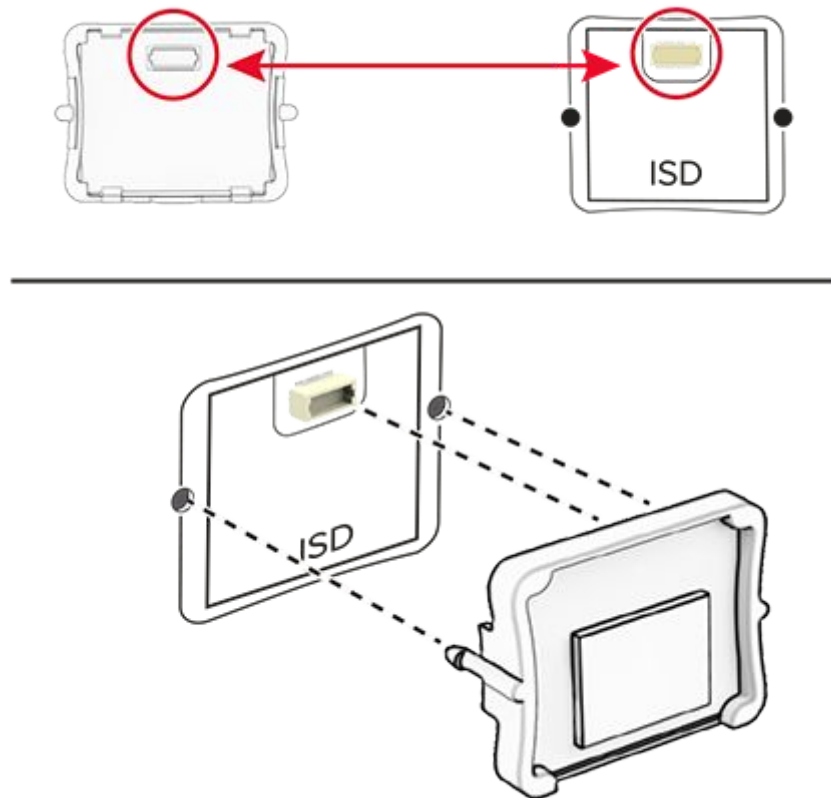
 Warning—Potential Damage

Avoid touching the connection points along the edge of the storage drive.

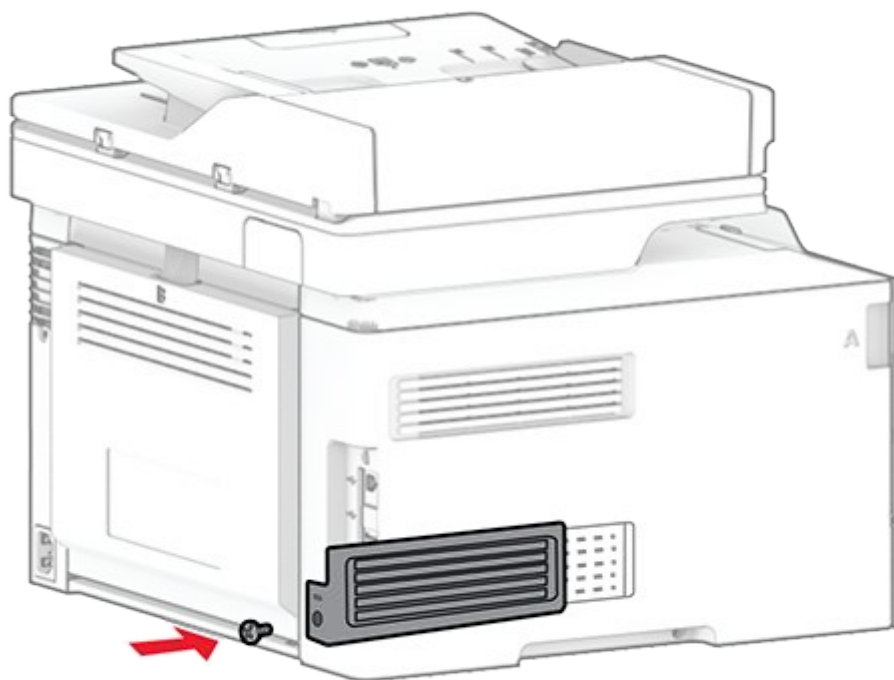
5. Locate the ISD connector.



6. Insert the ISD to its connector.



7. Close the controller board access cover, and then install the screw.



8. Connect the power cord to the printer, and then to the electrical outlet.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

9. Turn on the printer.

Networking

CONNECTING THE PRINTER TO A WI-FI NETWORK

Before you begin, make sure that:

- **Active Adapter** is set to **Auto**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Network/Ports** › **Network Overview** › **Active Adapter**.
 - The Ethernet cable is not connected to the printer.
1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Network/Ports** › **Wireless** › **Setup On Printer Panel** › **Choose Network**.
 2. Select a Wi-Fi network, and then type the network password.

 **Note:** For printers with built-in Wi-Fi capability, a prompt for setting up the Wi-Fi network appears during initial setup.

CONFIGURING WI-FI DIRECT

Wi-Fi Direct® lets devices connect directly without using an access point (wireless router).

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Network/Ports** › **Wi-Fi Direct**.
2. Configure the settings.
 - **Enable Wi-Fi Direct**—Allow the printer to broadcast its Wi-Fi Direct network.
 - **Wi-Fi Direct Name**—Set a name for the network.
 - **Wi-Fi Direct Password**—Set a password for a secure peer-to-peer connection.
 - **Show Password on Setup Page**—Show the password on the Network Setup Page.
 - **Preferred Channel Number**—Choose the preferred channel of the Wi-Fi Direct network.
 - **Group Owner IP Address**—Assign the IP address of the group owner.
 - **Auto-Accept Push Button Requests**—Let the printer accept connection requests automatically.

 **Note:** Accepting push-button requests automatically is not secured.

 **Note:** To find the Wi-Fi Direct password without showing it on the printer display, print the **Network Setup Page**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Reports** › **Network** › **Network Setup Page**.

CONNECTING A MOBILE DEVICE TO THE PRINTER USING WI-FI DIRECT

Before connecting your mobile device, make sure that **Wi-Fi Direct** has been configured. For more information, see [Configuring Wi-Fi Direct on page 98](#).

Using the Wi-Fi Direct menu

 **Note:** These instructions apply only to mobile devices running on the Android™ platform.

1. On your mobile device, open the **Wi-Fi** menu.
2. Enable **Wi-Fi**, and then tap .
3. Tap **Wi-Fi Direct**.
4. Select the printer Wi-Fi Direct name.
5. Confirm the connection on the printer control panel.

Using the Wi-Fi menu

1. On your mobile device, open the **Wi-Fi** menu.

2. Enable **Wi-Fi**, and then select the printer Wi-Fi Direct name.



Note: The string **DIRECT-xy** (where *x* and *y* are two random characters) is added before the Wi-Fi Direct name.

3. Enter the Wi-Fi Direct password.

DEACTIVATING THE WI-FI NETWORK

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Network/Ports** › **Network Overview** › **Active Adapter** › **Standard Network**.
2. Select **Yes** to restart the printer.

CHECKING THE PRINTER CONNECTIVITY

1. Print the **Network Setup Page** report. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Reports** › **Network** › **Network Setup Page**.
2. In the **Network Overview** section, check if **Card Status** is connected.

If the status is not connected, then the wireless network or LAN is inactive or the network cable may be damaged. Contact your administrator for assistance.

Secure the printer

This chapter contains

- Erasing printer memory..... 101
- Erasing data from a storage drive 101
- Restoring factory default settings..... 101
- Statement of Volatility 102

4. Secure the printer

Erasing printer memory

To erase volatile memory or buffered data in your printer, turn off the printer.

To erase nonvolatile memory, device and network settings, security settings, and embedded solutions, do the following:

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Maintenance** › **Out of Service Erase**.
2. Select **Sanitize all information on nonvolatile memory**, and then select **Erase**.
3. Select **Start initial setup wizard** or **Leave printer offline**, and then select **Next**.
4. Start the process.

 **Note:** This process deletes the encryption key used to protect user data, making the data unrecoverable.

Erasing data from a storage drive

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Maintenance** › **Out of Service Erase**.
2. Depending on the storage drive installed on your printer, do either of the following:
 - For hard disk, select **Sanitize all information on hard disk**, select **Erase**, and then select a method to erase data.

 **Note:** The process to sanitize the hard disk can take from several minutes to more than an hour, making the printer unavailable for other tasks.

- For intelligent storage drive, select **Erase Intelligent Storage Drive**, and then select **Erase**.

Restoring factory default settings

Restoring the printer to its factory default settings resets all customized configurations and settings to their original state.

USING THE CONTROL PANEL

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Restore Factory Defaults** › **Restore Settings**.
2. Select the settings that you want to restore.
 - **Restore printer settings**
 - **Restore network settings**
 - **Restore fax settings**
 - **Restore app settings**

 **Notes**

- This setting is supported only in certain printer models.
- When this setting is selected, all apps that are not preinstalled on the printer are removed.

3. Select **Restore**.
4. Select **Start**.

The printer restarts automatically after the reset is completed.

USING THE EMBEDDED WEB SERVER

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings** › **Device** › **Restore Factory Defaults**.
3. Select the settings that you want to restore.

- **Restore printer settings**
- **Restore network settings**
- **Restore fax settings**
- **Restore app settings**



Notes

- This setting is supported only in certain printer models.
- When this setting is selected, all apps that are not preinstalled on the printer are removed.

4. Click **Start**.

The printer restarts automatically after the reset is completed.

Statement of Volatility

Type of memory	Description
Volatile memory	The printer uses standard random access memory (RAM) to buffer temporarily user data during simple print and copy jobs.
Nonvolatile memory	The printer may use two forms of nonvolatile memory: EEPROM and NAND (flash memory). Both types store the operating system, printer settings, and network information. They also store scanner and bookmark settings and embedded solutions.
Hard disk	Some printers may have a hard disk drive installed. The printer hard disk is designed for printer-specific functionality. The hard disk lets the printer retain buffered user data from complex print jobs, form data, and font data.
Intelligent storage drive (ISD)	Some printers may have an ISD installed. ISD uses nonvolatile flash memory to store user data from complex print jobs, form data, and font data.

Erase the content of any installed printer memory in the following circumstances:

- The printer is decommissioned.
- The printer hard disk or ISD is replaced.
- The printer is moved to a different department or location.
- The printer is serviced by someone from outside your organization.
- The printer is removed from your premises for service.
- The printer is sold to another organization.



Note: To dispose a hard disk or ISD, follow the policies and procedures of your organization.

Print

This chapter contains

Printing from a computer	105
Printing from a mobile device	106
Printing from a flash drive	107
Managing secure or confidential print jobs	108
Printing a font sample list	111
Canceling a print job	111
Adjusting toner darkness.....	111

5. Print

Printing from a computer

USING THE XEROX® PRINT AND SCAN EXPERIENCE APP

1. Open the Xerox® Print and Scan Experience app.
2. Select a printer, and then click **Print**.
3. In the File Explorer or Finder window, select a file, and then click **Open**.
4. Configure the print settings, and then click **Print**.

USING WINDOWS APPS

If you are printing from Word, PowerPoint, or Adobe Acrobat™, do the following:

1. Click **File** or **Menu > Print** or press **Ctrl + P**.
2. In the Print dialog, select a printer, and then click **Printer Properties** or **Properties**.
3. Configure the settings, and then click **OK**.
4. Click **Print**.

If you are printing from a web browser, do the following:

1. Click the **Settings** menu (the three dots in the upper-right corner) or press **Ctrl + P**.
2. In the Print dialog, depending on your browser, do either of the following:
 - Select a printer, and then click **Print using system dialog**.
 - Select a printer, click **More settings**, and then click **Print using system dialog**.
3. In the system dialog, click **More settings**.
4. Configure the settings, and then click **OK**.
5. Click **Print**.

USING AIRPRINT

If you are printing from Preview, Safari, Word, or PowerPoint, do the following:

1. Click **File > Print** or press **command + P**.
2. In the Print dialog, select a printer, and then configure the print settings.
3. Click **Print**.

If you are printing from a browser other than Safari, do the following:

1. Click **File > Print** or press **command + P**.
2. In the Adobe Print dialog, at the lower-left corner, click **Printer**.
3. In the Print dialog, select a printer, and then configure the print settings.
4. Click **Print** to return to the Adobe Print dialog, and then click **Print** to send the print job.

If you are printing from a browser other than Safari, do the following:

1. Click **File > Print** or press **command + P**.
2. In the Print dialog, depending on your browser, do either of the following:
 - Click **Print using system dialog**.
 - Click **More settings**, and then click **Print using system dialog**.
3. In the system dialog, select a printer, and then configure the print settings.
4. Click **Print**.

Printing from a mobile device

PRINTING FROM A MOBILE DEVICE USING XEROX® EASY ASSIST APP

 **Note:** Before printing, make sure the Xerox® Easy Assist app is already installed. For more information, see [Xerox® Easy Assist \(XEA\) on page 33](#).

1. On your mobile device, open the Xerox® Easy Assist app, and then select **Print**.
2. Select a document from the file manager and adjust the print settings if needed.
3. Tap **Print**.

PRINTING FROM A MOBILE DEVICE USING MOPRIA™ PRINT SERVICE

Mopria Print Service is a mobile printing solution for mobile devices running on the Android™ platform version 5.0 or later. It lets you print directly to any Mopria™ certified printer.

Before printing, ensure the following:

- Mopria Print Service is installed from the Google Play™ store and enabled.
- The mobile device and the printer are connected to the same network.
- Wi-Fi Direct is enabled on both the mobile device and the printer.
- The printer is added in the Mopria Print Service.

1. On your mobile device, open a compatible application or select a document from the file manager.

2. Tap  > **Print**.

3. Select a printer and adjust the settings if needed.

4. Tap .

PRINTING FROM A MOBILE DEVICE USING AIRPRINT

AirPrint lets you print directly from Apple devices to an AirPrint-certified printer.

 **Note:** Make sure the Apple device and the printer are connected to the same network. If multiple wireless hubs exist, both devices must be on the same subnet.

1. On your mobile device, open a compatible application or select a document from the file manager.

2. Tap  > **Print**.

3. Select a printer and adjust the settings if needed.
4. Print the document.

PRINTING FROM A MOBILE DEVICE USING WI-FI DIRECT®

Use this feature to print documents to a Wi-fi direct-ready printer.

 **Note:** Make sure that the mobile device is connected to the printer wireless network. For more information, see [Connecting a mobile device to the printer using Wi-Fi Direct on page 98](#).

1. From your mobile device, launch a compatible application or select a document from your file manager.
2. Depending on your mobile device, do one of the following:

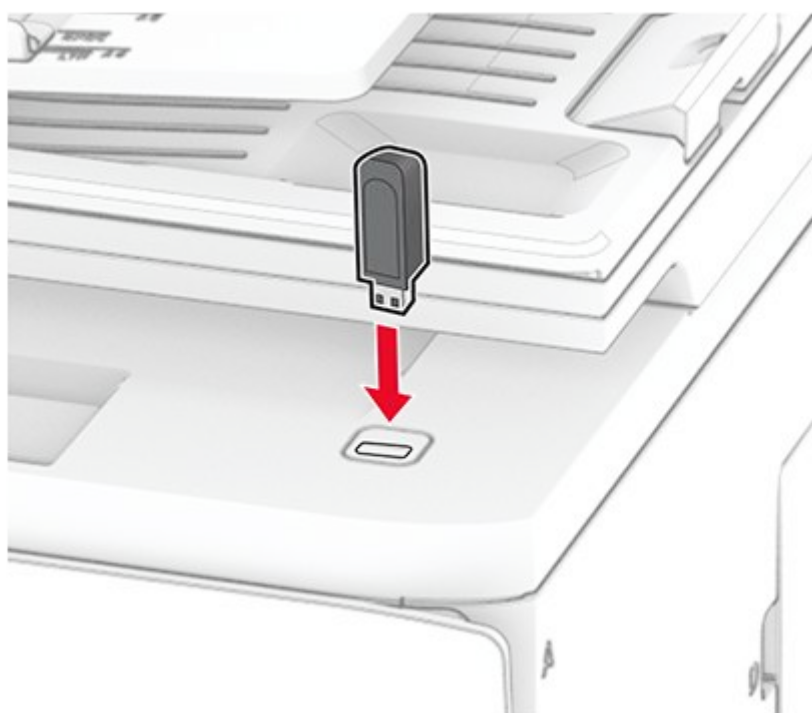
- Tap  › **Print**.
- Tap  › **Print**.
- Tap  › **Print**.

3. Select a printer and adjust the settings if needed.
4. Print the document.

Printing from a flash drive

1. Insert the flash drive into the front USB port.

For more information on supported flash drives, see [Supported flash drives and file types on page 27](#).



Notes

- If you insert the flash drive when an error message appears, then the printer ignores the flash drive.
- If you insert the flash drive while the printer is processing other print jobs, then **Busy** appears on the display.

2. From the control panel, select **Print**.
3. Select the document that you want to print and configure the print settings if needed.
4. From the control panel, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
 - Select **Print**.

- Select 

Warning—Potential Damage

To avoid loss of data or printer malfunction, do not touch the flash drive or the printer in the area shown while actively printing, reading, or writing from the memory device.

To print another document, navigate to **Print › USB Drive**.



Managing secure or confidential print jobs

CONFIGURING HELD JOBS

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Security › Held Jobs Setup**.

 **Note:** A held job is either **Confidential**, **Repeat**, **Reserve**, or **Verify**.

2. Configure the settings.

Setting	Submenu item	Description
Require All Jobs to be Held	N/A	Hold all print jobs.
Keep Duplicate Documents	N/A	Keep all documents with the same file name.
Confidential Jobs	Max Invalid PIN	Set the maximum number of invalid PIN attempts.  Note: When the limit is reached, the print jobs for that username are deleted.
	Job Expiration	Set the expiration time for confidential held jobs before they are automatically deleted from the printer memory or intelligent storage drive.
	Keep Held Jobs	Keep confidential held jobs.
Repeat Job	Job Expiration	Set the expiration time for repeat print jobs.
	Keep Held Jobs	Keep repeat print jobs.
Verify Job	Job Expiration	Set the expiration time for printing a copy of a job to check its quality before printing the remaining copies.
	Keep Held Jobs	Keep verify print jobs.

CREATING A SECURE PRINT JOB

Notes

- Download and install the Xerox® Print and Scan Experience app before proceeding. For more information, see [Downloading the printer software on page 79](#).
- Held jobs may get deleted before they expire or without any intervention if memory resources become low. If your printer supports a storage drive, then install an intelligent storage drive to increase storage for held jobs.

Using the Xerox® Print and Scan Experience app

1. Open the Xerox® Print and Scan Experience app.

2. Select a printer, and then click **Print**.
3. In the File Explorer or Finder window, select a file, and then click **Open**.
4. Enable **Secure Print (Confidential)**, enter a 4- to 10-digit PIN, and then click **Done**.
5. Click **Print**.

Using Windows apps

If you are printing from Word, PowerPoint, or Adobe Acrobat™, do the following:

1. Click **File** or **Menu > Print** or press **Ctrl + P**.
2. In the Print dialog, select a printer, and then click **Printer Properties** or **Properties**.
3. Enable **Secure Print (Confidential)**.
4. Enter a 4- to 10-digit PIN, and then click **Done**.
5. Click **Print**.

If you are printing from a web browser, do the following:

1. Click the **Settings** menu (the three dots in the upper-right corner) or press **Ctrl + P**.
2. In the Print dialog, depending on your browser, do either of the following:
 - Select a printer, and then click **Print using system dialog**.
 - Select a printer, click **More settings**, and then click **Print using system dialog**.
3. In the system dialog, click **More settings**.
4. Enable **Secure Print (Confidential)**.
5. Enter a 4- to 10-digit PIN, and then click **Done**.
6. Click **Print**.

Using Macintosh apps

1. With a document open, choose **File > Print**.
2. Select a printer.
3. In the **Print Job Security** menu, enable **Print with PIN**, and then enter a four-digit PIN.
4. Click **Print**.
5. From the printer control panel, release the print job.
 - a. Select **Held jobs**, and then select the computer name.
 - b. Select **Confidential**, and then enter the PIN.
 - c. Select the print job, and then select **Print**.

PRINTING A SECURE OR CONFIDENTIAL PRINT JOB



Note: These instructions apply only if you have already created a secure or confidential print job. For more information, see [Creating a secure print job on page 109](#).

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Print > Held Jobs**.

2. Select your username, and then select **Confidential**.
3. Enter your PIN, and then select **OK**.
4. Select a print job, and then select **Print**.

Printing a font sample list

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Reports › Print › Print Fonts**.
2. Select the font type.

Canceling a print job

1. From the control panel, select **Job Queue**.
2. Select **Print**, and then select a job to cancel.



Note: If a document is already printing, select **Cancel job** in the lower-right corner of the display to stop printing.

Adjusting toner darkness

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality**.
2. Adjust the setting for **Toner Darkness**.

Copy

This chapter contains

- Making copies 113
- Copying photos..... 113
- Copying on letterhead..... 113
- Copying on both sides of the paper 114
- Reducing or enlarging copies 114
- Collating copies 114
- Placing separator sheets between copies 115
- Copying multiple pages onto a single sheet..... 115
- Copying cards..... 115
- Creating a copy shortcut 115

6. Copy

Making copies

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).



Note: To avoid a resized image, make sure the original document and output have the same paper size.

2. From the control panel, select **Copy**, and then specify the number of copies.

If necessary, adjust the copy settings.

3. To send the copy job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
 - Select **Copy**.



- Select .

Copying photos

1. Place a photo on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Copy** › **More Settings** › **Content** › **Content Type** › **Photo**.
3. To send the copy job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
 - Select **Copy**.



- Select .

Copying on letterhead

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Copy** › **Copy From**.
3. Select the size of the original document.
4. Select **Copy To**, and then select the paper source that contains the letterhead.

If you loaded the letterhead into the manual feeder, navigate to **Copy To** › **Manual Feeder**, select a paper size, and then select **Letterhead**.

5. To send the copy job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
 - Select **Copy**.



- Select .

Copying on both sides of the paper

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Copy › Sides**.
3. Depending on the original document, select either **1 sided to 2 sided** or **2 sided to 2 sided**.
4. To send the copy job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
 - Select **Copy**.



Reducing or enlarging copies

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).
2. From the control panel, depending on your printer model, do any of the following:
 - Navigate to **Copy › Scale**.
 - Navigate to **Copy › Settings › Scale**.
 - Navigate to **Copy › More Settings › Scale**.
3. Select - or + to decrease or increase the value by 1 %.



- In certain printer models, select **Custom** to adjust the size manually.
 - You can also select a size from the preset values, between 25 % and 400 %.
 - Changing the size of the original document or output after setting **Scale** restores the scale value to **Auto**.
4. To send the copy job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
 - Select **Copy**.



- Select , and then select **Finish the job**.

Collating copies

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Copy › More Settings › Finishing Options › Collate › On [1,2,1,2,1,2]**.
3. To send the copy job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
 - Select **Copy**.



- Select .

Placing separator sheets between copies

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Copy** › **More Settings** › **Finishing Options** › **Separator Sheets**.
3. Enable the menu, select a paper source, and then select a setting.
4. Depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
 - Select **Copy**.



Copying multiple pages onto a single sheet

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Copy** › **More Settings** › **Pages per Side**.
3. Enable the menu, and then select a setting.
4. To send the copy job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
 - Select **Copy**.



Copying cards

1. Load a card on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Copy** › **Copy From** › **ID Card**.
3. To send the copy job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
 - Select **Copy**.



Creating a copy shortcut

USING THE CONTROL PANEL

1. From the control panel, select **Copy**.
2. Configure the settings, and then select .
3. Type a shortcut name, and then click **OK**.

USING THE EMBEDDED WEB SERVER

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
 - Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
2. Click **Shortcuts › Add Shortcut**.
 3. In the **Shortcut Type** menu, select **Copy**.
 4. Configure the settings.
 5. Click **Save**.

Fax

This chapter contains

- Sending a fax 118
- Creating a fax destination shortcut..... 118
- Changing the fax resolution..... 118
- Adjusting the fax darkness 119
- Printing a fax log 119
- Blocking junk faxes..... 119
- Holding faxes 119
- Forwarding a fax..... 119

7. Fax

Sending a fax

 **Note:** Make sure that fax is configured. For more information, see the **Setting up the printer to fax** section.

USING THE CONTROL PANEL

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).
2. From the control panel, select **Fax**.
3. Select **Add Recipient** or **Address Book**.

If necessary, adjust the settings.

4. To send the fax job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
 - Select **Send**.

- Select  .

USING THE COMPUTER

For Macintosh users

1. With a document open, choose **File > Print**.
2. Select the printer that has **- Fax** added after its name.
3. In the **To** field, enter the recipient number.

If necessary, configure the settings.

4. Send the fax.

Creating a fax destination shortcut

1. From the control panel, select **Fax**.
2. Select **Add Recipient** or **Address Book**, and then enter the needed information.

If necessary, adjust the settings.

3. Select  .
4. Create a shortcut.

Changing the fax resolution

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).
2. From the control panel, select **Fax**.
3. Select **Add Recipient** or **Address Book**, and then enter the needed information.

4. Select **Resolution**, and then select a setting.
5. To send the fax job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
 - Select **Send**.



- Select .

Adjusting the fax darkness

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).
2. From the control panel, select **Fax**.
3. Select **Add Recipient** or **Address Book**, and then enter the needed information.
4. Select **More Settings** › **Darkness**, and then adjust the setting.
5. To send the fax job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
 - Select **Send**.



- Select .

Printing a fax log

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Reports** › **Fax**.
2. Select a fax log.

Blocking junk faxes

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **Fax Receive Settings** › **Admin Controls**.
2. Enable the **Block No Name Fax** menu.

Holding faxes

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **Fax Receive Settings** › **Holding Faxes**.
2. Select a setting.

Forwarding a fax

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **Fax Receive Settings** › **Admin Controls**.
2. Select **Fax Forwarding**, and then select **Print and Forward** or **Forward**.
3. In the **Forward to** menu, select a destination and then configure the settings.

Scan

This chapter contains

- Scanning to a computer 121
- Scanning to email..... 121
- Scanning to an FTP server..... 121
- Scanning to a network folder..... 121
- Configuring a network folder destination 122
- Scanning to a flash drive 122
- Splitting a scan job..... 124
- Creating scan shortcuts..... 124

8. Scan

Scanning to a computer

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).

2. Open the **Xerox Print and Scan Experience** app.

If you have not installed the application, then see [Adding a printer to a computer using the Xerox® Print and Scan Experience app on page 82](#).

3. Select a printer, click **Scan**, and then configure the settings.
4. Click **Start Scanning** › **Start Scanning**.

If necessary, edit the scanned document.

5. Click **Save As** and configure the settings.
6. Click **Save As**, choose the destination folder, and then enter a file name.
7. Click **Save**.

Scanning to email

Before you begin, make sure the SMTP settings are configured. For more information, see [Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 37](#).

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Scan** › **Email**.
3. Enter the needed information, and then select **Next**.
If necessary, configure the settings.
4. To send the scan job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
 - Select **Scan**.



- Select .

Scanning to an FTP server

Before you begin, make sure the printer is connected to the internet.

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Scan** › **FTP**.
3. Enter the needed information, and then select **Next**.
If necessary, configure the FTP settings.
4. Scan the document.

Scanning to a network folder

Before you begin, make sure the network folder is already configured. For more information, see [Configuring a network folder destination on page 122](#).

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Scan Center** › **Network Folder**.
3. Select the network folder.
4. Scan the document.

Configuring a network folder destination

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Scan Center** › **Network Folder** › **Create Network Folder**.
2. Type a **Display Name**.

3. Select .

4. Select the **Network Type**.

5. Select , then select either **Host Name** or **IP Address**.

6. Provide the necessary details, then select **OK**.

7. Select **Next**.

8. Type the network folder address.

9. In the **Authentication** menu, select **Use static username and password**.

10. Type your username and password.

11. Select **Test Connection**.

12. Configure the file settings.

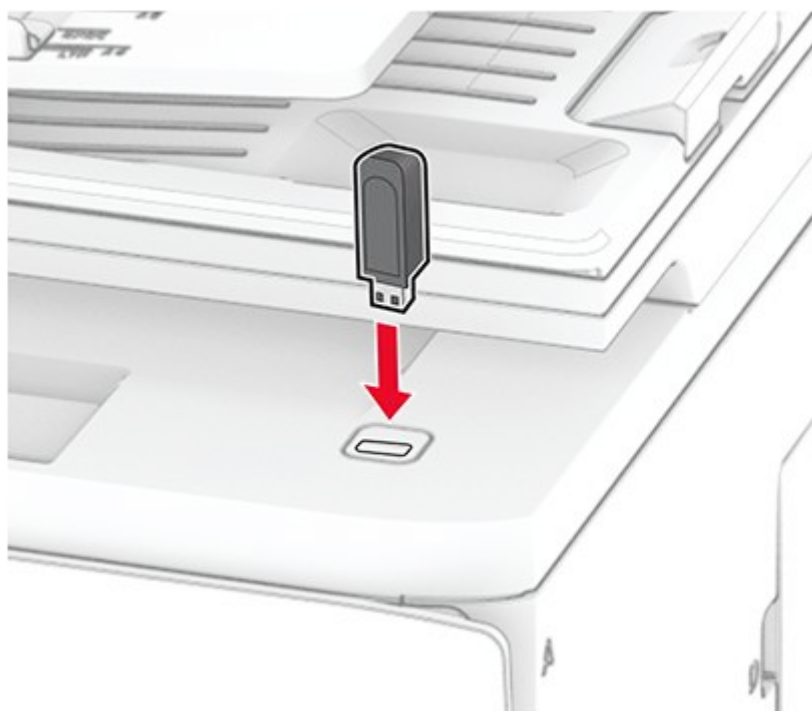
13. Select **Done**.



Note: To scan a document to a network folder, see [Scanning to a network folder on page 121](#).

Scanning to a flash drive

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).
2. Insert the flash drive into the front USB port.



3. From the control panel, select **Scan**.
4. Select a location to save the file, create a file name, and then select **Next**.
5. Configure the scan settings.
6. To send the scan job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
 - Select **Send**.
 - Select  .

 Warning—Potential Damage

To avoid loss of data or printer malfunction, do not touch the flash drive or the printer in the area shown while actively printing, reading, or writing from the memory device.



Splitting a scan job

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).
2. From the control panel, select **Scan**, and then select the destination.
3. Enter the needed information, and then select **Next**.
4. Navigate to **More Settings** › **Split Job by Pages**, and then enter a number by which the pages are split.
5. Select **Scan**.

Creating scan shortcuts

CREATING AN FTP SHORTCUT

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Scan** › **FTP**.
2. Enter the FTP server address, and then select **Next**.
3. Configure the settings, and then select .
4. Create a shortcut.

CREATING A NETWORK FOLDER SHORTCUT

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Shortcuts › Add Shortcut**.
3. From the **Shortcut Type** menu, select **Network Folder**, and then configure the settings.
4. Click **Save**.

CREATING AN EMAIL SHORTCUT

Using the control panel

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Scan › Email**.
2. Type the email address, and then select **Next**.

3. Select .
4. Create a shortcut.

Using the Embedded Web Server

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
 - Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
2. Click **Shortcuts › Add Shortcut**.
 3. From the **Shortcut Type** menu, select **Email**.
 4. Configure the settings.
 5. Click **Save**.

Printer menus

This chapter contains

Menu map.....	127
Device.....	128
Print.....	145
Paper.....	155
Copy.....	156
Fax	160
Email.....	177
FTP	185
USB Drive.....	189
Network/Ports	195
Security.....	212
Cloud Services.....	223
Reports.....	223
Troubleshooting	225
Supplies Plan.....	225

9. Printer menus

Menu map

Device	• Preferences • Eco-Mode • Remote Control Panel • Notifications • Power Management • Share Data with Xerox	• Accessibility • Restore Factory Defaults • Maintenance • Firmware Update • About this Printer
Print	• Layout • Setup • Quality • Job Accounting	• PDF • PostScript • PCL • Image
Paper	• Tray Configuration	• Media Configuration
Copy	Copy Defaults	
Fax	Fax Defaults	
Email	• Email Setup • Email Defaults	• Web Link Setup
FTP	FTP Defaults	
USB Drive	• Flash Drive Scan	• Flash Drive Print

Network/Ports	• Network Overview • Wireless • Wi-Fi Direct • Mobile Services Management • Ethernet • TCP/IP • SNMP	• IPSec • 802.1x • LPD Configuration • HTTP/FTP Settings • ThinPrint • USB • Restrict external network access
Security	• Login methods • Schedule USB Devices • Security Audit Log • Login Restrictions • Held Jobs Setup	• Encryption • Erase Temporary Data Files • Solutions LDAP Settings • Miscellaneous
Cloud Services	Cloud Services Enrollment	
Reports	• Menu Settings Page • Device • Print	• Shortcuts • Fax • Network
Troubleshooting	Print Quality Test Pages	Cleaning the Scanner
Supplies Plan	Plan Activation	Plan Conversion

Device

PREFERENCES

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
Display Language	N/A	[List of languages]	Set the language of the text that appears on the display.
Country/Region	N/A	[List of countries or regions]	Identify the country or region where the printer is configured to operate.
Run initial setup	N/A	On Off*	Run the setup wizard.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
Keyboard	Keyboard Type	[List of languages]	Select a language as a keyboard type.  Note: All the Keyboard Type values may not appear or may require special hardware to appear.
Date and Time	Configure	Current Date and Time	Configure the printer date and time and network time protocol.  Notes • MM-DD-YYYY is the U.S. factory default setting. DD-MM-YYYY is the international factory default setting. • UTC (GMT) Offset, DST Start, DST End, and DST Offset appear only when Time Zone is set to (UTC+user) Custom. • Key ID and Password appear only when Enable Authentication is set to MD5 key.
		Manually Set Date and Time	
		Date Format (MM-DD-YYYY*)	
		Time Format (12 hour A.M./P.M.*)	
		Time Zone	
	Network Time Protocol	Enable NTP (On*)	
		NTP Server	
		Enable Authentication (None*)	
Paper Sizes	N/A	U.S. Metric	Specify the unit of measurement for paper sizes.  Note: The country or region selected in the initial setup wizard determines the initial paper size setting.
Screen Brightness	N/A	20–100 % (100*)	Adjust the brightness of the display.
Flash Drive Access	N/A	Disabled Enabled*	Enable access to the flash drive function of the printer.
FTP Icon Access	N/A	Enabled* Disabled	Show the FTP icon in the Scan menu.
One Page Flatbed Scanning	N/A	On Off*	Set the printer to scan any type of job involving the scanner glass as a single page.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
Device Sounds	Mute All Sounds	Off* On	Configure the sound settings of the printer.  Note: Available only in certain printer models.
	Button Feedback	On* Off	
	Volume	0 to 10 (5*)	
	ADF Loaded Beep	On* Off	
	Alarm Control	Off Single* Continuous	
	Cartridge Alarm	Off Single* Continuous	
	Speaker Mode	Always Off* Always On On until Connected	
	Ringer Volume	Off* On	
Screen Timeout	N/A	5 to 300 seconds (60*)	Set the idle time in seconds before the display shows the home screen, or before the printer logs out a user account automatically.

ECO-MODE

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
Print	Sides	1-Sided 2-Sided*	Specify whether to print on one side or both sides of the paper.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
	Pages per Side	Off* 2 pages per side 3 pages per side 4 pages per side 6 pages per side 9 pages per side 12 pages per side 16 pages per side	Specify the number of pages to print on one side of a sheet of paper.
	Toner Darkness	Light Normal* Dark	Determine the lightness or darkness of text images.
Copy	Sides	1 sided to 1 sided* 1 sided to 2 sided 2 sided to 1 sided 2 sided to 2 sided	Specify the scanning behavior based on the original document.
	Pages per Side	Off* 2 Portrait pages 4 Portrait pages 2 Landscape pages 4 Landscape pages	Specify the number of pages to copy on one side of a sheet of paper.
	Darkness	1 to 9 (5*)	Adjust the darkness of scanned text images.

REMOTE CONTROL PANEL

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
External VNC Connection	Don't Allow* Allow	Allow external Virtual Network Computing (VNC) client connections to the remote control panel.
Authentication Type	None* Standard Authentication	Set the authentication type for VNC client access.
VNC Password	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the password for VNC client access.  Note: This menu item appears only if Authentication Type is set to Standard Authentication .

NOTIFICATIONS

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
ADF Loaded Beep	N/A	Off On*	Enable a beep when a document is loaded into the automatic document feeder.
Alarm Control	N/A	Off Single* Continuous	Set how often the alarm sounds when the printer requires user intervention.
Supplies	Show Supply Estimates	Show estimates* Do not show estimates	Show the estimated supply status.
	Cartridge Alarm	Off Single* Continuous	Set how often the alarm sounds when the toner cartridge is low.
Email Alerts Setup	Primary SMTP Gateway	The setting is user-defined.	Enter the IP address or hostname of the primary SMTP server.
	Primary SMTP Gateway Port	1 to 65535 (25*)	Enter the port number of the primary SMTP server.
	Secondary SMTP Gateway	The setting is user-defined.	Enter the IP address or hostname of the secondary SMTP server.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
	Secondary SMTP Gateway Port	1 to 65535 (25*)	Enter the port number of the secondary SMTP server.
	SMTP Timeout	5 to 30 (30*)	Specify the time that the SMTP server waits before it stops trying to send an email.
	Reply Address	The setting is user-defined.	Specify a reply address for emails.
	Always use SMTP default Reply Address	Off* On	Use the default reply address in the SMTP server.
	Use SSL/TLS	Disabled* Negotiate Required	Specify whether to use SSL/TLS for communication with the SMTP server.
	Require Trusted Certificate	On* Off	Require a trusted certificate when connecting to the SMTP server.
	SMTP Server Authentication	No authentication required* Login /Plain NTLM CRAM-MD5 Kerberos 5 OAuth 2.0	Set the authentication type for the SMTP server.
	Device-Initiated Email	None* Use Device SMTP Credentials	Set whether credentials are required for device-initiated emails.
	User-Initiated Email	None* Use Device SMTP Credentials Use Session User ID and Password Use Session Email address and Password Prompt user	Set whether credentials are required for user-initiated emails.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
	Use Active Directory Device Credentials	On Off*	Enable the use of Active Directory credentials and group designations for SMTP authentication.
	Device Userid	The setting is user-defined.	Enter the user ID to log in to the SMTP server.
	Device Password	The setting is user-defined.	Enter the password to log in to the SMTP server.
	Kerberos 5 Realm	The setting is user-defined.	Enter the Kerberos realm name required for certain authentication types. The realm is typically the uppercase domain name used by the Kerberos authentication system (for example, EXAMPLE.COM).  Note: This setting is necessary when configuring Kerberos-based authentication for secure access.
	NTLM Domain	The setting is user-defined.	Enter the domain name required for NTLM (NT LAN Manager) authentication.  Note: This setting is used when the printer needs to authenticate users against a Windows domain using NTLM protocol.
	Disable "SMTP server not set up" error	On* Off	Disable the SMTP setup error message.
Error Prevention	Jam Assist	Off On*	Set the printer to check for jammed paper automatically.
	Auto Continue	On* Off	Let the printer automatically resume processing or printing after clearing certain conditions.
	Auto Continue Time	5* to 255	 Notes - When set to On, the default setting is 5 seconds. Auto Continue Time is available only in some printer models.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
	Auto Reboot	Auto Reboot (Reboot always*)	Set when the printer restarts after an error.
		Max Auto Reboots (2*)	Set the maximum number of automatic reboots allowed.
		Auto Reboot Window (720*)	Set the average uptime (in minutes) before a reboot is allowed.  Notes • If the average uptime is greater than this number, then a reboot is allowed. • If the average uptime is less than this number, then the printer stops and shows the service error screen.
		Auto Reboot Counter	Show the number of automatic reboots that the printer has performed.
		Reset Auto Reboot Counter	Reset Auto Reboot Counter to zero.
	Display Short Paper Error	On Auto-clear*	Show a message when a short paper error occurs.  Note: Short paper refers to the size of the paper loaded.
Jam Content Recovery	Page Protect	Off* On	Process the entire page in memory before printing.
	Jam Recovery	Off On Auto*	Reprint pages after a paper jam.
	Scanner Jam Recovery	Job level Page level*	Choose how to restart a scan job after clearing a paper jam.

POWER MANAGEMENT

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
Sleep Mode Profile	Print from Sleep Mode	Stay awake after printing Enter Sleep Mode after printing*	Set the printer to stay in Ready mode or return to Sleep mode after printing.
	Touch to Wake from Deep Sleep	On* Off	
Timeouts	Sleep Mode	1 to 114 (15*)	Set the idle time in minutes before the printer begins operating in Sleep mode.
	Hibernate Timeout	Disabled 1 hour 2 hours 3 hours 6 hours 1 day 2 days 3 days* 1 week 2 weeks 1 month	Set the time before the printer turns off.
	Hibernate Timeout on Connection	Hibernate Do Not Hibernate*	Set Hibernate Timeout to turn off the printer while an active Ethernet connection exists.
Schedule Power Modes	Schedules	Add New Schedule	Schedule the printer when to enter Sleep Mode or Hibernate mode.

SHARE DATA WITH XEROX



Note: An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Share Data with Xerox	Yes	Send printer usage and performance information to Xerox®.
	No*	

Menu item	Settings	Description
Share Data Send Time	Start Time Stop Time	Select the time window for data collection and transmission.  Note: Share Data Send Time appears only when you select Yes in Share Data with Xerox .

ACCESSIBILITY

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Duplicate Key Strike Interval	0.00 to 5.00 (0.00*)	Set the interval in seconds during which the printer ignores duplicate key presses on an attached keyboard.
Key Repeat Initial Delay	0.25 to 5.00 (1.00*)	Set the initial length of delay in seconds before a repeating key starts repeating.
Key Repeat Rate	0.5 to 30.0 (30.0*)	Set the number of presses per second for a repeating key.
Prolong Screen Timeout	Off* On	Let the user remain in the same location and reset the Screen Timeout timer when it expires instead of returning to the home screen.
Headphone Volume	1 to 10 (5*)	Adjust the headphone volume.
Enable Voice Guidance When Headphone is Attached	Off* On	Enable Voice Guidance when headphones are inserted into the headphone jack.
Speak Passwords/PINs	Off* On	Set the printer to read out loud passwords or personal identification numbers.
Speech Rate	Very Slow Slow Normal* Fast Faster Very Fast Rapid Very Rapid Fastest	Set the Voice Guidance speech rate.

RESTORE FACTORY DEFAULTS

Menu item	Settings	Description
Restore Settings	Restore all settings	Restore the printer factory default settings.
	Restore printer settings	
	Restore network settings	
	Restore fax settings	
	Restore app settings	

MAINTENANCE

Configuration Menu

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
USB Configuration	USB PnP	1* 2	Change the USB driver mode of the printer to improve its compatibility with a personal computer.
	USB Scan to Local	On* Off	Set whether the USB device driver enumerates as a USB Simple device (single interface) or as a USB Composite device (multiple interfaces).
	USB Speed	Full Auto*	Set the USB port to run at full speed and disable its high-speed capabilities.
Tray Configuration	Tray Linking	Off Automatic	Set the printer to link the trays that have the same paper type and paper size settings.  Notes • Tray Configuration is available only in certain printer models. • For printers with a standard tray, the default setting is Off. For printers with an optional tray, the default setting is Automatic.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
	Show Tray Insert Message	Off Only for unknown sizes* Always	Display a message to select paper size and type after inserting the tray.
	A5 Loading	Short Edge Long Edge*	Specify the page orientation when loading A5 paper size.
	Paper Prompts	Auto* Manual Paper	Set the paper source that the user fills when a prompt to load paper appears.
	Envelope Prompts	Auto* Manual Envelope	Set the paper source that the user fills when a prompt to load envelope appears.
	Action for Prompts	Prompt user* Continue Use current	Set the printer to resolve paper- or envelope-related change prompts.
	Multiple Universal Sizes	On Off*	Set the tray to support multiple universal paper sizes.  Note: Multiple Universal Sizes is available only in certain printer models.
Reports	Menu Settings Page	N/A	Print reports about printer menu settings, status, and event logs.
	Event Log		
	Event Log Summary		
Supply Usage And Counters	Clear Supply Usage History	Start	Reset the supply usage history to the factory shipped level.
	Fuser Reset	Start	Reset the counter after installing a new supply item or maintenance kit.
	ITM Reset	Start	
	Reset Black Cartridge Counter	Start	
	Reset Cyan Cartridge Counter	Start	
	Reset Magenta Cartridge Counter	Start	

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
	Reset Yellow Cartridge Counter	Start	
	Reset Maintenance Counter	Start	
	Tiered Coverage Ranges	Tiered Coverage Metrics (Show*)	Show the Tiered Coverage Billing section on the Device Statistics report.
Printer Emulations	PPDS Emulation	Off* On	Set the printer to recognize and use the PPDS emulation data stream.
	PS Emulation	On* Off	Set the printer to recognize and use the PS emulation data stream.
	Enable Prescribe	On Off*	Activate the PRESCRIBE printer language.
	Emulator Security	Page Timeout (60*)	Set the page timeout during emulation.
		Reset Emulator After Job (Off*)	Reset the emulator after a print job.
		Disable Printer Message Access (On*)	Disable access to the printer message during emulation.
Fax Configuration	Fax Low Power Support	Disable Sleep Permit Sleep Auto*	Set fax to enter Sleep mode whenever the printer determines that it should.  Note: This menu item is available only in certain printer models.
Print Configuration	Black Only Mode	Off* On	Print color content in grayscale.
	Color Trapping	Off 1 2* 3 4 5	Enhance the printed output to compensate for misregistration in the printer.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
	Font Sharpening	0 to 150 (24*)	Set a text point-size value below which the high-frequency screens are used when printing font data. For example, if the value is 24, then all fonts sized 24 points or less use the high-frequency screens.
Device Operations	Quiet Mode	On Off*	Set the printer to operate in Quiet Mode.  Note: Enabling this setting slows down the printer performance.
	Safe Mode	Off* On	Set the printer to operate in a special mode, in which it attempts to continue offering as much functionality as possible, despite known issues. For example, when set to On, and the duplex motor is nonfunctional, the printer performs one-sided printing of the documents even if the job is two-sided printing.  Note: This menu item is available only in certain printer models.
	Minimum Copy Memory	80 MB* 100 MB	Set the minimum memory allocation for storing copy jobs.
	Clear Custom Status	Start	Erase user-defined strings for the Default or Alternate custom messages.
	Clear All Remotely-Installed Messages	Start	Erase messages that were remotely installed.  Note: This menu item is available only in certain printer models.
	Automatically Display Error Screens	On* Off	Show existing error messages on the display after the printer remains inactive on the home screen for a length of time equal to the Screen Timeout setting.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
	Honor orientation on fast path copy	On Off*	Enable the printer to use the orientation setting under the Copy menu when sending quick copy jobs.
	Service Nonvolatile Memory	Encryption Status	Show the encryption status of the storage drive.
Toner patch sensor setup	Calibration frequency preference	Disabled Fewest adjustments Fewer adjustments Normal* Better accuracy Best accuracy	Set the default calibration frequency.
	Full calibration	Start	Run the full color calibration.
	TPS Information Page	Print TPS Information Page	Print a diagnostic page that contains toner patch sensor calibration.
App Configuration	LES Applications	On* Off	Enable Lexmark Embedded Solutions (LES) applications.
Scanner Configuration	Scanner Manual Registration	Print Quick Test Front ADF Registration Rear ADF Registration Flatbed Registration	Print a Quick Test target page, or manually register the flatbed and automatic document feeder (ADF) after replacing the ADF, scanner glass, or controller board.  Note: When printing a Quick Test target page, make sure that the margin spacing on the target page is uniform all the way around the target. If it is not, then the printer margins must be reset.
	Edge Erase	Flatbed Edge Erase 0 to 6 (3*) ADF Edge Erase 0 to 6 (3*)	Set the size, in millimeters, of the no-print area around an ADF or flatbed scan job.
	Disable Scanner	No* Yes ADF Only	Disable the scanner when it is not working properly.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
	Tiff Byte Order	CPU Endianness* Little Endian Big Endian	Set the byte order of a TIFF-formatted scan output.
	Exact Tiff Rows Per Strip	On* Off	Set the RowsPerStrip tag value of a TIFF-formatted scan output.
	Scanner Glass Cleaning Threshold	1000 to 30000 (2500*)	Set the number of scans before the user receives a prompt to clean the scanner glass.

Out of Service Erase

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
Out of Service Erase	Memory Last Sanitized:	The setting is a read-only information.	Show when the printer memory was last erased.
	ISD last erased	The setting is a read-only information.	Show when the intelligent storage drive (ISD) was last erased.  Notes • This menu item is available only in certain printer models. • This menu item appears only when an ISD is installed.
	Sanitize all information on nonvolatile memory	Erase all printer and network settings Erase all apps and app settings Erase all shortcuts and shortcut settings	Clear all information on nonvolatile memory.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
	Erase Intelligent Storage Drive	Erase	Clear all information on the ISD.  Notes • This menu item is available only in certain printer models. • This menu item appears only when an ISD is installed.

FIRMWARE UPDATE

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu Item	Settings	Description
Installed Version	N/A	The setting is a read-only information.	Show the current firmware version installed on the printer.
Date Installed	N/A	The setting is a read-only information.	Shows the date when the firmware was installed on the printer.
Check for updates	N/A	N/A	Let the printer check for firmware updates.
Update Firmware from Server	Auto Update	Disabled* Check Only Check and Install	Configure when firmware is updated and limits the download speed of the update.
	Scheduled Day	Sunday Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday* Saturday Daily	Set the day and time for firmware updates.  Note: This menu item only appears when Check Only is selected.
	Scheduled Time	The setting is user-defined.	

ABOUT THIS PRINTER

Menu item	Description
Xerox Asset Tag	Specify the identity of the printer.
Customer Asset Tag	Show the serial number of the printer.
Printer Location	Specify the printer location.
Contact	Specify the contact information for the printer.
Firmware Version	Show the firmware version installed on the printer.
Engine	Show the engine number of the printer.
Serial Number	Show the serial number of the printer.
Export Configuration File to USB	Export the configuration file to a flash drive.
Export Compressed Logs to USB	Export the compressed log files to a flash drive.
Send Logs	Send printer log information to Xerox.

Print

LAYOUT

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Sides	1-Sided 2-Sided *	Specify whether to print on one side or two sides of the paper.
Flip Style	Long Edge* Short Edge	Specify whether the short edge or the long edge of the paper flips when performing two-sided printing.
Blank Pages	Print Do Not Print*	Print blank pages that are included in a print job.
Collate	Off [1,1,1,2,2,2] On [1,2,1,2,1,2]*	Keep the pages of a print job stacked in sequence, particularly when printing multiple copies of the job.
Separator Sheets	None* Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Insert blank separator sheets when printing.
Separator Sheet Source	Tray [x]	Specify the paper source for the separator sheet.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Pages per Side	Off* 2 pages per side 3 pages per side 4 pages per side 6 pages per side 9 pages per side 12 pages per side 16 pages per side	Print multiple pages on one side of a sheet of paper.
Pages per Side Ordering	Horizontal* Reverse Horizontal Vertical Reverse Vertical	Specify the positioning of multiple-page side when using the Pages per Side menu.  Note: The positioning depends on the number of page images and their page orientation.
Pages per Side Orientation	Auto* Landscape Portrait	Specify the orientation of a multiple-page side when using the Pages per Side menu.
Pages per Side Border	None* Solid	Print a border around each page when using the Pages per Side menu.
Copies	1 to 9999 (1*)	Specify the number of copies for each print job.
Print Area	Normal* Fit to page Whole Page	Set the printable area on a sheet of paper.

SETUP



Note: An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Printer Language	PCL Emulation PS Emulation*	Set the printer language.  Note: Setting a printer language default does not prevent a software program from sending print jobs that use another printer language.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Job Waiting	Off* On	Preserve print jobs requiring supplies so that jobs not requiring the missing supplies can print.  Note: This menu item appears only when a storage drive is installed.
Job Hold Timeout	0 to 255 (30*)	Set the time in seconds that the printer waits for user intervention before it holds jobs that require unavailable resources.  Note: This menu item appears only when a storage drive is installed.
Printer Usage	Max Speed Max Yield*	Determine how the printer utilizes the toner during printing.  Notes • When set to Max Yield, the color print cartridges slow down or stop while printing groups of black-only pages. • When set to Max Speed, the color print cartridges always run while printing, whether color or black pages are being printed.
Download Target	RAM* Flash Disk	Specify where to save all permanent resources that have been downloaded to the printer.  Note: This menu item appears only when a storage drive is installed.
Resource Save	On Off*	Determine what the printer does with downloaded resources, such as fonts and macros, when it receives a job that requires more than the available memory.  Notes • When set to Off, the printer retains downloaded resources only until memory is needed. Resources associated with the inactive printer language are deleted. • When set to On, the printer preserves all the permanent downloaded resources across all language switches. When necessary, the printer shows memory full messages instead of deleting permanent resources.
Print All Order	Alphabetical* Newest First Oldest First	Specify the order in which held and confidential jobs are printed when Print All is selected.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Automatic Deletion of Suspended Print Jobs	Off* On	Set the printer to cancel automatically the queued print jobs that are interrupted by errors such as paper jams and missing supplies.

QUALITY

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
Print Mode	N/A	Black and White Color*	Set the printer to print either in color or black and white.
Print Resolution	N/A	Standard* Highest Quality	Set the resolution for the printed output.  Note: Standard provides high-quality output at maximum speed
Toner Darkness	N/A	Light Normal* Dark	Determine the lightness or darkness of text images.
Halftone	N/A	Normal* Detail	Enhance the printed output to have smoother lines with sharper edges.
RGB Brightness	N/A	-6 to 6 (0*)	Adjust the brightness, contrast, and saturation for color output.
RGB Contrast	N/A	0 to 5 (0*)	 Note: This setting does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are used.
RGB Saturation	N/A	0 to 5 (0*)	
Advanced Imaging	Color Balance	Cyan (0*) Magenta (0*) Yellow (0*) Black (0*)	Adjust the amount of toner that is used for each color.
		Reset Defaults	Reset all color settings to their default values.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
	Color Correction	Off Auto* Manual	Modify the color settings that are used to print documents.  Notes • Off—Sets the printer to receive the color correction from the software. • Auto—Sets the printer to apply different color profiles to each object on the printed page. • Manual—Allows the customization of the RGB or CMYK color conversions applied to each object on the printed page.
	Color Adjust	Color Adjust	Calibrate the printer to adjust color variations in the printed output.

JOB ACCOUNTING

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Job Accounting	Off* On	Set the printer to create a log of the print jobs that it receives.
Accounting Log Frequency	Daily Weekly Monthly*	Specify how often the printer creates a log file.
Log Action at End of Frequency	None* Email Current Log Email & Delete Current Log Post Current Log Post & Delete Current Log	Specify how the printer responds when the frequency threshold expires.  Note: The value defined in Accounting Log Frequency determines when this action is triggered.
Log Near Full Level	On* (5MB) Off	Specify the maximum size of the log file before the printer executes the Log Action at Near Full.  Note: This menu item appears only when a storage drive is installed.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Log Action at Near Full	None* Email Current Log Email & Delete Current Log Email & Delete Oldest Log Post Current Log Post & Delete Current Log Post & Delete Oldest Log Delete Current Log Delete Oldest Log Delete All But Current Delete All Logs	Specify how the printer responds when a storage drive is nearly full.  Note: The value defined in Log Near Full Level determines when this action is triggered.
Log Action at Full	None* Email & Delete Current Log Email & Delete Oldest Log Post & Delete Current Log Post & Delete Oldest Log Delete Current Log Delete Oldest Log Delete All But Current Delete All Logs	Specify how the printer responds when a storage drive usage reaches the maximum limit (100MB).
URL to Post Log	The setting is user-defined.	Specify where the printer posts job accounting logs.
Email Address to Send Logs	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the email address to which the printer sends job accounting logs.
Log File Prefix	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the prefix for the log files.  Note: The current host name defined in the TCP/IP menu is used as the default log file prefix.

PDF



Note: An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Scale To Fit	Off* On	Scale the page content to fit the selected paper size.
Annotations	Print Do Not Print*	Specify whether to print annotations in the PDF.
Print PDF Error	On* Off	Enable the printing of PDF error.

POSTSCRIPT



Note: An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Print PS Error	On Off *	Print a page that describes the PostScript® emulation error.  Note: When an error occurs, processing of the job stops, the printer prints an error message, and the rest of the print job is flushed.
Minimum Line Width	1 to 30 (2*)	Set the minimum stroke width.  Note: Jobs printed in Standard use half the value.
Lock PS Startup Mode	On* Off	Disable the SysStart file.  Notes • The default setting varies depending on your printer model. • Enabling the SysStart file exposes your printer or network to a security risk.
Image Smoothing	On Off*	Enhance the contrast and sharpness of low-resolution images.  Note: This setting has no effect on images with a resolution of 300 dpi or higher.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Font Priority	Resident* Flash/Disk	Establish the font search order.  Notes • Resident—Sets the printer to search its memory for the requested font before searching the storage drive. • Flash/Disk—Sets the printer to search the storage drive for the requested font before searching the printer memory. • This menu item appears only when a storage drive is installed.
Wait Timeout	On* Off	Enable the printer to wait for more data before canceling a print job.  Note: When set to On, 40 seconds is the factory default setting.
Wait Timeout Time	15 to 65535 (40*)	Set the time in seconds for the printer to wait for more data before canceling a print job.  Note: This menu item appears only when Wait Timeout is enabled.

PCL



An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Scale To Fit	Off* On	Scale the page content to fit the selected paper size.
Font Source	Resident* All Flash Font Card	Select the source which contains the default font selection  Note: Flash and Font Card appear only when an intelligent storage drive (ISD) is installed.
Font Name	[List of available fonts] (Courier*)	Select a font from the specified font source.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Symbol Set	[List of available symbol set] (10U PC-8*)	Specify the symbol set for each font name.  Note: A symbol set is a set of alphabetic and numeric characters, punctuation, and special symbols. Symbol sets support the different languages or specific programs such as math symbols for scientific text.
Pitch	0.08 to 100.00 (10.00*)	Specify the pitch for fixed or monospaced fonts.  Note: Pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters in a horizontal inch of type.
Orientation	Portrait* Landscape Reverse Portrait Reverse Landscape	Specify the orientation of text and graphics on the page.
Lines per Page	1 to 255	Specify the number of lines of text for each page printed through the PCL® emulation data stream.  Notes • This menu item activates vertical escapement that causes the selected number of requested lines to print between the default margins of the page. • 60 is the U.S. factory default setting. 64 is the international factory default setting.
PCL5 Minimum Line Width	1 to 30 (2*)	Set the initial minimum stroke width.
PCLXL Minimum Line Width	1 to 30 (2*)	
A4 Width	198 mm* 203 mm	Set the width of the logical page on A4-size paper.  Note: Logical page is the space on the physical page where data is printed.
Auto CR after LF	On Off*	Set the printer to perform a carriage return after a line feed control command.  Note: Carriage return is a mechanism that commands the printer to move the position of the cursor to the first position on the same line.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Auto LF after CR	On Off *	Set the printer to perform a line feed after a carriage return control command.
Tray Renumber	Assign Tray [x] Assign Manual Paper Assign Manual Envelope	Configure the printer to work with a different print driver or custom application that uses a different set of source assignments to request a given paper source.
	View Factory Defaults	Show the factory default value assigned for each paper source.
	Restore Defaults	Restore the tray renumber values to their factory defaults.
Print Timeout	On* Off	Set the printer to end a print job after it has been idle for the specified amount of time in seconds.
Print Timeout Time	1 to 255 (90*)	 Note: Print Timeout Time appears only when Print Timeout is enabled.

IMAGE

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Auto Fit	On Off*	Select the best available paper size and orientation setting for an image.  Note: When set to On , this menu item overrides the scaling and orientation settings for the image.
Invert	Off* On	Invert bitonal monochrome images.  Note: This menu item does not apply to GIF or JPEG image formats.
Scaling	Best Fit* Anchor Top Left Anchor Center Fit Height/Width Fit Height Fit Width	Adjust the image to fit the printable area.  Note: When Auto Fit is set to On , Scaling is automatically set to Best Fit .

Menu item	Settings	Description
Orientation	Portrait*	Specify the orientation of text and graphics on the page.
	Landscape	
	Reverse Portrait	
	Reverse Landscape	

Paper

TRAY CONFIGURATION



Note: An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
Default Source	N/A	Tray [x] (1*) Manual Paper Manual Envelope	Set the default paper source for all print jobs.
Paper Size/Type	Tray [x] (1*) Manual Paper Manual Envelope	Size Type	Specify the paper size or paper type loaded in each paper source.
Substitute Size	N/A	Off Letter/A4 All Listed*	Set the printer to substitute a specified paper size if the requested size is not loaded in any paper source.  Notes • Off—Prompts the user to load the required paper size. • All Listed—Allows all available substitutions.

MEDIA CONFIGURATION



Note: An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
Units of Measure	N/A	Inches Millimeters	Specify the unit of measurement for the universal paper.  Note: Inches is the U.S. factory default setting. Millimeters is the international factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
Universal Setup	All Input Trays	Portrait Width	Set the portrait width of the universal paper.
		Portrait Height	Set the portrait height of the universal paper.
		Feed Direction (Short Edge*)	Set the printer to pick paper from the short edge or long edge direction.  Note: Long Edge appears only when the longest edge is shorter than the maximum width supported.
Custom Scan Sizes Setup	Scan Size Name	The setting is user-defined.	Assign a name for the custom scan.
	Width	1 to 8.5 inches (8.5*)	Specify the width of the original document.
		25 to 215.9 mm (216*)	
	Height	1 to 25 inches (14*)	Specify the height of the original document.
		25 to 635 mm (356*)	
	Orientation	Portrait* Landscape	Specify the orientation of the content on the original document.  Note: Landscape appears only in some printer models
	2 scans per side	Off* On	Set whether the printer scans each side of the document once or twice. Selecting On scans each side twice for improved accuracy.
Media Type Setup	[List of paper types]	Texture Weight Loading Orientation	Specify the texture, weight, and orientation of the paper.  Note: Depending on the paper type, you can set Loading Orientation to either Off or Duplex.

Copy

COPY DEFAULTS

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
Content Type	N/A	Text Text/Photo* Photo Graphics	Select the content type of the original document.
Sides	N/A	1 sided to 1 sided* 1 sided to 2 sided 2 sided to 1 sided 2 sided to 2 sided	Set scanning behavior for single- or double-sided documents.
Separator Sheets	N/A	None* Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Choose whether to insert blank separator sheets when printing.
Separator Sheet Source	N/A	Tray [x] (1*)	Select the paper source for separator sheets.
Color	N/A	Off On* Auto	Choose whether to print in color or black and white.
Pages per Side	N/A	Off* 2 Portrait pages 4 Portrait pages 2 Landscape pages 4 Landscape pages	Set the number of page images to print on one sheet.
Print Page Borders	N/A	On Off*	Add borders around each image when printing multiple pages on one sheet.
Collate	N/A	Off [1,1,1,2,2,2] On [1,2,1,2,1,2]*	Print multiple copies in sequence.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
"Copy from" Size	N/A	[List of paper sizes]	Set the paper size of the original document.  Note: Letter is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.
"Copy to" Source	N/A	Tray [x] (1*) Manual Feeder Auto Size Match	Select the paper source for the copy job.
Darkness	N/A	1 to 9 (5*)	Adjust the darkness of the scanned image.
Number of Copies	N/A	1 to 9999 (1*)	Specify how many copies to print.
Header/Footer	Left Header	Left Header (Off*) Print On (All pages*) Custom Text	Add text to headers and footers of the copied document.
	Middle Header	Middle Header (Off*) Print On (All pages*) Custom Text	
	Right Header	Right Header (Off*) Print On (All pages*) Custom Text	
	Left Footer	Left Footer (Off*) Print On (All pages*) Custom Text	

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
	Middle Footer	Middle Footer (Off*) Print On (All pages*) Custom Text	
	Right Footer	Right Footer (Off*) Print On (All pages*) Custom Text	
Advanced Imaging	Color Balance	Cyan - Red (0*) Magenta - Green (0*) Yellow - Blue (0*)	Adjust toner levels for each color.
	Auto Color Detect	Color Sensitivity (5*) Area Sensitivity (5*)	Control how much color the printer detects from the original document.
	Contrast	Best for Content* 0 to 5	Adjust the output contrast.
	Background Removal	Level (0*)	Control how much background appears in a scanned image.
	Auto Center	On Off*	Center the content on the page.
	Scan Edge to Edge	On Off*	Include the entire page without margins when copying.
	Saturation	1 to 5 (1*)	Adjust the color intensity of the copy outputs.
Admin Controls	Allow Color Copies	On* Off	Enable color copying.
	Allow Priority Copies	On* Off	Allow interrupting a print job to copy a page or document.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
	Custom Job Scanning	On Off*	Enable scanning of custom jobs by default.  Note: This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed.
	Allow Save as Shortcut	On* Off	Save custom copy settings as shortcuts.
	Sample Copy	On Off*	Print a sample copy.  Note: This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed.

Fax

FAX DEFAULTS

Fax Mode

Menu item	Settings	Description
Fax Mode	Fax* Fax Server Disabled	Select a fax mode.

Fax Setup

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
General Fax Settings	Fax Name	The setting is user-defined.	Specify your fax ID.
	Fax Number	The setting is user-defined.	Specify your fax number.
	Fax ID	Fax Name Fax Number*	Set the fax ID to use during fax negotiation.

	Enable Manual Fax	On Off*	Turn on the manual fax function in the printer.  Notes • This menu item requires a line splitter and a telephone handset. • Use a regular telephone line to answer an incoming fax job and to dial a fax number. • To go directly to the manual fax function, touch # and 0 on the keypad.
	Memory Use	All receive Mostly receive Equal* Mostly send All send	Set the amount of internal printer memory allocated for faxing.  Note: This menu item prevents memory buffer conditions and failed faxes.
	Cancel Faxes	Allow* Don't Allow	Cancel outgoing or incoming faxes.
	Fax Number Masking	Off* From Left From Right	Specify the format for masking an outgoing fax number.
	Digits to Mask	0 to 58 (0*)	Specify the number of digits to mask in an outgoing fax number.
	Enable Line Connected Detection	On* Off	Determine whether a telephone line is connected to the printer.  Note: Events are detected immediately.

	Enable Line in Wrong Jack Detection	On* Off	Determine whether a telephone line is connected to the correct port on the printer.  Note: Events are detected immediately.
	Enable Extension in Use Support	On* Off	Determine whether a telephone line is used by another device, such as another phone on the same line.  Note: Events are detected immediately.
	Optimize Fax Compatibility	N/A	Configure the printer fax functionality for optimal compatibility with other fax machines.
	Fax Transport	T.38 Analog etherFAX G.711 None	Set the fax transport method.  Notes • etherFax appears only if an etherFAX license bundle is installed in the printer. • T.38 and G.711 appear only if a Fax over IP (FoIP) license bundle is installed in the printer. • Depending on your printer model, the factory default settings may vary.
HTTPS Fax Settings  Note: This menu appears only if Fax Transport is set to etherFAX .	HTTPS service URL	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the etherFAX service URL.
	HTTPS Proxy	The setting is user-defined.	Specify a proxy server URL.
	HTTPS Proxy User	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the username and password for the proxy server.
	HTTPS Proxy Password		

	Enable SSL Peer Verification	On* Off	Determine whether the printer uses its CA certificates to verify the authenticity of the etherFAX server.
	Fax Send Encryption	Disabled Enabled* Required	Enable encryption for outgoing fax messages.
	Fax Receive Encryption	Disabled Enabled* Required	Enable encryption for incoming fax messages.
	HTTPS Fax Status	The setting is a read-only information.	Show the etherFAX communication status.
Fax Send Settings	Resolution	Standard* Fine Super Fine Ultra Fine	Set the resolution of the scanned image.  Note: A higher resolution increases fax transmission time and requires more memory.
	Original Size	[List of paper sizes] (Mixed Sizes*)	Specify the size of the original document.
	Orientation	Portrait* Landscape	Specify the orientation of the original document.
	Sides (Duplex)	1 sided* 2 sided, short edge 2 sided, long edge	Specify the orientation of the original document when scanning on both sides of the document.
	Content Type	Text* Text/Photo Photo Graphics	Select the content type of the original document.
	Darkness	1 to 9 (5*)	Adjust the darkness of the scanned image.

	Behind a PABX	On Off*	Set the printer to dial a fax number without waiting to recognize the dial tone.  Note: Private Automated Branch Exchange (PABX) is a telephone network that allows a single access number to offer multiple lines to outside callers.
	Dial Mode	Tone* Pulse	Specify the dial mode for incoming or outgoing faxes.
	Advanced Imaging	Color Balance	Adjust the color intensity during scanning.  Note: 0 is the factory default setting for Cyan - Red, Magenta - Green, and Yellow - Blue.
		Contrast	Set the contrast of the output.  Note: Best for Content is the factory default setting.
		Background Removal	Adjust the amount of background visible on a scanned image.  Note: 0 is the factory default setting for Level.
		Scan Edge to Edge	Allow edge-to-edge scanning of the original document.  Note: Off is the factory default setting.
		Saturation	Adjust the color intensity of the fax outputs.  Note: 1 is the factory default setting.

	Admin Controls	Automatic Redial	Specify the number of attempts that the printer redials before it cancels sending the fax to a specified destination.  Note: 5 is the factory default setting.
		Redial Frequency	Increase the time between redial attempts to increase the chance of sending fax successfully.  Note: 3 is the factory default setting.
		Enable ECM	Activate Error Correction Mode (ECM) for fax jobs.  Notes - ECM detects and corrects errors in the fax transmission process caused by telephone line noise and poor signal strength. On is the factory default setting.
		Enable Fax Scans	Create faxes using the printer scanner.  Note: On is the factory default setting.
		Allow Save as Shortcut	Save fax numbers as shortcuts on the printer.  Note: On is the factory default setting.
		Max Speed	Set the maximum speed for sending fax.  Note: 33600 is the factory default setting.

		Custom Job Scanning  Notes • This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed. • Off is the factory default setting.
		Scan Preview  Notes • This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed. • Off is the factory default setting.
		Enable Color Fax Scans  Note: Off by Default is the factory default setting.
		Auto Convert Color Faxes to Mono Faxes  Note: On is the factory default setting.
		Confirm Fax Number  Note: Off is the factory default setting.
		Dial Prefix Set a dialing prefix. The setting is user-defined.

		Dialing Prefix Rules	Establish a dialing prefix rule. The setting is user-defined.
Fax Receive Settings	Fax Job Waiting	None* Toner Toner and Supplies	Remove fax jobs that request specific unavailable resources from the print queue.  Note: This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed.
	Rings to Answer	1 to 25 (3*)	Set the number of rings required before the printer answers the incoming calls.
	Auto Reduction	On* Off	Scale incoming fax to fit on the page.
	Paper Source	Tray [x] Auto*	Set the paper source for printing incoming fax.
	Sides	On Off*	Print on both sides of the paper.
	Separator Sheets	None* Between Jobs	Specify whether to insert blank separator sheets when printing.
	Separator Sheet Source	Tray [x] (1*)	Specify the paper source for the separator sheet.
	Output Bin	Standard Bin	Specify the output bin for received faxes.
	Fax Footer	On Off*	Print the transmission information at the bottom of each page from a received fax.
	Fax Footer Time Stamp	Receive* Print	Print the time stamp at the bottom of each page from a received fax.

	Holding Faxes	Held Fax Mode (Off*)	Hold received faxes from printing until they are released.  Note: This menu item is available only in certain printer models.
		Fax Holding Schedule	Assign a schedule for holding faxes.  Note: This menu item appears only if Held Fax Mode is set to Scheduled.
	Admin Controls	Enable Fax Receive	Set the printer to receive fax.  Note: On is the factory default setting.
		Enable Color Fax Receive	Set the printer to receive fax in color.  Note: On is the factory default setting.
		Enable Caller ID	Show the caller ID information of the incoming call on the printer display.  Note: On is the factory default setting.
		Block No Name Fax	Block incoming faxes without fax IDs.  Note: Off is the factory default setting.
		Banned Fax List	Add the phone numbers that you want to block.
		Answer On	Set a distinctive ring pattern for incoming fax.  Note: All Rings is the factory default setting.

		Auto Answer	Set the printer to receive fax automatically.  Note: On is the factory default setting.
		Manual Answer Code	Manually enter a code on the telephone number pad to begin receiving fax.  Notes • This menu item appears only when the printer shares a line with a telephone. • This menu item appears only when you set the printer to receive fax manually. • This menu item appears only when Fax Transport is set to Analog. • The setting is user-defined.
		Fax Forwarding	Specify whether to forward received fax.  Note: Print is the factory default setting.
		Forward To	Specify where to forward received fax.  Note: This menu item appears only when Fax Forwarding is set to Print and Forward or Forward.

		Confirmation Email	Send a confirmation email when fax forwarding is successful.  Note: - This menu item appears only when Fax Forward is set to Print and Forward or Forward. - The setting is user-defined.
		Max Speed	Set the maximum speed for transmitting fax.  Note: 33600 is the factory default setting.
Fax Cover Page	Fax Cover Page	Off by Default* On by Default Never Use Always Use	Configure the settings for the fax cover page.
	Include To field	Off* On	
	Include From field	Off* On	
	From	The setting is user-defined.	
	Include Message Field	Off* On	
	Message	The setting is user-defined.	
	Include Logo	Off* On	
	Include Footer [x]	Off* On	
	Footer [x]	The setting is user-defined.	

Fax Log Settings	Transmission Log Frequency	Always* Never Only for Error	Specify how often the printer creates a transmission log.
	Transmission Log Action	Print (On*) Email (Off*) Email Logs To Include faxed document (On*)	Print or email a log for successful fax transmission or transmission error.  Notes - This menu item appears only if Transmission Log Frequency is set to Always or Only For Error. Email Logs To and Include faxed document appear only if Email is set to On.
	Receive Error Log	Print Never* Print on Error	Print a log for fax-receive failures.
	Auto Print Logs	On* Off	Print all fax activity.
	Log Paper Source	Tray [x] (1*)	Specify the paper source for printing logs.
	Logs Display	Remote Fax Name* Dialed Number	Identify the sender by remote fax name or fax number.
	Enable Job Log	On* Off	View a summary of all fax jobs.
	Enable Call Log	On* Off	View a summary of the fax call history.
	Log Output Bin	Standard Bin	Specify the output bin for printed logs.
Speaker Settings	Speaker Mode	Always Off* Always On On until Connected	Set the fax speaker mode.

	Speaker Volume	Low* High	Adjust the fax speaker volume.
	Ringer Volume	Off* On	Enable the ringer volume.
VoIP Settings  Note: This menu item appears only if a Fax over IP (FoIP) license bundle is installed in the printer.	VoIP Protocol	SIP* H.323	Set the Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP) protocol.
	STUN Server	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the STUN server to traverse a firewall.
	Force Fax Mode	Off On*	Switch VoIP gateway from analog to T.38 at the beginning of a fax call.
	Force Fax Mode Delay	0 to 15 (7*)	Set the time delay in seconds when sending another invite of Force Fax Mode .
SIP Settings  Note: This menu item appears only if a Fax over IP (FoIP) license bundle is installed in the printer.	Proxy	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the IP address of the system that converts the phone number to an IP address where the fax is sent.
	Registrar	The setting is user-defined.	Specify a name or IP address of the system that handles the registration of Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) clients.
	User	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the name of the user for SIP.
	Password	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the password that is used in registering with the SIP Registrar.
	Auth ID	The setting is user-defined.	The username that is used when registering.  Note: If Auth ID is not specified, the system automatically uses the username from the User field.

	Transport for Registration	UDP* TCP	Set the SIP transport type for registration.
	Transport for Incoming Calls	UDP TCP UDP And TCP*	Set the SIP transport type for incoming calls.
	Transport for Outgoing Calls	UDP* TCP	Set the SIP transport type for outgoing calls.
	Outbound Proxy	The setting is user-defined.	Specify an outbound proxy to forward all SIP communication.
	Contact	The setting is user-defined.	Specify a contact name for SIP.
	Realm	The setting is user-defined.	Specify a realm name for SIP.  Note: If Realm is not specified, the system automatically uses the username from the Contact field.
	SIP Registration Status	The setting is a read-only information.	Show the status of the SIP Registration.
H.323 Settings  Note: This menu item appears only if a Fax over IP (FoIP) license bundle is installed in the printer.	Gateway	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the H.323 gateway IP address.
	Gatekeeper	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the H.323 gatekeeper.
	User	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the username used with the H.323 gateway.
	Password	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the password for the H.323 gateway.
	Enable Fast Start	Off* On	Enable Fast Start.
	Disable H.245 Tunneling	Off* On	Disable H.323 Tunneling.
	Disable Gatekeeper Discovery	Off On*	Disable H.323 Gatekeeper Discovery.

T.38 Settings  Note: This menu item appears only if a Fax over IP (FoIP) license bundle is installed in the printer.	Indicator Redundancy	0 to 5 (3*)	Set the number of times that a fax indicator is repeated in the T.38 communication.
	Low Speed Redundancy	0 to 5 (3*)	Set the number of times that low speed data is repeated in the T.38 communication.
	High Speed Redundancy	0 to 5 (1*)	Set the number of times that high-speed data is repeated in the T.38 communication.

Fax Server Setup

General Fax Settings

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
To Format	The setting is user-defined.	Specify a fax recipient.  Note: If you want to use the fax number, then type the number sign (#) before a number.
Reply Address	The setting is user-defined.	Specify a reply address for sending fax.
Subject	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the fax subject and message.
Message	The setting is user-defined.	
Enable fax receive	Off* On	Set the printer to receive analog, FoIP, or etherFAX faxes.

Fax Server Email Settings

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Use Email SMTP Server	On* Off	Use the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) settings for email in receiving and sending faxes.  Note: When set to On , all other settings of the Fax Server Email Settings menu are not shown.
Primary SMTP Gateway	The setting is user-defined.	Type the IP address or host name of the primary SMTP server.
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	1 to 65535 (25*)	Enter the port number of the primary SMTP server.
Secondary SMTP Gateway	The setting is user-defined.	Type the server IP address or host name of your secondary or backup SMTP server.
Secondary SMTP Gateway Port	1 to 65535 (25*)	Enter the server port number of your secondary or backup SMTP server.
SMTP Timeout	5 to 30 (30*)	Set the time before the printer times out if the SMTP server does not respond.
Reply Address	The setting is user-defined.	Specify a reply address for sending fax.
Use SSL/TLS	Disabled* Negotiate Required	Specify whether to send fax using an encrypted link.
Require Trusted Certificate	On* Off	Specify a trusted certificate when accessing the SMTP server.
SMTP Server Authentication	No authentication required* Login / Plain NTLM CRAM-MD5 Digest-MD5 Kerberos 5 OAuth 2.0	Set the authentication type for the SMTP server.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Device-Initiated Email	None* Use Device SMTP Credentials	Specify whether credentials are required for device-initiated email.
User-Initiated Email	None* Use Device SMTP Credentials Use Session User ID and Password Use Session Email address and Password Prompt user	Specify whether credentials are required for user-initiated email.
Use Active Directory Device Credentials	On Off*	Enable user credentials and group destinations to connect to the SMTP server.
Device Userid	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the user ID and password to connect to the SMTP server.
Device Password	The setting is user-defined.	
Kerberos 5 REALM	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the realm for the Kerberos 5 authentication protocol.
NTLM Domain	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the domain name for the NTLM security protocol.
Disable "SMTP server not set up" error	On Off*	Disable the SMTP setup error message.

Fax Server Scan Settings



Notes

An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Image Format	PDF (.pdf)* TIFF (.tif)	Specify the file format for the scanned image.
Content Type	Text* Text/Photo Photo Graphics	Select the content type of the original document.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Fax Resolution	Standard* Fine Super Fine Ultra Fine	Set the fax resolution.
Sides (Duplex)	1 sided* 2 sided, short edge 2 sided, long edge	Specify the orientation of the original document when scanning on both sides of the document.
Darkness	1 to 9 (5*)	Set the darkness of the scanned image.
Orientation	Portrait* Landscape	Specify the orientation of text and graphics on the page.
Original Size	[List of paper sizes]	Set the paper size of the original document.  Notes • Mixed Sizes is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting. • Paper size support varies depending on your printer model.
Use Multi-Page TIFF	Off On*	Choose between single- and multiple-page TIFF files.

Email

EMAIL SETUP

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Primary SMTP Gateway	The setting is user-defined.	Enter the IP address or hostname of the primary SMTP server.
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	1 to 65535 (25*)	Enter the port number of the primary SMTP server.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Secondary SMTP Gateway	The setting is user-defined.	Enter the IP address or hostname of the secondary SMTP server.
Secondary SMTP Gateway Port	1 to 65535 (25*)	Enter the port number of the secondary SMTP server.
SMTP Timeout	5 to 30 seconds (30*)	Set the time (in seconds) the SMTP server waits before stopping an email attempt.
Reply Address	The setting is user-defined.	Specify a reply address for emails.
Always use SMTP default Reply Address	On Off*	Use the default reply address in the SMTP server.
Use SSL/TLS	Disabled* Negotiate Required	Specify whether to use SSL/TLS for communication with the SMTP server.
Require Trusted Certificate	On* Off	Require a trusted certificate when connecting to the SMTP server.
SMTP Server Authentication	No authentication required* Login/Plain NTLM CRAM-MD5 Digest-MD5 Kerberos 5 OAuth 2.0	Set the authentication type for the SMTP server.
Device-Initiated Email	None* Use Device SMTP Credentials	Set whether credentials are required for device-initiated emails.
User-Initiated Email	None* Use Device SMTP Credentials Use Session User ID and Password Use Session Email Address and Password Prompt User	Set whether credentials are required for user-initiated emails.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Use Active Directory Device Credentials	On Off*	Enable the use of Active Directory Credentials and group designations for SMTP authentication.
Device Userid	The setting is user-defined.	Enter the user ID to log in to the SMTP server.
Device Password	The setting is user-defined.	Enter the password to log in to the SMTP server.
Kerberos 5 Realm	The setting is user-defined.	Enter the Kerberos realm name required for certain authentication types. The realm is typically the uppercase domain name used by the Kerberos authentication system (for example, EXAMPLE.COM).  Note: This setting is necessary when configuring Kerberos-based authentication for secure access.
NTLM Domain	The setting is user-defined.	Enter the domain name required for NTLM (NT LAN Manager) authentication.  Note: This setting is used when the printer needs to authenticate users against a Windows domain using NTLM protocol.
Disable "SMTP server not set up" error	On Off*	Disable the SMTP setup error message.

EMAIL DEFAULTS

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
Subject	N/A	The setting is user-defined.	Enter the email subject.
Message	N/A	The setting is user-defined.	Enter the email message.
File Name	N/A	The setting is user-defined.	Select the file format for the scanned image.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
Format	N/A	JPEG (.jpg) PDF (.pdf)* TIFF (.tif)	Select the file format for the scanned image.
Global OCR Settings	Recognized Languages	[List of languages]	 Note: This menu item appears only if you have purchased and installed an OCR solution.
	Auto Rotate	Off* On	
	Despeckle	Off* On	
	Auto Contrast Enhance	Off* On	
PDF Settings	PDF Version	1.3 1.4 1.5* 1.6 1.7 2.0	Select the PDF version for all scan functions.
	Archival (PDF/A)	Off* On	Available only for PDF Version 1.4 or 1.7.
	Archival Version	A-1a* A-1b A-2u	Choose the archival compliance level (active only when Archival is enabled).  Note: Archival Version A-2u is the default value if PDF Version is set to 1.7. It is not selectable if PDF Version is set to 1.4.
	Highly Compressed	Off* On	Reduce file size by applying high compression.  Note: This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed.
	Secure	Off* On	Enable security features.  Note: This setting is available only for PDF Version 1.4 or higher.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
	Searchable	Off* On	Make the PDF text searchable.  Note: Searchable appears only if you have purchased and installed an OCR solution.
Split Job by Pages	N/A	1 to 999 (0*)	Enter the number of pages per split. Each split is sent as a separate email.  Note: Setting this option to 0 disables the splits.
Content Type	N/A	Text Text/Photo* Photo Graphics	Select the content type of the original document.
Color	N/A	Black and White Gray Color* Auto	Select the color mode for scanning.
Resolution	N/A	75 dpi 150 dpi* 200 dpi 300 dpi 400 dpi 600 dpi	Set the image resolution.
Darkness	N/A	1 to 9 (5*)	Adjust the darkness of the scanned image.
Orientation	N/A	Portrait* Landscape	Set the page orientation for text and graphics.
Original Size	N/A	[List of paper sizes]	Specify the paper size of the original document.  Note: The default setting varies depending on your printer model.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
Sides (Duplex)	N/A	1 sided* 2 sided, short edge 2 sided, long edge	Specify the orientation of the original document when scanning on both sides of the document.
Advanced Imaging	Color Balance	Cyan - Red (0*) Magenta - Green (0*) Yellow - Blue (0*)	Adjust toner levels for each color.
	Auto Color Detect	Color Sensitivity (5*) Area Sensitivity (5*) Email Bit Depth (1 bit*) Minimum Scan Resolution (300 dpi*)	Control how much color the printer detects from the original document.
	JPEG Quality	Best for Content* 5 to 95	Set the quality of JPEG-format scanned images.
	Contrast	Best for content* 0 to 5	Adjust the output contrast.
	Background Removal	Level (0*)	Control how much background appears in a scanned image.
	Scan Edge to Edge	On Off*	Include the entire page without margins when copying.
	Saturation	1 to 5 (1*)	Adjust the intensity of colors in the scanned document.  Notes - Increasing saturation makes colors appear more vivid and vibrant. - Decreasing saturation reduces color intensity, making the document look more muted or closer to grayscale.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
Admin Controls	Max Email Size	0 to 65535 (0*)	Set the allowable file size for each email.  Note: Setting this option to 0 removes the file-size limit.
	Size Error Message	The setting is user-defined.	Specify an error message that the printer sends when an email exceeds its allowable file size.  Note: You can type up to 1024 characters.
	Limit Destinations	The setting is user-defined.	Limit sending of email only to the specified list of domain name.  Note: Use a comma to separate each domain.
	Send Me a Copy	Never appears* On by Default Off by Default Always On	Send a copy of the email to yourself.  Note: This setting is disabled if Allow self emails only is set to Enabled .
	Allow self emails only	Off* On	Set the printer to send emails to yourself only.
	Use cc:/bcc:	On Off*	Enable carbon copy and blind carbon copy in email.  Note: This setting is disabled if Allow self emails only is set to Enabled .
	Use Multi-Page TIFF	On* Off	Enable scanning of multiple TIFF images in one TIFF file.
	TIFF Compression	JPEG LZW*	Specify the compression type for TIFF files.
	Text Default	5 to 95 (75*)	Set the text quality of the content being scanned.
	Text/Photo Default	5 to 95 (75*)	Set the text and photo quality of the content being scanned.
	Photo Default	5 to 95 (50*)	Set the photo quality of the content being scanned.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
	Transmission Log	Print log* Do Not Print Log Print Only For Error	Print a transmission log for email scans.
	Log Paper Source	Tray [x] (1*)	Specify the paper source for printing logs.
	Custom Job Scanning	On Off*	Set the printer to scan the first set of original documents using the specified settings, and then scan the next set with the same or different settings.  Note: This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed.
	Scan Preview	On Off*	Show a scan preview of the original document.  Note: This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed.
	Allow Save as Shortcut	On* Off	Save an email address as a shortcut.
	Email Images Sent As	Attachment* Web Link	Specify how to send the images that are included in the email.
	Reset Email Information After Sending	On* Off	Reset the To , Subject , Message , and Filename fields to their default values after sending an email.

WEB LINK SETUP

Menu item	Settings	Description
Server	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the credentials of the server that is hosting the images that are included in the email.
Login	The setting is user-defined.	
Password	The setting is user-defined.	
Path	The setting is user-defined.	

Menu item	Settings	Description
File Name	The setting is user-defined.	
Web Link	The setting is user-defined.	

FTP

FTP DEFAULTS

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
Format	N/A	JPEG (.jpg) PDF (.pdf)* TIFF (.tif)	Specify the file format for the scanned image.
Global OCR Settings	Recognized Languages	[List of languages]	 Note: This menu item appears only if you have purchased and installed an OCR solution.
	Auto Rotate	Off* On	
	Despeckle	Off* On	
	Auto Contrast Enhance	Off* On	
PDF Settings	PDF Version	1.3 1.4 1.5* 1.6 1.7 2.0	Select the PDF version for all scan functions.
	Archival (PDF/A)	Off* On	Available only for PDF Version 1.4 or 1.7 .

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
	Archival Version	A-1a* A-1b A-2u	Choose the archival compliance level (active only when Archival is enabled).  Note: Archival Version A-2u is the default value if PDF Version is set to 1.7 . It is not selectable if PDF Version is set to 1.4 .
	Highly Compressed	Off* On	Reduce file size by applying high compression.  Note: This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed.
	Secure	Off* On	Enable security features.  Note: This setting is available only for PDF Version 1.4 or higher.
	Searchable	Off* On	Make the PDF text searchable.  Note: Searchable appears only if you have purchased and installed an OCR solution.
Split Job by Pages	N/A	1 to 999 (0*)	Set the number by which the pages are split and then sent as separate files.  Note: Setting this option to 0 disables the splits.
Content Type	N/A	Text Text/Photo* Photo Graphics	Select the content type of the original document.
Color	N/A	Black and White Gray Color* Auto	Set the printer to capture file content in color or in mono.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
Resolution	N/A	75 dpi 150 dpi* 200 dpi 300 dpi 400 dpi 600 dpi	Set the resolution of the scanned image.
Darkness	N/A	1 to 9 (5*)	Adjust the darkness of the scanned image.
Orientation	N/A	Portrait* Landscape	Specify the orientation of the original document.
Original Size	N/A	[List of paper sizes]	Set the paper size of the original document.  Note: The default setting varies depending on your printer model.
Sides (Duplex)	N/A	1 sided* 2 sided, short edge 2 sided, long edge	Specify the orientation of the original document when scanning on both sides of the document.
File Name	N/A	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the file name of the scanned image.
Advanced Imaging	Color Balance	Cyan - Red (0*) Magenta - Green (0*) Yellow - Blue (0*)	Adjust the color intensity for cyan, magenta, and yellow.
	Auto Color Detect	Color Sensitivity (5*) Area Sensitivity (5*) FTP Bit Depth (1 bit*) Minimum Scan Resolution (300 dpi*)	Configure the auto color detection setting.
	JPEG Quality	Best for content* 5 to 95	Set the JPEG quality of the scanned image.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
	Contrast	Best for content* 0 to 5	Specify the contrast for the scanned image.
	Background Removal	Level (0*)	Remove the background color or image noise from the original document.
	Scan Edge to Edge	On Off*	Scan the original document from edge to edge.
	Saturation	1 to 5 (1*)	Adjust the color intensity of the outputs.
Admin Controls	Text Default	5 to 95 (75*)	Set the quality of text on a scanned image.
	Text/Photo Default	5 to 95 (75*)	Set the quality of text and photo on the scanned image.
	Photo Default	5 to 95 (50*)	Set the quality of photo on the scanned image.
	Use Multi-Page TIFF	On* Off	Enable scanning of multiple TIFF images in one TIFF file.
	TIFF Compression	JPEG LZW*	Specify the compression type for TIFF files.
	Transmission Log	Print Log* Do Not Print Log Print Only For Error	Print a transmission log for FTP scans.
	Log Paper Source	Tray [x] (1*)	Specify the paper source for printing FTP logs.
	Custom Job Scanning	On Off*	Set the printer to scan the first set of original documents using the specified settings, and then scan the next set with the same or different settings.  Note: This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed.
	Scan Preview	On Off*	Show a scan preview of the original document.  Note: This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
	Allow Save as Shortcut	On* Off	Save an FTP address as a shortcut.
	Use Passive FTP	On Off*	Let the FTP server specify the data port that the printer connects to.

USB Drive

FLASH DRIVE SCAN

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
Format	N/A	JPEG (.jpg) PDF (.pdf)* TIFF (.tif)	Specify the file format for the scanned image.
Global OCR Settings	Recognized Languages	[List of languages]	Configure the settings for OCR.  Notes - This menu item is available only in certain printer models. - This menu item appears only if you have purchased and installed an OCR solution.
	Auto Rotate	Off* On	
	Despeckle	Off* On	
	Auto Contrast Enhance	Off* On	
PDF Settings	PDF Version	1.3 1.4 1.5* 1.6 1.7 2.0	Select the PDF version for all scan functions.
	Archival (PDF/A)	Off* On	Available only for PDF Version 1.4 or 1.7 .

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
	Archival Version	A-1a* A-1b A-2u	Choose the archival compliance level (active only when Archival is enabled).  Note: Archival Version A-2u is the default value if PDF Version is set to 1.7 . It is not selectable if PDF Version is set to 1.4 .
	Highly Compressed	Off* On	Reduce file size by applying high compression.  Note: This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed.
	Secure	Off* On	Enable security features.  Note: This setting is available only for PDF Version 1.4 or higher.
	Searchable	Off* On	Make the PDF text searchable.  Note: Searchable appears only if you have purchased and installed an OCR solution.
Split Job by Pages	N/A	1 to 999 (0*)	Set the number by which the pages are split and then scanned as separate files.  Note: Setting this option to 0 disables the splits.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
Content Type	N/A	Text Text/Photo* Photo Graphics	Select the content type of the original document.
Color	N/A	Black and White Gray Color* Auto	Set the printer to capture file content in color or in mono.
Resolution	N/A	75 dpi 150 dpi* 200 dpi 300 dpi 400 dpi 600 dpi	Set the resolution of the scanned image.
Darkness	N/A	1 to 9 (5*)	Adjust the darkness of the scanned image.
Orientation	N/A	Portrait * Landscape	Specify the orientation of the original document.
Original Size	N/A	[List of paper sizes] (Mixed Sizes*)	Set the paper size of the original document.  Note: The default setting varies depending on your printer model.
Sides (Duplex)	N/A	1 sided* 2 sided, short edge 2 sided, long edge	Specify the orientation of the original document when scanning on both sides of the document.
File Name	N/A	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the file name of the scanned image.
Advanced Imaging	Color Balance	Cyan - Red (0*) Magenta - Green (0*) Yellow - Blue (0*)	Adjust the color intensity for cyan, magenta, and yellow.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
	Auto Color Detect	Color Sensitivity (5*) Area Sensitivity (5*) Scan Bit Depth (1 bit*) Minimum Scan Resolution (300 dpi*)	Configure the auto color detection setting.
	JPEG Quality	Best for Content* 5 to 95	Set the JPEG quality of the scanned image.
	Contrast	Best for content* 0 to 5	Specify the contrast for the scanned image.
	Background Removal	Level (0*)	Remove the background color or image noise from the original document.
	Scan Edge to Edge	On Off*	Scan the original document from edge to edge.
	Saturation	1 to 5 (1*)	Adjust the color intensity of the outputs.
Admin Controls	Text Default	5 to 95 (75*)	Set the quality of text on a scanned image.
	Text/Photo Default	5 to 95 (75*)	Set the quality of text and photo on the scanned image.
	Photo Default	5 to 95 (50*)	Set the quality of a photo on the scanned image.
	Use Multi-Page TIFF	On* Off	Enable scanning of multiple TIFF images in one TIFF file.
	TIFF Compression	JPEG LZW*	Specify the compression type for TIFF files.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
	Custom Job Scanning	On Off*	Set the printer to scan the first set of original documents using the specified settings, and then scan the next set with the same or different settings.  Note: This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed.
	Scan Preview	On Off*	Show a scan preview of the original document.  Note: This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed.

FLASH DRIVE PRINT

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Number of Copies	1 to 9999 (1*)	Set the number of copies in a print job.
Paper Source	Tray [x] (1*) Manual Paper Manual Envelope	Set the paper source for the print job.
Color	Off On*	Print the flash drive file in color.
Collate	Off [1,1,1,2,2,2] On [1,2,1,2,1,2]*	Keep the pages of a print job stacked in sequence, particularly when printing multiple copies of the job.
Sides	1-Sided 2-Sided *	Specify whether to print on one side or both sides of the paper.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Flip Style	Long Edge* Short Edge	Determine which side of the paper is bound when performing two-sided printing.  Note: Depending on the option selected, the printer automatically offsets each printed information of the page to bind the job correctly.
Pages per Side	Off* 2 pages per side 3 pages per side 4 pages per side 6 pages per side 9 pages per side 12 pages per side 16 pages per side	Print multiple page images on one side of a sheet of paper.
Pages per Side Ordering	Horizontal* Reverse Horizontal Reverse Vertical Vertical	Specify the positioning of multiple page images when using the Pages per Side menu.  Note: The positioning depends on the number of page images and their page orientation.
Pages per Side Orientation	Auto* Landscape Portrait	Specify the orientation of multiple page images when using the Pages per Side menu.
Pages per Side Border	None* Solid	Print a border around each page image when using the Pages per Side menu.
Separator Sheets	Off* Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Insert blank separator sheets when printing.
Separator Sheet Source	Tray [x] (1*)	Specify the paper source for the separator sheet.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Blank Pages	Do Not Print* Print	Print blank pages in a print job.

Network/Ports

NETWORK OVERVIEW

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Active Adapter	Auto* Standard Network Wireless	Specify the type of the network connection.  Note: Wireless is available only in printers connected to a wireless network.
Network Status	The setting is a read-only information.	Show the connectivity status of the printer network.
Display Network Status on Printer	Off On*	Show the network status on the display.
Speed, Duplex	The setting is a read-only information.	Show the speed of the currently active network card.
IPv4	The setting is a read-only information.	Show the IPv4 address.
All IPv6 Addresses	The setting is a read-only information.	Show all IPv6 addresses.
Reset Print Server	Start	Reset all active network connections to the printer.  Note: This setting removes all network configuration settings.
Network Job Timeout	On * Off	Set the time before the printer cancels a network print job.
Network Job Timeout Time	10 to 255 seconds (90*)	Specify the timeout value (in seconds) when the Network Job Timeout setting is enabled.  Note: This feature is available only in certain printer models.
Banner Page	Off* On	Print a banner page.
Scan to PC Port Range	The setting is a read-only information.	Specify a valid port range for printers that are behind a port blocking firewall.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Enable Network Connections	On * Off	Enable the printer to connect to a network.
Enable LLDP	Off* On	Show the network status on the home screen.

WIRELESS



Notes

- This menu is available only in printers connected to a Wi-Fi network or printers that have a wireless print server.
- An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
Setup On Printer Panel	N/A	[List of available wireless networks]	Determine the wireless network that the printer connects to.  Note: This menu item appears as Wireless Connection Setup in the Embedded Web Server.
	Add Wi-Fi Network	Network Name Network Mode (Infrastructure *) Wireless Security Mode (Disabled*)	Manually enter a network name and network type.
Wi-Fi Protected Setup	Start Push Button Method Start PIN Method	N/A	Establish a wireless network and enable network security.  Notes • Start Push Button Method connects the printer to a wireless network when buttons on both the printer and the access point (wireless router) are pressed within a given time. • Start PIN Method connects the printer to a wireless network when a PIN on the printer is entered into the wireless settings of the access point.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
Compatibility	N/A	802.11b/g/n (2.4GHz) 802.11a/b/g/n/ac (2.4GHz/5GHz)* 802.11a/n/ac (5GHz)	Specify the wireless standard for the wireless network.
Wireless Security Mode	N/A	Disabled WPA2/WPA-Personal WPA2-Personal WPA2/WPA3-Personal* WPA3-Personal 802.1x - RADIUS	Set the security mode for connecting the printer to Wi-Fi devices.
WPA2/WPA Personal	N/A	AES	Enable Wi-Fi security through Wi-Fi Protected Access™ (WPA™).  Note: This menu item appears only when Wireless Security Mode is set to WPA2/WPA-Personal .
Set PSK	N/A	The setting is user-defined.	Set the password for a secure Wi-Fi connection.  Note: This menu item appears only if Wireless Security Mode is set to any of the following: • WPA2/WPA-Personal • WPA2-Personal • WPA2/WPA3-Personal • WPA3-Personal
WPA2-Personal	N/A	AES*	Enable wireless security through WPA2™.  Note: This menu item appears only if Wireless Security Mode is set to WPA2-Personal .

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
802.1x Encryption Mode	N/A	WPA+ WPA2* WPA2 + PMF	Enable wireless security through 802.1x standard.  Notes - This menu item appears only when Wireless Security Mode is set to 802.1x - RADIUS. 802.1x - RADIUS can be configured only from the Embedded Web Server.
IPv4	Enable IPv4	On* Off	Enable and configure the IPv4 settings in the printer.
	Enable DHCP	On* Off	
	Set Static IP Address	IP Address Netmask Gateway	
IPv6	Enable IPv6	On* Off	Enable and configure the IPv6 settings in the printer.
	Enable DHCPv6	On Off*	
	Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	Off On*	
	IPv6 Address Generation Mode	EUI64* Stable Privacy Random	
	DNS Server Address	The setting is user-defined.	
	Manually Assigned IPv6 Address	The setting is user-defined.	
	Manually Assigned IPv6 Router	The setting is user-defined.	
	Address Prefix	The setting is user-defined.	
	All IPv6 Addresses	The setting is user-defined.	

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
	All IPv6 Router Addresses	The setting is user-defined.	
Network Address	UAA LAA	The setting is a read-only information.	View the network addresses.
PCL SmartSwitch	N/A	On* Off	Set the printer to switch automatically to PCL emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language.  Note: If PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off, then the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu.
PS SmartSwitch	N/A	On* Off*	Set the printer to switch automatically to PS emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language.  Note: If PS SmartSwitch is set to Off, then the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu.
Job Buffering	N/A	On Off*	Temporarily store print jobs in the storage drive before printing.  Note: This menu item appears only when a storage drive is installed.
Mac Binary PS	N/A	Auto* On Off	Set the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs.  Notes • On—Processes raw binary PostScript emulation print jobs. • Off—Filters print jobs using the standard protocol.

WI-FI DIRECT

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Enable Wi-Fi Direct	On Off*	Set the printer to connect directly to Wi-Fi devices.
Wi-Fi Direct Name	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the name of the Wi-Fi Direct network.
Wi-Fi Direct Password	The setting is user-defined.	Set the password to authenticate and validate users on a Wi-Fi connection.
Show Password on Setup Page	Off* On	Show the Wi-Fi Direct Password on the Network Setup Page .
Preferred Channel Number	1 to 11 Auto*	Set the preferred channel of the Wi-Fi network.
Group Owner IP Address	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the IP address of the group owner.
Auto-Accept Push Button Requests	Off* On	Accept requests to connect to the network automatically.  Note: Accepting clients automatically is not secure.

MOBILE SERVICES MANAGEMENT

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Enable IPP Print	On* Off	Enable a network printer to print jobs using Internet Printing Protocol (IPP).
Enable IPP Fax	On* Off	Enable a USB printer to send fax jobs using IPP.
Enable IPP Over USB	On* Off	Enable a USB printer to print jobs using IPP.  Note: IPP is normally designed for network printers.
Enable Scan	On* Off	Enable a network printer to print jobs using eSCL protocol.
Enable Mopria Discovery	On* Off	Enable mobile devices to discover a Mopria™ certified printer.
Enable Mopria Beacon	On* Off	Enable Mopria-compatible mobile devices to detect the printer for wireless printing.

ETHERNET

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
Network Speed	N/A	The setting is a read-only information	Show the speed of an active network adapter.
IPv4	Enable IPv4	On* Off	Configure the IPv4 settings.  Note: The settings are user-defined.
	Enable DHCP	On* Off	
	Set Static IP Address	IP Address Netmask Gateway	
IPv6	Enable IPv6	Off On*	Configure the IPv6 settings.
	Enable DHCPv6	Off* On	
	Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	Off On*	
	IPv6 Address Generation Mode	EUI64 Stable Privacy* Random	
	DNS Server Address	The setting is user-defined.	
	Manually Assigned IPv6 Address	The setting is user-defined.	
	Manually Assigned IPv6 Router	The setting is user-defined.	
	Address Prefix	0 to 128 (64*)	
	All IPv6 Addresses	The setting is user-defined.	
	All IPv6 Router Addresses	The setting is user-defined.	

Menu item	Submenu item	Settings	Description
Network Address	UAA LAA	The setting is a read-only information.	Specify the network address.
PCL SmartSwitch	N/A	Off On*	Set the printer to switch automatically to PCL emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language.  Note: If PCL SmartSwitch is off, then the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu.
PS SmartSwitch	N/A	On* Off*	Set the printer to switch automatically to PS emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language.  Note: If PS SmartSwitch is off, then the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu.
Mac Binary PS	N/A	Auto* On Off	Set the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs.  Notes • Auto—Processes print jobs from computers using either Windows or Macintosh operating systems. • Off—Filters PostScript emulation print jobs using the standard protocol.
Energy Efficient Ethernet	N/A	Off On Auto*	Reduce power consumption when the printer does not receive data from the Ethernet network.

TCP/IP



Note:

An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Set Hostname	The setting is user-defined.	Set the current TCP/IP host name.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Domain Name	The setting is user-defined.	Set the domain name.
Allow DHCP/BOOTP to update NTP server	On* Off	Allow the DHCP and BOOTP clients to update the NTP settings of the printer.
Zero Configuration Name	The setting is user-defined.	Specify a service name for the zero configuration network.
Enable Auto IP	On* Off	Assign an IP address automatically.
DNS Address	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the current Domain Name System (DNS) server address.
Backup DNS	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the backup DNS server addresses.
Backup DNS 2		
Backup DNS 3		
Domain Search Order	The setting is user-defined.	Specify a list of domain names to locate the printer and its resources that reside in different domains on the network.
Enable DDNS	Off* On	Update the Dynamic DNS settings.
DDNS TTL	300 to 31536000 (3600*)	Specify the current DDNS settings.
Default TTL	5 to 254 (254*)	
DDNS Refresh Time	300 to 31536000 (604800*)	
Enable mDNS	On* Off	Update multicast DNS settings.
WINS Address	The setting is user-defined.	Specify a server address for Windows Internet Name Service (WINS).
Enable BOOTP	Off* On	Allow the BOOTP to assign a printer IP address.
Restricted Server List	The setting is user-defined.	Specify an IP address for the TCP connections.  Notes • Use a comma to separate each IP address. • You can add up to 50 IP addresses.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Restricted Server List Options	Block All Ports* Block Printing Only Block Printing and HTTP Only	Specify how the IP addresses in the list can access the printer functionality.  Note: This menu item appears only in the Embedded Web Server.
MTU	256 to 1500 Ethernet (1500*)	Specify a maximum transmission unit (MTU) parameter for the TCP connections.
Raw Print Port	1 to 65535 (9100*)	Specify a raw port number for printers connected on a network.
Outbound Traffic Maximum Speed	Off * On	Enable the printer maximum transfer rate.
TLS Support	Enable TLSv1.0 (Off*) Enable TLSv1.1 (Off*) Enable TLSv1.2 (On*)	Enable or disable the specified TLS protocol version.  Note: TLSv1.3 is supported by default and cannot be disabled.
SSL Cipher List	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the cipher algorithms to use for the SSL or the TLS connections.
TLSv1.3 SSL Cipher List		

SNMP

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu Item	Settings	Description
SNMP Versions 1 and 2c	Enabled	Off On*	Configure Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) versions 1 and 2c to install print drivers and applications.
	Allow SNMP Set	Off On*	
	Enable PPM MIB	Off On*	
	GET SNMP Community	The setting is user-defined.	
	SET SNMP Community		
SNMP Version 3	Enabled	Off On*	Enable SNMP version 3 to install and update the printer security.
	Context Name	The setting is user-defined.	Enter the context name.

Menu item	Submenu Item	Settings	Description
	Set Read/Write Credentials	Username Authentication Password Privacy Password	Enter the read and write credentials for SNMP version 3 .
	Set Read-only Credentials	Username Authentication Password Privacy Password	Enter the read-only credentials for SNMP version 3 .
	Authentication Hash	MD5 SHA1* SHA2	Set the applicable authentication hash.
	Minimum Authentication Level	No Authentication, No Privacy Authentication, No Privacy Authentication, Privacy*	Set the applicable minimum authentication level.
	Privacy Algorithm	DES AES-128* AES-192 AES-256	Set the applicable privacy algorithm.
Other Settings	Operating Mode	Xerox* Legacy Lexmark	Choose how the printer communicates through SNMP based on compatibility requirements.

IPSEC



Note: An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Enable IPsec	Off* On	Enable Internet Protocol Security (IPSec).
Base Configuration	Default* Compatibility Secure	Set the IPsec base configuration.  Note: This menu item appears only when Enable IPsec is set to On .

Menu item	Settings	Description
DH (Diffie-Hellman) Group Proposal	modp2048 (14*) modp3072 (15) modp4096 (16) modp6144 (17)	Set the IPSec base configuration.  Note: This menu item appears only when Base Configuration is set to Compatibility .
Proposed Encryption Method	3DES AES*	Set the encryption method.  Note: This menu item appears only when Base Configuration is set to Compatibility .
Proposed Authentication Method	SHA1 SHA256* SHA512	Set the authentication method.  Note: This menu item appears only when Base Configuration is set to Compatibility .
IKE SA Lifetime (Hours)	1 2 4 8 24*	Specify the IKE SA expiry period.  Note: This menu item appears only when Base Configuration is set to Secure .
IPSec SA Lifetime (Hours)	1 2 4 8* 24	Specify the IPSec SA expiry period.  Note: This menu item appears only when Base Configuration is set to Secure .
IPSec Device Certificate	default*	Specify an IPSec certificate.  Note: This menu item appears only when Enable IPSec is set to On .
Pre-Shared Key Authenticated Connections	Host [x]	Configure the authenticated connections of the printer.  Note: These menu items appear only when Enable IPSec is set to On .
Certificate Authenticated Connections	Host [x] Address[/subnet]	

802.1X

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu Items	Settings	Description
Active	N/A	Off* On	Let the printer join networks that require authentication before allowing access.
802.1x Authentication	Device Login Name	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the unique login name.
	Device Login Password	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the unique password.
	Validate Server Certificate	On* Off	Enable this option to require verification of the security certificate on the authenticating server.
	Enable Event Logging	On Off*	Enable the printer to record connection logs.
	802.1x Device Certificate	default*	Select the digital certificate that you want to use.  Note: If only one certificate is installed, then default is the only option that appears.
Authentication Mechanism	EAP - MD5	On* Off	Enable the Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) MD5 framework.
	EAP - MSCHAPv2	On* Off	Enable the EAP Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (MSCHAP) version 2 authentication method.
	LEAP	On* Off	Enable Lightweight Extensible Authentication Protocol (LEAP), a modified version of MSCHAP.
	PEAP	On* Off	Enable Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol (PEAP), a method that provides more secure authentication for 802.11 WLANs. PEAP supports 802.1x port access control.
	EAP - TLS	On* Off	Enable EAP Transport Layer Security (TLS), a protocol in which the client and server authenticate each other using digital certificates.

Menu item	Submenu Items	Settings	Description
	EAP - TTLS	On* Off	Enable EAP tunneled Transport Layer Security (TLS), a protocol similar to EAP_TLS except that only the server has a certificate to authenticate itself to the client first.
	TTLS Authentication Method	CHAP MSCHAP MSCHAPv2* PAP	Select which EAP TTLS method to use for your device.

LPD CONFIGURATION

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
LPD Timeout	0 to 65535 seconds (90*)	Set the timeout value to stop the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) server from waiting indefinitely for hung or invalid print jobs.
LPD Banner Page	Off* On	Print a banner page for all LPD print jobs.  Note: A banner page is the first page of a print job used as a separator of print jobs and to identify the originator of the print job request.
LPD Trailer Page	Off* On	Print a trailer page for all LPD print jobs.  Note: A trailer page is the last page of a print job.
LPD Carriage Return Conversion	Off* On	Enable carriage return conversion.  Note: Carriage return is a mechanism that commands the printer to move the position of the cursor to the first position on the same line.

HTTP/FTP SETTINGS

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu Item	Settings	Description
Proxy	HTTP Proxy IP Address	The setting is user-defined.	Configure the HTTP server settings.

Menu item	Submenu Item	Settings	Description
	HTTP Default IP Port		Configure the HTTP default IP port address.  Note: The factory default port for HTTP is 80.
	FTP Proxy IP Address		Configure the FTP settings.
	FTP Default IP Port		Configure the FTP default IP port address.  Note: The factory default port for HTTP is 21.
	Authentication	None Auto* Basic Digest NTLM	Specify the authentication credentials.
	Username	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the unique username.
	Password		Specify the unique password.
	Local Domains		Specify domain names for HTTP and FTP servers.
	Other Settings		
	Enable HTTP Server	On* Off	Access the Embedded Web Server to monitor and manage the printer.
	Enable HTTPS	On* Off	Enable Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS) to encrypt data transferring to and from the print server.
	Force HTTPS Connections	On Off*	Force the printer to use HTTPS connections.
	Enable FTP/TFTP	On* Off	Send files using FTP/TFTP.
	HTTPS Device Certificate	default*	View the HTTP device certificate used on the printer.
	Timeout for HTTP/FTP Requests	1 to 299 seconds (30*)	Specify the amount of time before the server connection stops.
	Retries for HTTP/FTP Requests	1 to 299 seconds (3*)	Set the number of retries to connect to the HTTP/FTP server.

THINPRINT



Note: An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Enable ThinPrint	Off* On	Print using ThinPrint.
Port Number	4000 to 4999 (4000*)	Set the port number for the ThinPrint server.  Note: This menu item can only be configured when Enable ThinPrint is set to On .
Bandwidth (bits/sec)	100 to 1000000 (0*)	Set the speed to transmit data in a ThinPrint environment.  Note: This menu item can only be configured when Enable ThinPrint is set to On .
Packet Size (kbytes)	0 to 64000 (0*)	Set the packet size for data transmission.  Note: This menu item can only be configured when Enable ThinPrint is set to On .

USB



Note: An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
PCL SmartSwitch	On* Off	Set the printer to switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language.  Note: When this setting is disabled, the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu.
PS SmartSwitch	On* Off	Set the printer to switch to PostScript emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language.  Note: When this setting is disabled, the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu.
Job Buffering	Off* On	Temporarily store jobs on the storage drive before printing.  Note: This menu item appears only when a storage drive is installed.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Mac Binary PS	Auto* On Off	Set the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript emulation print jobs.  Notes • Auto—Processes print jobs from computers using either Windows or Macintosh operating systems. • Off—Filters PostScript emulation print jobs using the standard protocol.
Enable USB Port	Enable* Disable	Enable the front and rear USB ports.

RESTRICT EXTERNAL NETWORK ACCESS

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Restrict external network access	Off* On	Restrict access to network sites.
External network address	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the network addresses with restricted access.  Note: This menu item can only be configured when Restrict external network access is set to On .
Email address for notification		Specify an email address to send a notification of logged events.  Note: This menu item can only be configured when Restrict external network access is set to On .
Ping frequency	1 to 300 (10*)	Specify the network query interval in seconds.  Note: This menu item can only be configured when Restrict external network access is set to On .
Subject	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the subject and message of the notification email.  Note: This menu item can only be configured when Restrict external network access is set to On .
Message		

Security

LOGIN METHODS

Manage Permissions

Menu item	Settings	Description
Function Access	Access Address Book in Apps	Specify the printer functions that the user can access.
	Modify Address Book	 Note: Some menu items appear only when a storage drive is installed.
	Manage Shortcuts	
	Create Profiles	
	Manage Bookmarks	
	Flash Drive Print	
	Flash Drive Color Printing	
	Flash Drive Scan	
	Copy Function	
	Copy Color Printing	
	Email Function	
	Fax Function	
	FTP Function	
	Release Held Faxes	
	Held Jobs Access	
	Use Profiles	
	Cancel Jobs at the Device	
	Change Language	
	Internet Printing Protocol (IPP)	
	Initiate Scans Remotely	
	B/W Print	
	Color Print	
	Network Folder - Scan	

Menu item	Settings	Description
Administrative Menus	Security Menu Network/Ports Menu Paper Menu Reports Menu Function Configuration Menus Supplies Menu Option Card Menu SE Menu Device Menu Supplies Plan Menu	Specify the printer menus that the user can access.
Device Management	Remote Management Firmware Updates Apps Configuration Operator Panel Lock Embedded Web Server Access Import / Export All Settings Out of Service Erase Cloud Services Enrollment	Specify the printer management functions that the user can access.
Apps	New Apps Slideshow Change Wallpaper Screen Saver Scan Center Scan Center Custom [x]	Control access to the printer apps.

Local Accounts

Menu item	Submenu Item	Settings	Description
Manage Groups/Permissions	Add Group	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the groups that have access to printer functions, administrative menus, printer management options, and apps.
	All Users	Import Access Controls	Import access controls from accounts enrolled in the printer.
Add User	Username/Password Accounts	The setting is user-defined.	Add a user and specify the login method to the printer.
	Username Accounts		
	Password Accounts		
	PIN Accounts		

Default Login Methods

 **Note:** This menu appears only when the **Local Accounts** menu is configured.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Control Panel	Username/Password	Specify the default login method to access the control panel.
	Username	
	Password	
	PIN	
Browser	Username/Password	Specify the default login method to access the browser.
	Username	
	Password	
	PIN	

SCHEDULE USB DEVICES

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
Schedules	Add New Schedule	Save Schedule	Schedule access to the front USB port.
		Action	
		Day(s)	
		Time	

SECURITY AUDIT LOG

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Enable Audit	Off On*	Set the printer to record the events in the secure audit log and remote syslog.
Enable Remote Syslog	Off* On	Set the printer to send audit logs to a remote server.
Remote Syslog Server	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the remote syslog server.
Remote Syslog Port	1 to 65535 (514*)	Specify the port over which the printer sends logged events to a remote server.
Remote Syslog Method	Normal UDP* Stunnel	Identify the protocol that the printer uses to transmit logged events to a remote server.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Remote Syslog Facility	0 - Kernel Messages	Specify a Facility value that the printer uses when sending log events to the remote syslog server.
	1 - User-Level Messages	
	2 - Mail System	
	3 - System Daemons	
	4 - Security/ Authorization Messages*	
	5 - Messages Generated Internally by Syslogd	
	6 - Line Printer Subsystem	
	7 - Network News Subsystem	
	8 - UUCP Subsystem	
	9 - Clock Daemon	
	10 - Security/ Authorization Messages	
	11 - FTP Daemon	
	12 - NTP Subsystem	
	13 - Log Audit	
	14 - Log Alert	
	15 - Clock Daemon	
	16 - Local Use 0 (local0)	
	17- Local Use 1 (local1)	
	18 - Local Use 2 (local2)	
	19 - Local Use 3 (local3)	
	20 - Local Use 4 (local4)	
	21 - Local Use 5 (local5)	

Menu item	Settings	Description
	22 - Local Use 6 (local6) 23 - Local Use 7 (local7)	
Severity of Events to Log	0 - Emergency 1 - Alert 2 - Critical 3 - Error 4 - Warning* 5 - Notice 6 - Informational 7 - Debug	Select the minimum severity level of system events to record. The printer logs events at the chosen level and all more severe levels. For example, if you select 4 – Warning, the printer logs Warnings, Errors, Critical, Alert, and Emergency events.
Remote Syslog Non-Logged Events	Off* On	Set the printer to send any applicable events.
Admin's Email Address	The setting is user-defined.	Specify the email address of the printer administrator who is notified of certain log events.
Email Log Cleared Alert	Off* On	Set the printer to send an email to the administrator every time a log is deleted.
Email Log Wrapped Alert	Off* On	Set the printer to send the administrator an email when log entries are wrapping.
Log Full Behavior	Wrap Over Oldest Entries* Email Log Then Delete All Entries	Determine how the printer resolves log storage issues when the log fills its allotted memory.
Email % Full Alert	Off* On	Set the printer to send the administrator an email when the log fills its allotted memory.
% Full Alert Level	1 to 99 (90*)	Determine if the space occupied by the log equals or exceeds the value of the full alert level.
Email Log Exported Alert	Off* On	Send an email notification to the administrator when a log is exported.
Email Log Settings Changed Alert	Off* On	Set the printer to send an email to the administrator when the value of the Enable Audit menu is changed.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Log Line Endings	LF (\n)* CR (\r) CRLF (\r\n)	Determine how the printer handles line endings in the log file, depending on the operating system that the file is parsed or viewed.
Digitally Sign Exports	Off* On	Set the printer to sign exported security logs automatically.
Clear Log	Clear	Delete all audit logs.
Export Log	Syslog (RFC 5424) Syslog (RFC 3164) CSV	Export logs from the printer or flash drive.

LOGIN RESTRICTIONS



Note: An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Login failures	1 to 10 (3*)	Specify the number of failed login attempts before the user is locked out.
Failure time frame	1 to 60 minutes (5*)	Specify the time frame that failed login attempts are allowed before the user is locked out.
Lockout time	1 to 60 minutes (5*)	Specify the amount of time where no logins are allowed.
Web Login Timeout	1 to 120 minutes (10*)	Specify the amount of time that a remote interface such as a web page can remain idle before the user is logged off automatically.

HELD JOBS SETUP



Note: An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
Require All Jobs to be Held	N/A	Off* On	Hold all print jobs in the queue instead of printing immediately.
Keep Duplicate Documents	N/A	Off* On	Store multiple copies of the same document in the Held Jobs queue.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
Confidential Jobs	Max Invalid PIN	2 to 10 (0*)	Set the maximum number of incorrect PIN entry attempts allowed for confidential print jobs.  Notes • A value of 0 turns this feature off. • When the limit is reached, all print jobs associated with that username are deleted.
	Job Expiration	Off* 1 Hour 4 Hours 24 Hours 72 Hours 1 Week	Set an individual expiration time for each type of held job before the printer deletes it automatically from memory.  Notes • If the expiration time setting is changed while confidential print jobs reside on the printer memory or intelligent storage drive (ISD), then the expiration time for those print jobs does not change to the new default value. • If the printer is turned off, then all confidential jobs held in the printer memory are deleted.
	Keep Held Jobs	Off* Only after printing Only after reboot After printing and reboot	Set the printer to keep all held jobs.  Note: Certain settings are available only when an ISD is installed, which is also required to keep held jobs after a reboot.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
Repeat Jobs	Job Expiration	Off* 1 Hour 4 Hours 24 Hours 72 Hours 1 Week	Set an individual expiration time for each type of held job before the printer deletes it automatically from memory.  Notes • If the expiration time setting is changed while confidential print jobs reside on the printer memory or ISD, then the expiration time for those print jobs does not change to the new default value. • If the printer is turned off, then all confidential jobs held in the printer memory are deleted.
	Keep Held Jobs	Off Only after printing* Only after reboot After printing and reboot	Set the printer to keep held jobs.  Note: Certain settings are available only when an ISD is installed, which is also required to keep held jobs after a reboot.
Reserve Jobs	Job Expiration	Off* 1 Hour 4 Hours 24 Hours 72 Hours 1 Week	Set an individual expiration time for each type of held job before the printer deletes it automatically from memory.  Notes • If the expiration time setting is changed while confidential print jobs reside on the printer memory or ISD, then the expiration time for those print jobs does not change to the new default value. • If the printer is turned off, then all confidential jobs held in the printer memory are deleted.

Menu item	Submenu items	Settings	Description
	Keep Held Jobs	Off Only after printing* Only after reboot After printing and reboot	Set the printer to keep all held jobs.  Note: Certain settings are available only when an ISD is installed, which is also required to keep held jobs after a reboot.
Verify Jobs	Job Expiration	Off* 1 Hour 4 Hours 24 Hours 72 Hours 1 Week	Set an individual expiration time for each type of held job before the printer deletes it automatically from memory.  Notes • If the expiration time setting is changed while confidential print jobs reside on the printer memory or ISD, then the expiration time for those print jobs does not change to the new default value. • If the printer is turned off, then all confidential jobs held in the printer memory are deleted.
	Keep Held Jobs	Off* Only after printing Only after reboot After printing and reboot	Set the printer to keep all held jobs.  Note: Certain settings are available only when an ISD is installed, which is also required to keep held jobs after a reboot.

ENCRYPTION

Menu item	Settings	Description
Internal Storage	The setting is a read-only information.	Show the encryption status of the internal storage.
Intelligent Storage Drive	The setting is a read-only information.	Show the encryption status of the intelligent storage drive (ISD).  Note: This menu item appears only when an ISD is installed.

ERASE TEMPORARY DATA FILES

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Stored in onboard memory	Off* On	Set the printer to erase all the data of a job from its memory after the job is finished.

SOLUTIONS LDAP SETTINGS

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Follow LDAP Referrals	Off* On	Search the different servers in the domain for the logged-in user account.
LDAP Certificate Verification	Yes No*	Enable verification of LDAP certificates.  Note: Restart the printer for the changes to take effect.

MISCELLANEOUS

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Protected Features	Show* Hide	Show all the features that Function Access Control (FAC) protects regardless of the security permission that the user has.  Note: Hide displays only FAC-protected features that the user has access
Print Permission	Off* On	Require the user to log in before printing.
Default Print Permission Login	Username/Password* Username	Set the default login for Print Permission .
Security Reset Jumper	Enable "Guest" access* No Effect	Specify user access to the printer.  Notes • Enable "Guest" access gives anyone access to all aspects of the printer. • No Effect may make access to the printer impossible when the required security information is unavailable.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Reset Device Modes	Allow with FAC Allow* Don't Allow	Allow the printer mode to be reset.
Use Intelligent Storage Drive for User Data	Off On*	Enable the intelligent storage drive to store user data.
Minimum Password Length	0 to 32 (8*)	Specify the minimum password length that is used for internal accounts such as Password and Username/Password accounts.
Enable Password/PIN Reveal	On* Off	Show the password or personal identification number.
Allow Encryption of Service Nonvolatile Memory	Off* On	Enable the encryption of service nonvolatile memory in your device.  Note: This menu item appears only if Encrypt Service Nonvolatile Memory is disabled.

Cloud Services

CLOUD SERVICES ENROLLMENT

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
View More Information	The setting is a read-only information.	View more information on the usage of Lexmark Cloud Services.
Enable communication with Lexmark Cloud Services	Off* On	Enable the printer to communicate with Lexmark Cloud Services.
View Current Status	The setting is a read-only information.	View the connection status between the printer and Lexmark Cloud Services.

Reports

MENU SETTINGS PAGE

Menu item	Description
Menu Settings Page	Print a report that contains the printer menus.

DEVICE

Menu item	Description
Device Information	Print a report that contains information about the printer.
Device Statistics	Print a report about supply status, paper count, job information, and more.
Profile List	Print a list of profiles that are stored in the printer.
Asset Report	Print a diagnostic tool for print problems.  Note: To avoid clipping the content, print the report on Letter- or A4-size paper.

PRINT

Menu item	Settings	Description
Print Fonts	PCL Fonts PS Fonts	Print samples and information about the fonts that are available in each printer language.
Print Demo	Demo Page	Print a sample page with text and graphics that help you check print quality, such as colors, sharpness, and alignment.  Notes - To avoid clipping the content, print the page on Letter- or A4-size paper. - This menu item appears only when the printer has a demo page installed.
Print Directory	The setting is user-defined	Print a list of the resources stored in the printer storage.

SHORTCUTS

Menu item	Description
All Shortcuts	Print a report that lists the shortcuts that are stored in the printer.  Note: Fax Shortcuts appears only when Fax is installed.
Fax Shortcuts	
Copy Shortcuts	
Email Shortcuts	
FTP Shortcuts	
Network Folder Shortcuts	

FAX



Note: This menu appears only if **Fax** is configured, and **Enable Job Log** is set to **On**.

Menu item	Description
Fax Job Log	Print a report about the last 200 completed fax jobs.
Fax Call Log	Print a report about the last 100 attempted, received, and blocked calls.

NETWORK

Menu item	Description
Network Setup Page	Print a page that shows the configured network and wireless settings on the printer.  Note: This menu item appears only in network printers or printers connected to print servers.
Wi-Fi Direct Connected Clients	Print a page that shows the list of devices that are connected to the printer using Wi-Fi Direct.  Note: This menu item appears only when Enable Wi-Fi Direct is set to On .

Troubleshooting

Menu item	Description
Print Quality Test Pages	Print sample pages to identify and correct print quality defects.
Cleaning the Scanner	Print instructions on how to clean the scanner.

Supplies Plan

PLAN ACTIVATION



Note: An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Sequence Number	The setting is a read-only information.	Show the unique number associated with your printer supplies plan.  Note: This number is used to generate and validate the correct supplies plan activation code.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Device Serial Number		Show the Xerox Serial Number associated with the printer supplies plan.  Note: This number, along with the printer serial number and plan information, is used to generate or validate the correct supplies plan activation code.
Activation Code	The setting is user-defined.	Enter a Plan Activation Code to activate the supplies plan associated with your printer.  Note: The code is provided by your Xerox representative.
Activate Plan	N/A	Activate the supplies plan associated with your printer.

PLAN CONVERSION

 **Note:** An asterisk (*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

Menu item	Settings	Description
Current Plan	The setting is a read-only information.	Show the supplies plan that is currently active on the printer.
Device Serial Number		Show the Xerox Serial Number associated with the printer supplies plan.  Note: This number, along with the printer serial number and plan information, is used to generate or validate the correct supplies plan activation code.
Total Impressions		Show the total number of pages the printer has produced.
Conversion Code	The setting is user-defined.	Enter a Plan Conversion Code to update or correct the supplies plan if issues occur after the initial activation.
Convert Plan	N/A	Update the supplies plan associated with your printer.

Maintain the printer

This chapter contains

- Checking the status of parts and supplies 228
- Configuring supply notifications 228
- Setting up email alerts..... 228
- Printing printer reports and logs..... 229
- Ordering parts and supplies 230
- Replacing parts and supplies 232
- Cleaning printer parts 252
- Saving energy and paper 262
- Moving the printer to another location 263

10. Maintain the printer

Checking the status of parts and supplies

1. From the upper-right corner of the control panel, select .
2. Select **Status/Supplies**.
3. View the status of the printer parts and supplies.

Configuring supply notifications

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
 - Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
2. Click **Settings** › **Device** › **Notifications**.
 3. Click **Custom Supply Notifications**.
 4. Select a notification for each supply item.
 5. Apply the changes.

Setting up email alerts

Email alerts let you set up a mail server so the printer can automatically send messages to a group of email addresses when certain events happen. For more information on SMTP settings, see [Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 37](#).

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
 - Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
2. Click **Settings** › **Device** › **Notifications**.
 3. Click **Email Alerts Setup**.
 4. Click **Setup Email Lists and Alerts**, and then do the following:
 - Specify the email addresses that you want to send the alerts to.
 - Specify the subject of the email alert.
 - Specify the printer events that you want to send.
 5. Click **Save**.

Printing printer reports and logs

Printer reports show the printer status, toner levels, number of pages printed or scanned, and any errors.

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Reports**.
2. Select the report or log that you want to print.

Menu Settings Page—Show the current printer preferences, settings, and configurations.

Device

- **Device Information**—Show printer information such as serial number, installed memory, and page count.
- **Device Statistics**—Show printer information such as supply status, total printed sheets, and printer job information.
- **Profiles List**—Show a list of profiles or shortcuts that are stored in the printer.
- **Asset Report**— Show printer information such as color and mono print counts, IP address, and firmware levels.

Print

- **Print Fonts**—Show the fonts that are available in each printer language.
- **Print Demo**—Show the demo files that are available in the firmware or intelligent storage drive (ISD)
- **Print Directory**—Show the resources that are stored on the flash drive or ISD.



Note: This report appears only when a flash drive or an ISD is installed.

Shortcuts

- **All Shortcuts**—Show a list of all the shortcuts that are stored on the printer.
- **Fax Shortcuts**—Show a list of fax shortcuts that are stored on the printer.
- **Copy Shortcuts**—Show a list of copy shortcuts that are stored on the printer.
- **Email Shortcuts**—Show a list of email shortcuts that are stored on the printer.
- **FTP Shortcuts**—Show a list of File Transfer Protocol (FTP) shortcuts that are stored on the printer.
- **Network Folder Shortcuts**—Show a list of network folder shortcuts that are stored on the printer.

Fax

- **Fax Job Log**—List the last 200 completed fax jobs.



Note: This report appears only when **Enable Job Log** is enabled.

- **Fax Call Log**—Show the resources that are stored on the flash drive or storage drive.



Note: This report appears only when a flash drive or storage drive is installed.

Network

- **Network Setup Page**—Show the configured network and wireless settings on the printer.



Note: This report appears only in network printers and printers connected to print servers.

- **Wi-Fi Direct Connected Clients**—Show the list of devices that are connected to the printer using Wi-Fi Direct.



Note: This report appears only when **Enable Wi-Fi Direct** is set to **On**.

Ordering parts and supplies

USING GENUINE XEROX SUPPLIES

Your Xerox printer is designed to function best with genuine Xerox supplies. Use of third-party supplies can affect the performance, reliability, or life of the printer and its imaging components. It can also affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by the use of third-party supplies is not covered by the warranty.

All life indicators are designed to function with Xerox supplies and can deliver unpredictable results if third-party supplies are used. Imaging component usage beyond the intended life can damage your Xerox printer or associated components.



Warning—Potential Damage

Supplies without Return Program agreement terms can be reset and remanufactured. However, the manufacturer's warranty does not cover any damage caused by non-genuine supplies. Resetting counters on the supply without proper remanufacturing can cause damage to your printer. After resetting the supply counter, your printer may display an error indicating the presence of the reset item.

ORDERING A PRINT CARTRIDGE

Cartridge part numbers may change. To check the latest part numbers, go to www.xerox.com/supplies.



Notes

- The estimated cartridge yield is based on the ISO/IEC 19798 standard.
- Extremely low print coverage for extended periods of time may negatively affect actual yield.
- All life estimates for printer supplies assume printing on Letter- or A4-size plain paper.



Warning—Potential Damage

Failure to maintain optimum printer performance or to replace supplies can cause damage to your printer.

Return Program print cartridges

Xerox® C305ae

Item	United States, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, Puerto Rico	European Union, Iceland, Liechtenstein, Norway, Switzerland, United Kingdom	Rest of Asia Pacific	Latin America and Mexico	Rest of Europe, Middle East, Africa	People's Republic of China
Cyan	006R05052	006R05056	006R05060	006R05064	006R05068	006R05239
Magenta	006R05053	006R05057	006R05061	006R05065	006R05069	006R05240
Yellow	006R05054	006R05058	006R05062	006R05066	006R05070	006R05241

Item	United States, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, Puerto Rico	European Union, Iceland, Liechtenstein, Norway, Switzerland, United Kingdom	Rest of Asia Pacific	Latin America and Mexico	Rest of Europe, Middle East, Africa	People's Republic of China
Black	006R05051	006R05055	006R05059	006R05063	006R05067	006R05242

High Yield Return Program print cartridges

Xerox® C305ae

Item	United States, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, Puerto Rico	European Union, Iceland, Liechtenstein, Norway, Switzerland, United Kingdom	Rest of Asia Pacific	Latin America and Mexico	Rest of Europe, Middle East, Africa	People's Republic of China
Cyan	006R05072	006R05076	006R05080	006R05084	006R05088	006R05243
Magenta	006R05073	006R05077	006R05081	006R05085	006R05089	006R05244
Yellow	006R05074	006R05078	006R05082	006R05086	006R05090	006R05245
Black	006R05071	006R05075	006R05079	006R05083	006R05087	006R05246

Extra High Yield Return Program print cartridges

Xerox® C305ae

Item	United States, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, Puerto Rico	European Union, Iceland, Liechtenstein, Norway, Switzerland, United Kingdom	Rest of Asia Pacific	Latin America and Mexico	Rest of Europe, Middle East, Africa	People's Republic of China
Cyan	006R05092	006R05096	006R05101	006R05105	006R05109	006R05247
Magenta	006R05093	006R05097	006R05102	006R05106	006R05110	006R05248
Yellow	006R05094	006R05098	006R05103	006R05107	006R05111	006R05249
Black	006R05091	006R05095	006R05100	006R05104	006R05108	006R05250

ORDERING THE WASTE TONER BOTTLE

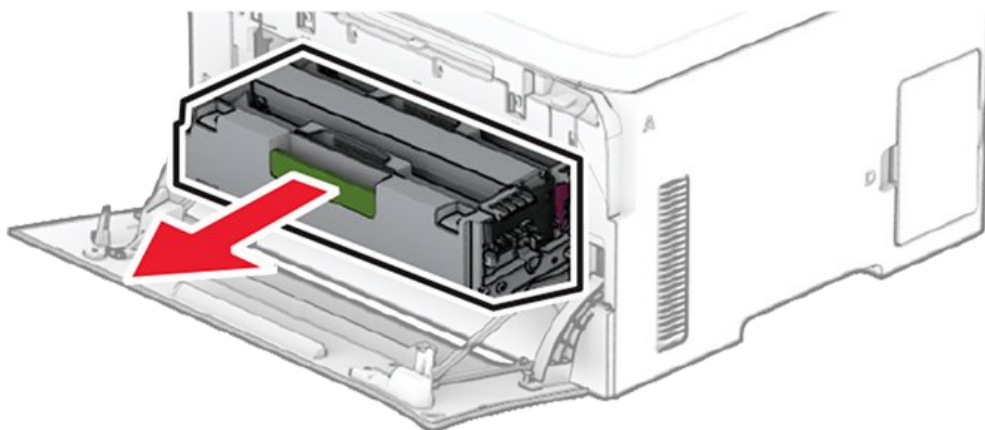
Item	Worldwide
Waste toner bottle	008R08165

Replacing parts and supplies

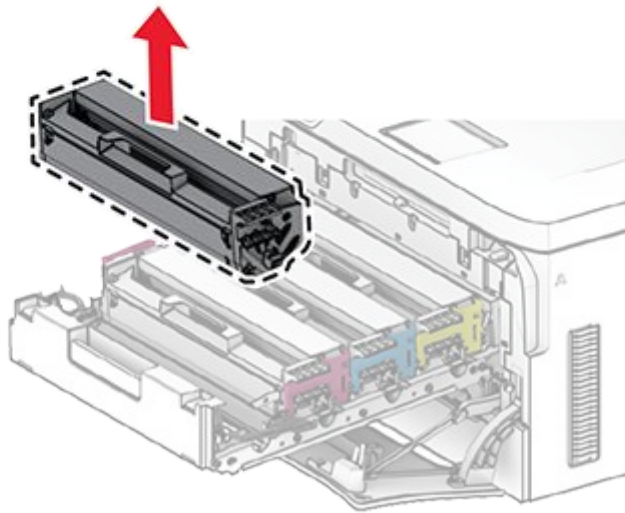
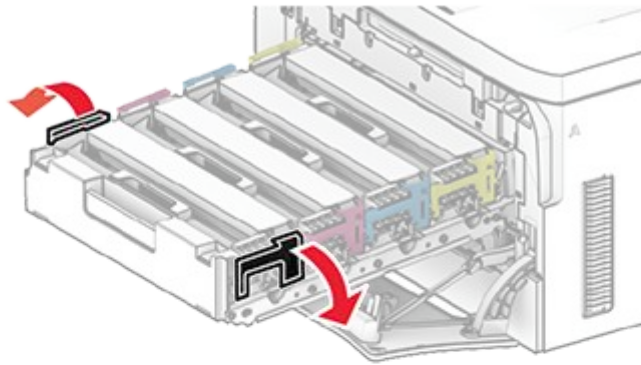
REPLACING A PRINT CARTRIDGE

 **Note:** If the tray is extended, then remove it before replacing a cartridge.

1. Open the front door, and then firmly push it down.
2. Pull out the print cartridge tray.



3. Remove the used print cartridge.



4. Unpack the new print cartridge.

 Warning—Potential Damage

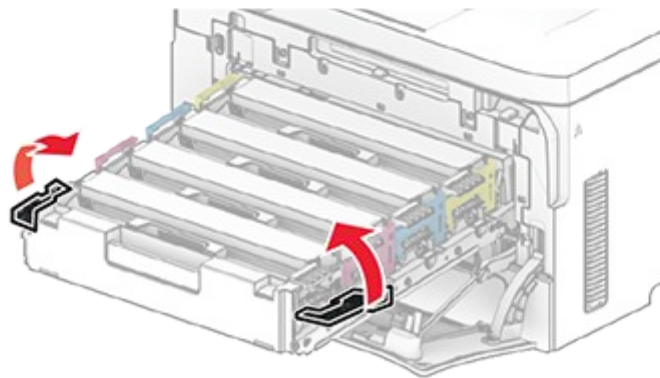
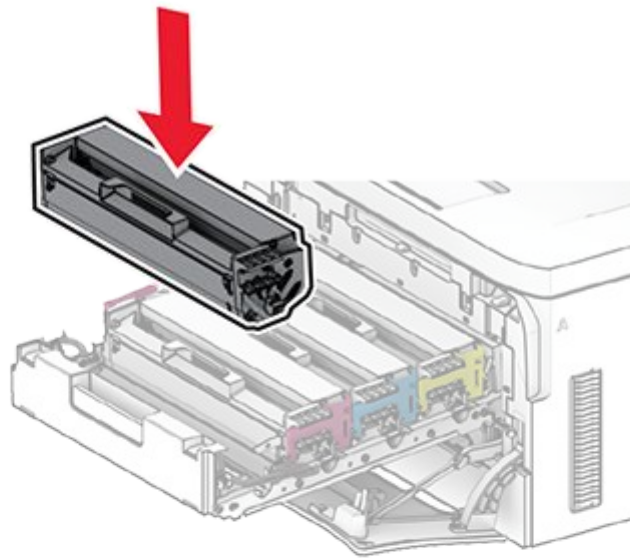
Do not expose the underside of the print cartridge to direct light. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

 Warning—Potential Damage

Do not touch the underside of the print cartridge. Doing so may affect the quality of future print jobs.



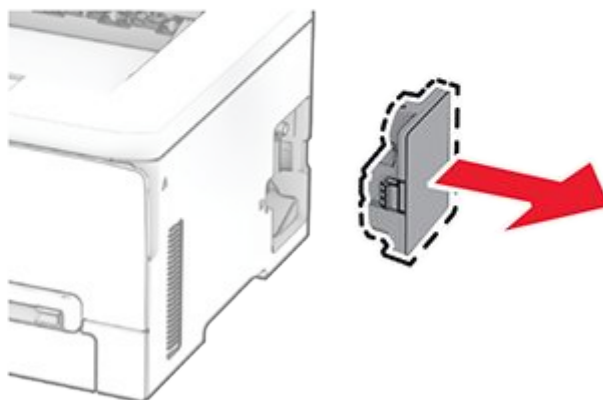
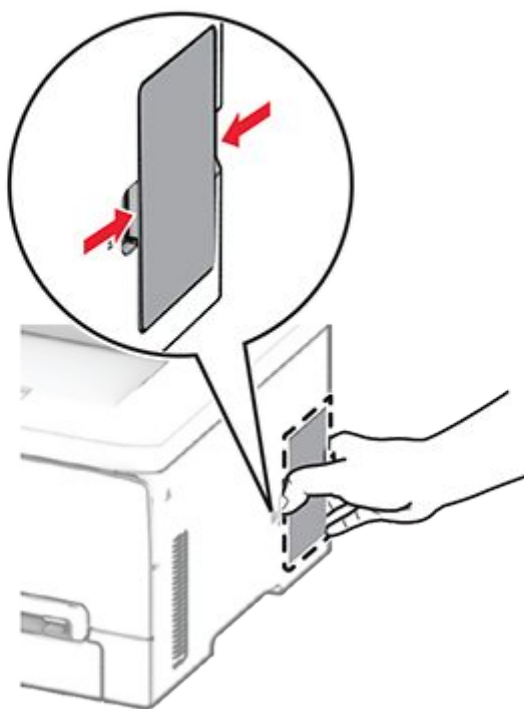
5. Insert the new print cartridge.



6. Insert the print cartridge tray, and then close the door.

REPLACING THE WASTE TONER BOTTLE

1. Remove the used waste toner bottle.



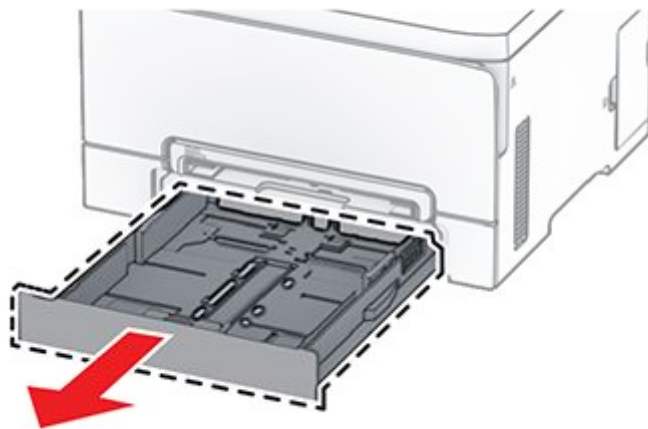
 **Note:** To avoid spilling the toner, place the bottle in an upright position.

2. Unpack the new waste toner bottle.
3. Insert the new waste toner bottle.

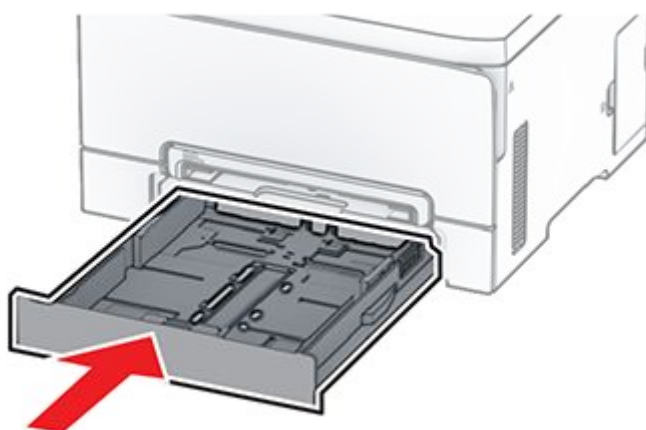


REPLACING THE TRAY INSERT

1. Remove the used tray insert.

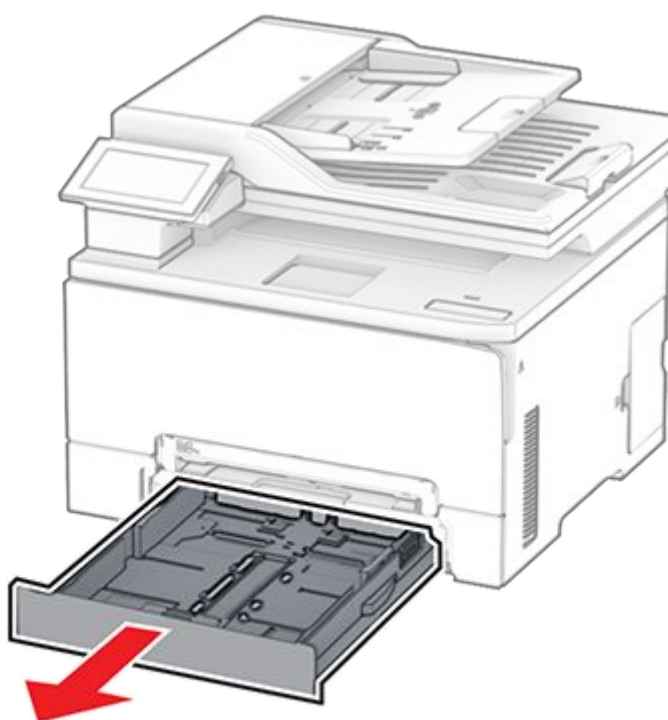


2. Unpack the new tray insert.
3. Insert the new tray insert.

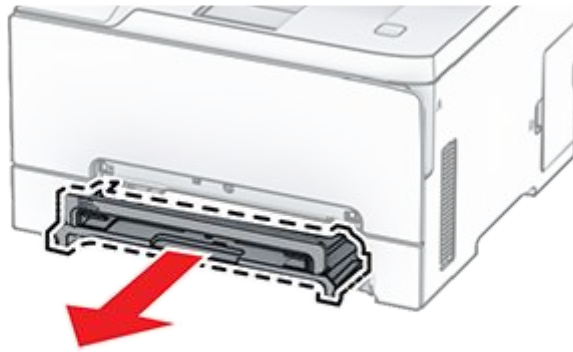


REPLACING THE MANUAL FEEDER

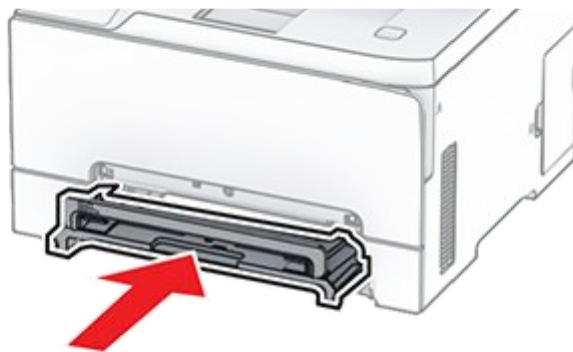
1. Remove the tray.



2. Remove the used manual feeder.



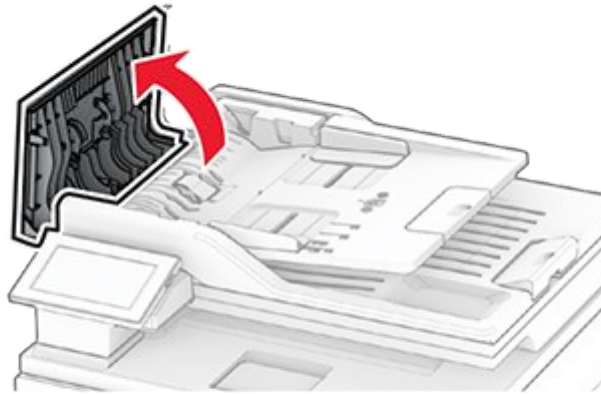
3. Unpack the new manual feeder.
4. Insert the new manual feeder.



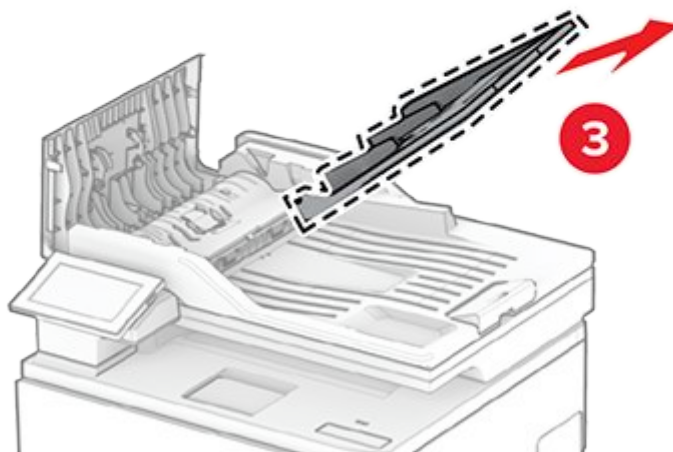
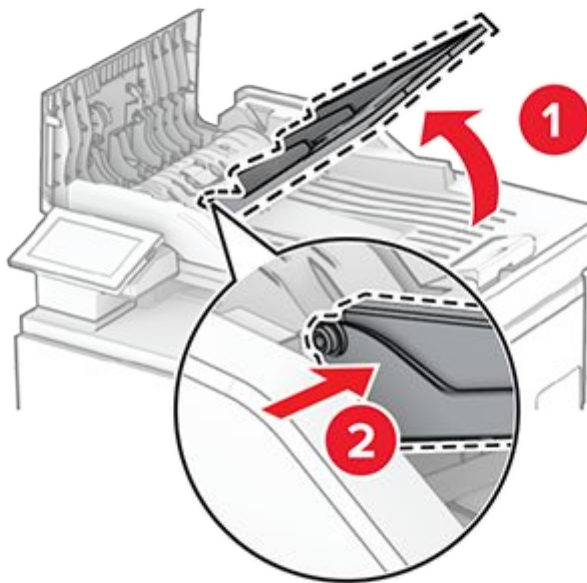
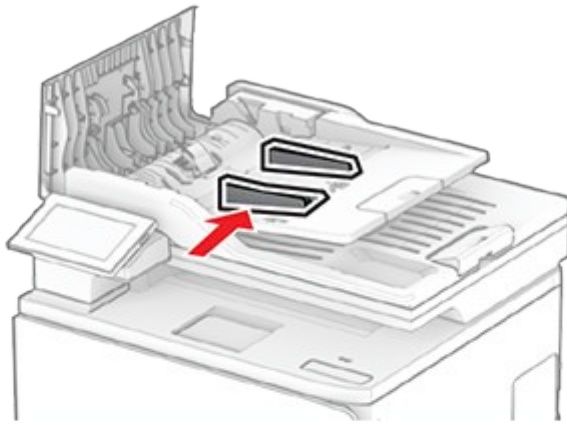
5. Insert the tray.

REPLACING THE ADF TRAY

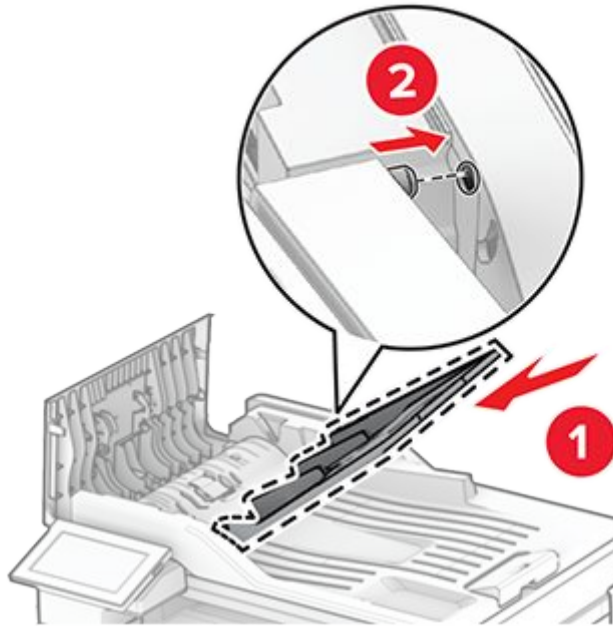
1. Open the ADF cover.



2. Remove the used ADF tray.



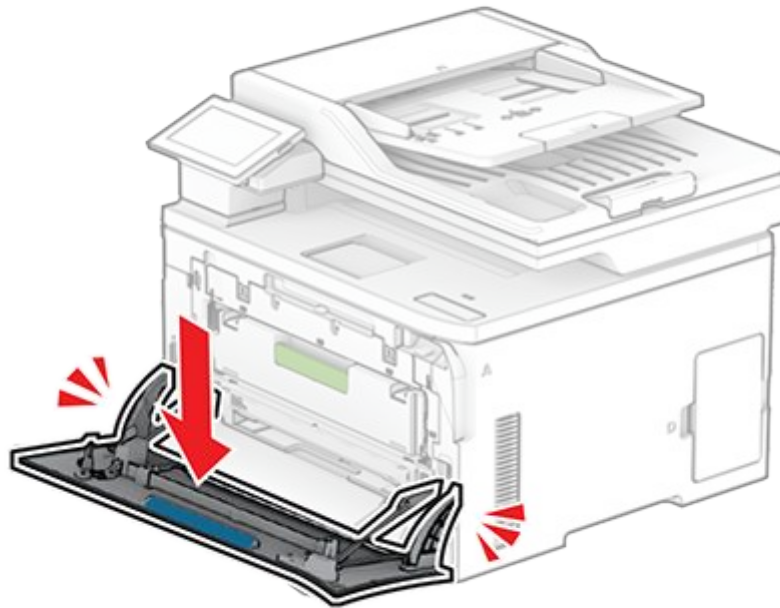
3. Unpack the new ADF tray.
4. Insert the new ADF tray until it clicks into place.



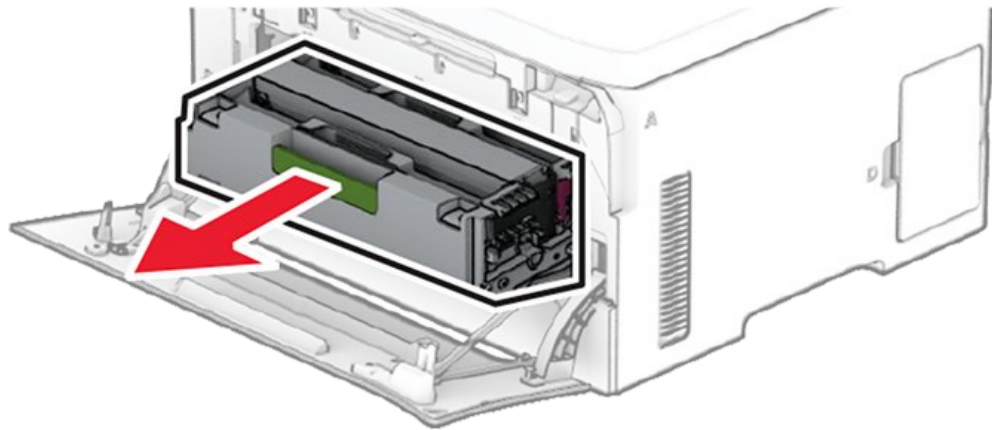
5. Close the ADF cover.

REPLACING THE PICK TIRES

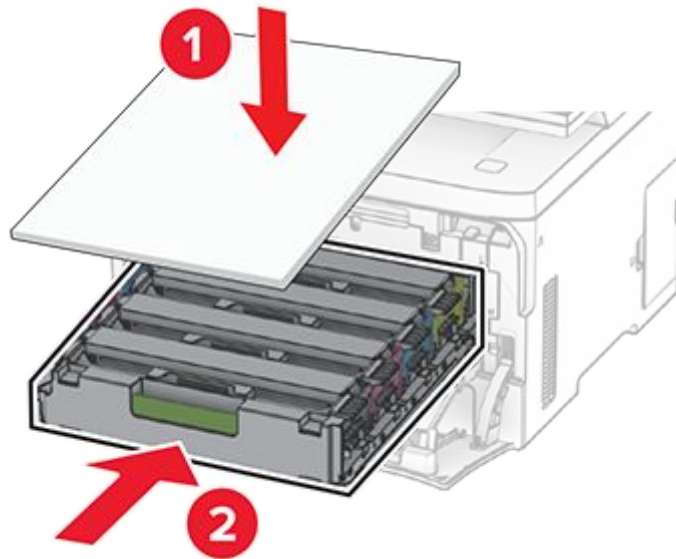
1. Turn off the printer.
2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then from the printer.
3. Open the front door, and then firmly push it down.



4. Pull out the print cartridge tray.

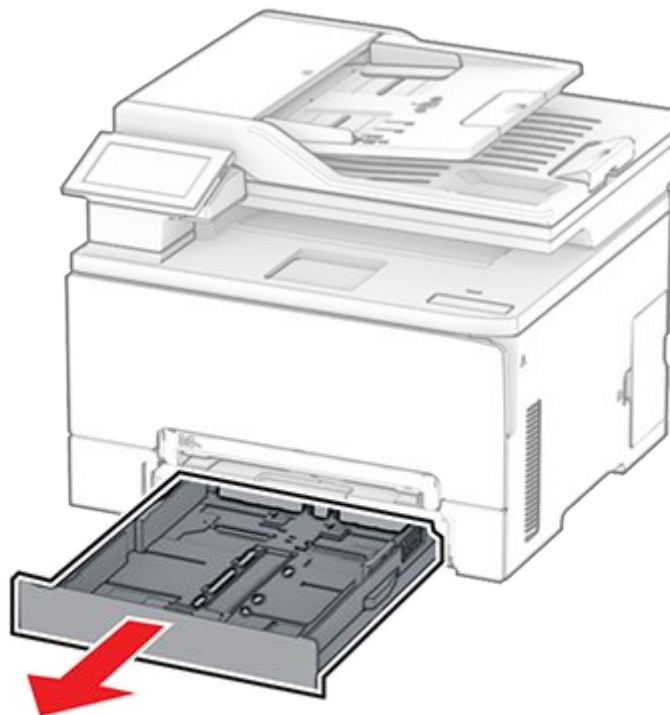


5. To avoid stray toner contamination, place a sheet of paper on the top of the print cartridge tray, and then insert the print cartridge tray.

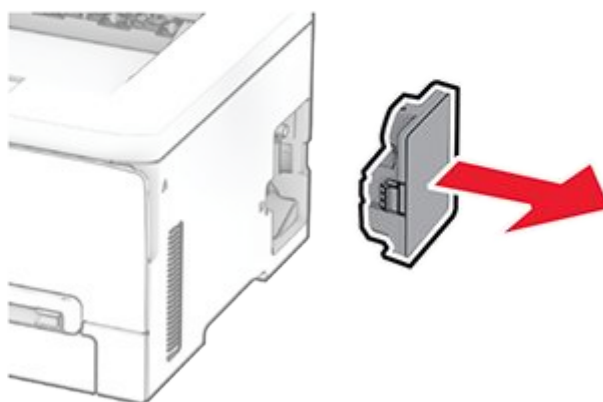
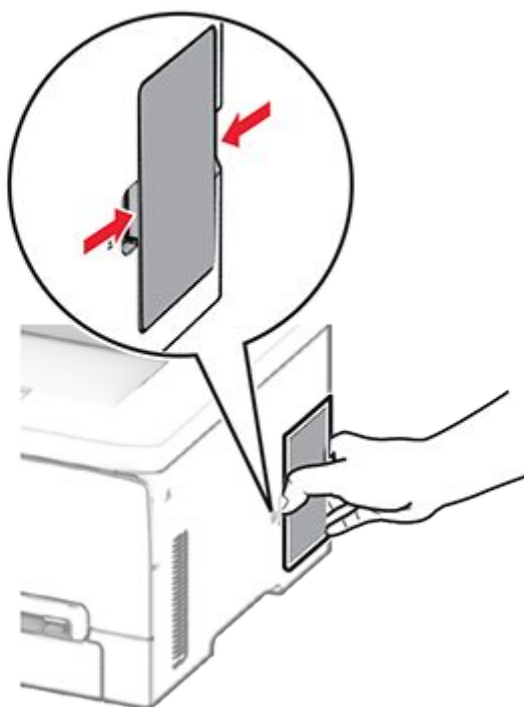


6. Close the front door.

7. Remove the tray.

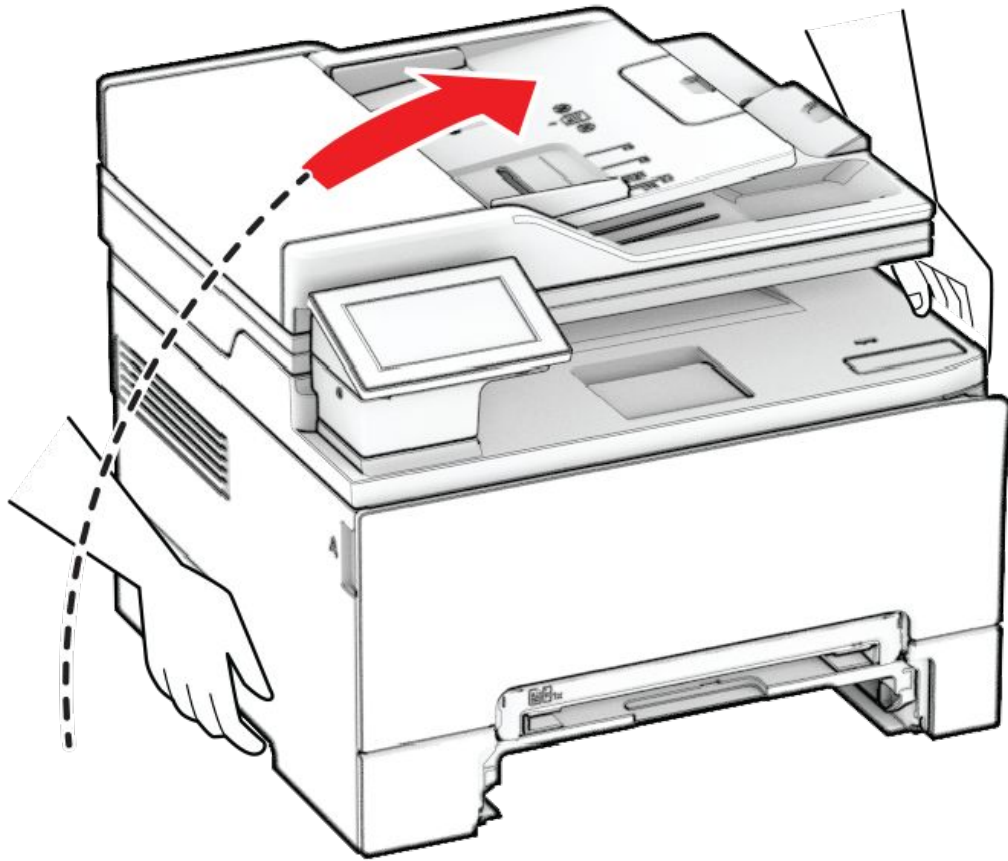


8. Remove the waste toner bottle.

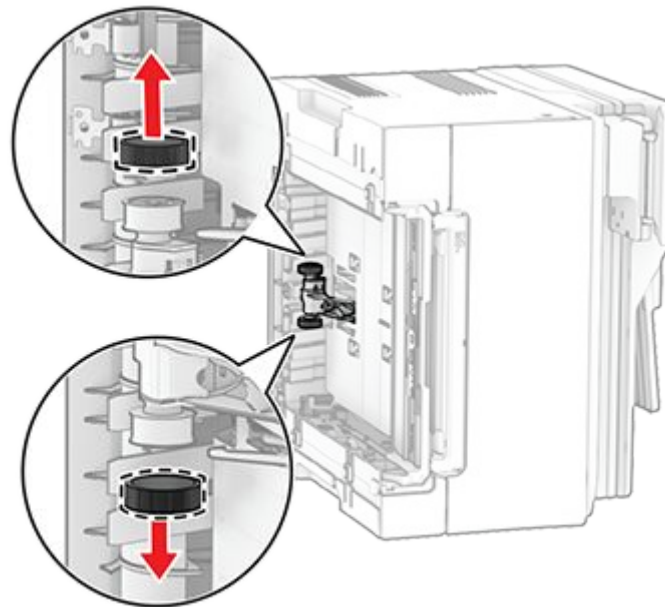
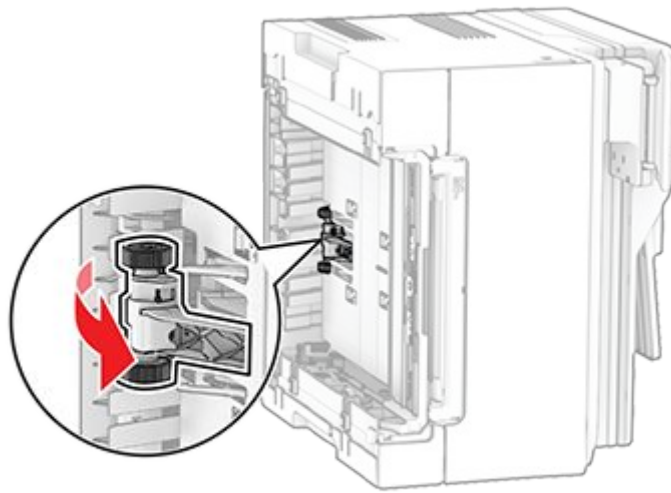


 **Note:** To avoid spilling the toner, place the bottle in an upright position.

9. Position the printer on its side.



10. Remove the used pick tires.

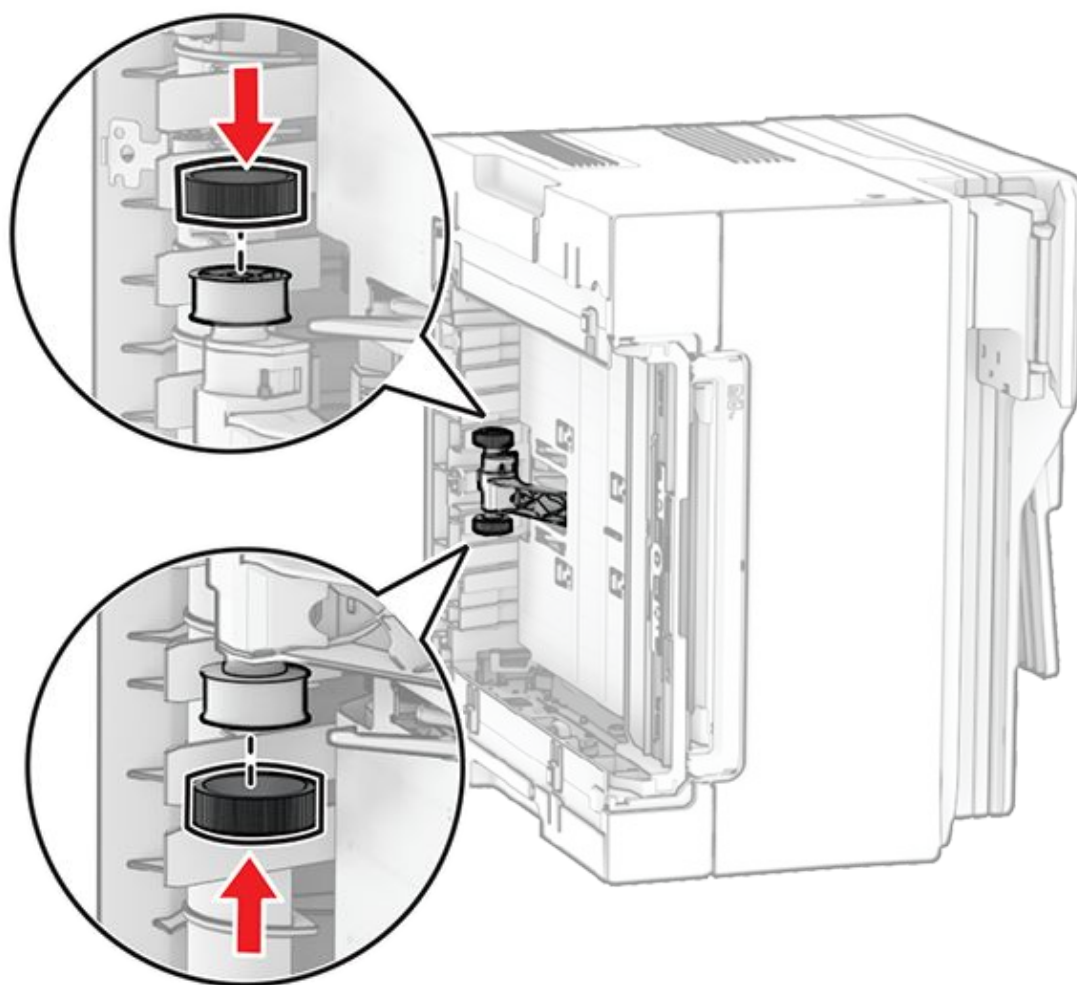


11. Unpack the new pick tires.

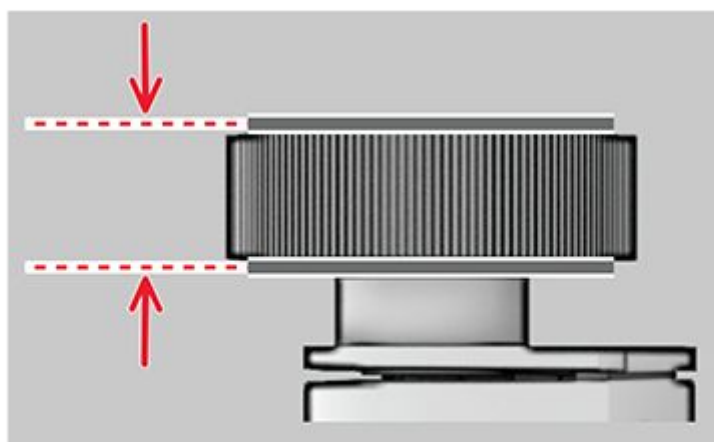


Note: To avoid contamination, make sure that your hands are clean.

12. Insert the new pick tires.



 **Note:** Make sure that the pick tire is properly inserted into the pick roller.



13. Return the printer to its original position, and then insert the waste toner bottle.
14. Insert the tray.
15. Open the front door, and then firmly push it down.
16. Pull out the print cartridge tray.
17. Remove the paper, and then insert the print cartridge tray.
18. Close the front door.
19. Connect the power cord to the printer, and then to the electrical outlet.



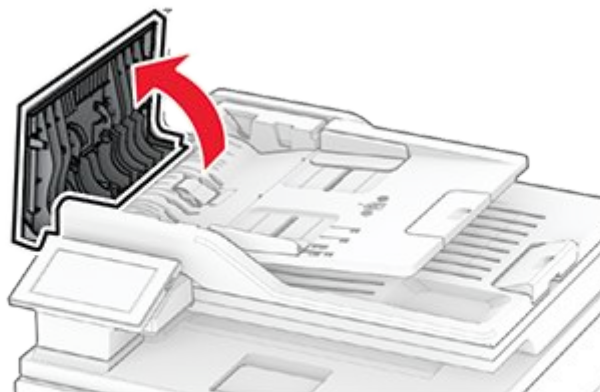
CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

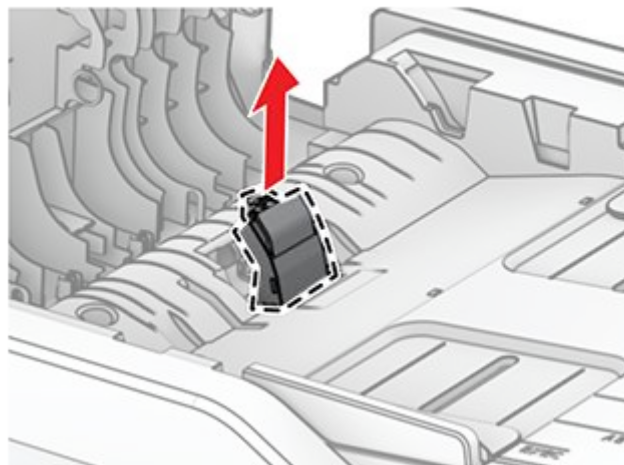
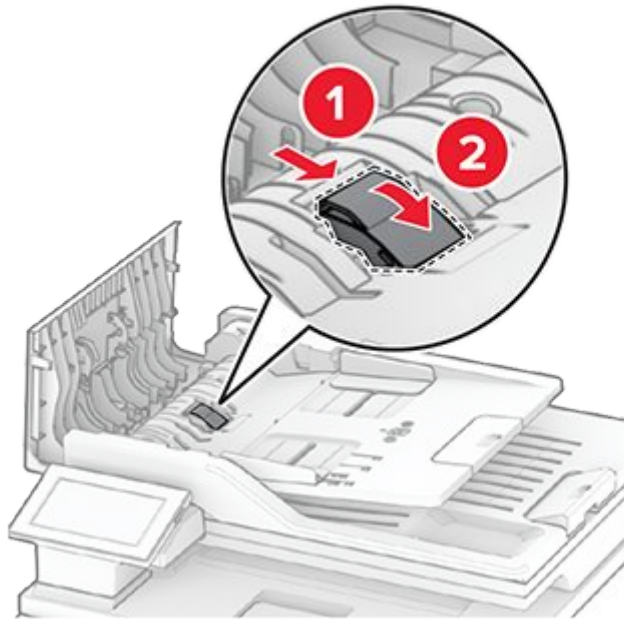
20. Turn on the printer.

REPLACING THE ADF SEPARATOR PAD

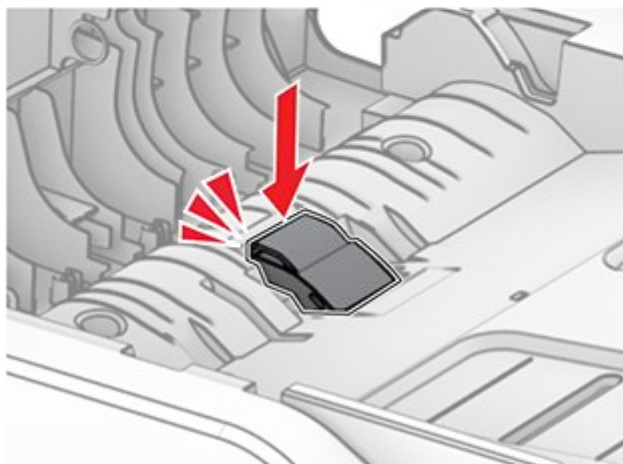
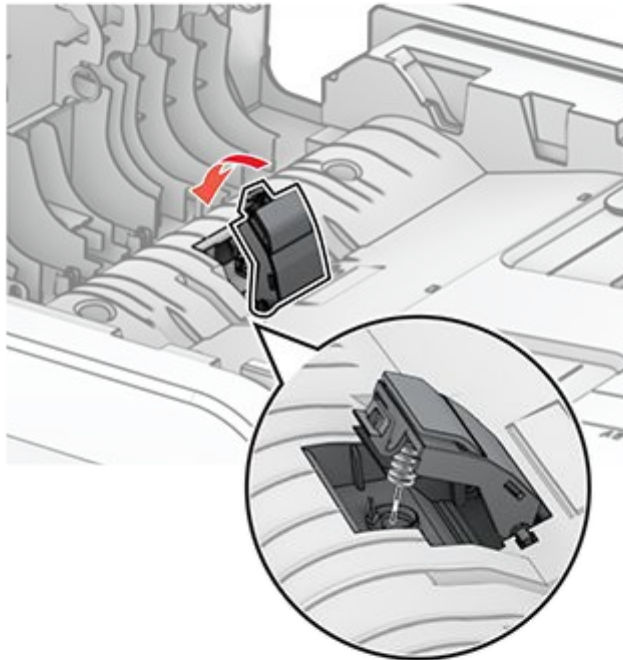
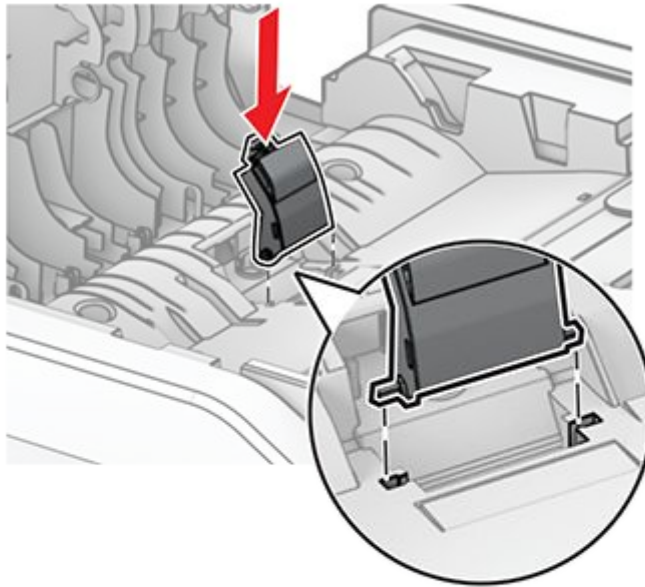
1. Open the ADF cover.



2. Remove the used ADF separator pad.



3. Unpack the new ADF separator pad.
4. Insert the new separator pad until it clicks into place.



5. Close the ADF cover.

RESETTING THE SUPPLY USAGE COUNTERS

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Maintenance** › **Configuration Menu** › **Supply Usage And Counters**.
2. Select the counter that you want to reset.

Cleaning printer parts

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR OF THE PRINTER

Regular maintenance of your printer is essential to ensure its longevity and optimal performance. When cleaning the printer, take the necessary precautions to avoid damage. Damage to the printer caused by improper handling is not covered by the printer warranty.

1. Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.



CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

To avoid the risk of electrical shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.

2. Remove paper from the standard bin, the trays, and the multipurpose feeder or manual feeder.
3. Using a soft brush, remove any dust, lint, and pieces of paper around the printer.
4. Using a damp, soft, lint-free cloth, wipe the following areas:
 - Control panel
 - Standard bin
 - Trays
 - Multipurpose feeder or manual feeder
 - Front, sides, and rear of the printer



Warning—Potential Damage

- To avoid damaging the finish of the printer, do not use household cleaners or detergents.
 - Do not use aerosol cleaners, as they may cause explosions or fires when used on electromechanical equipment.
5. Make sure that all areas of the printer are dry after cleaning.
 6. Connect the power cord to the electrical outlet, and then turn on the printer.

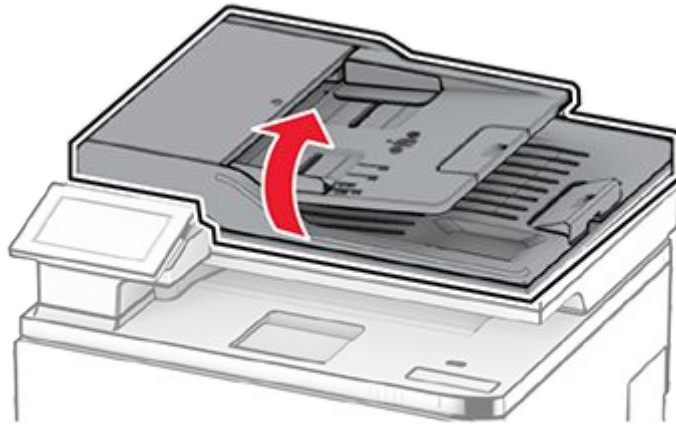


CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

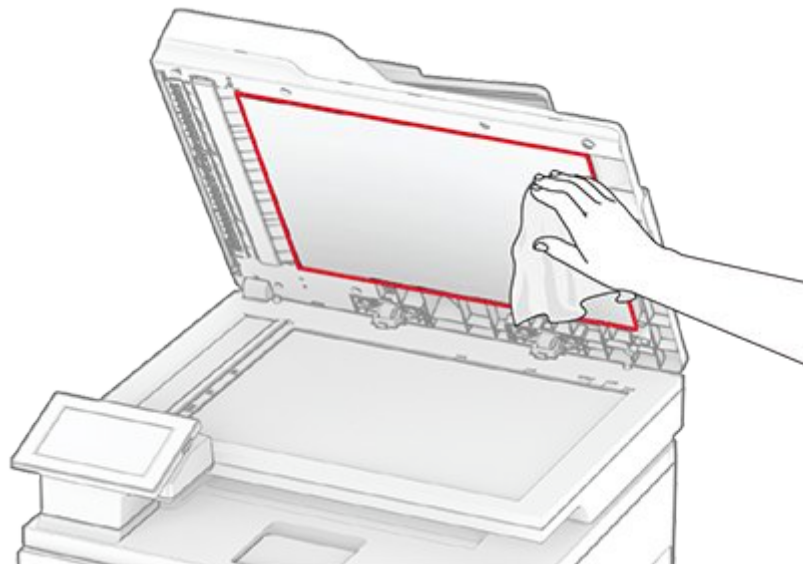
CLEANING THE SCANNER

1. Open the scanner cover.

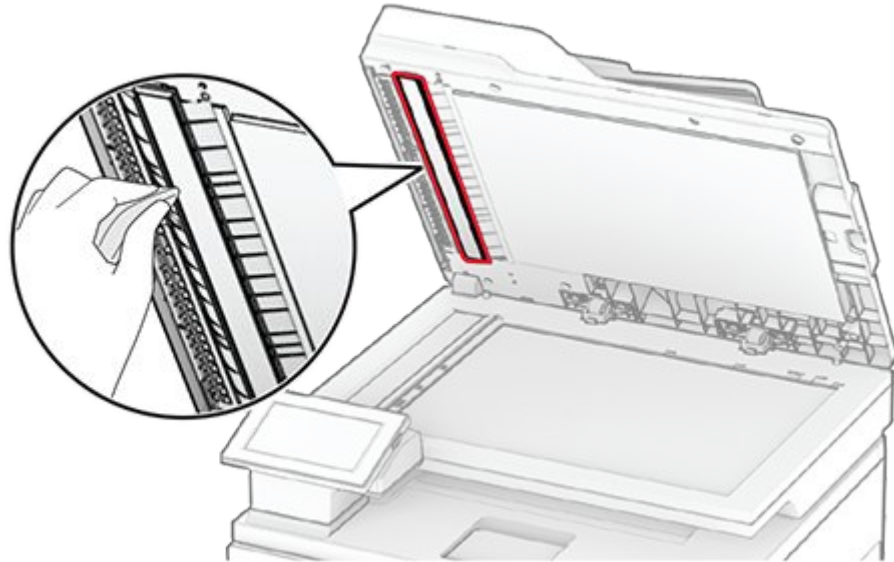
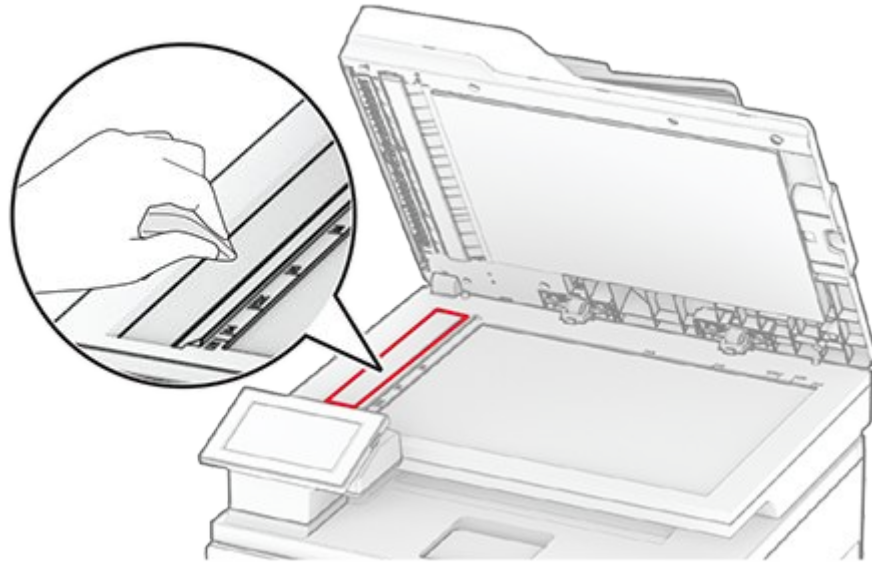


2. Using a damp, soft, lint-free cloth, wipe the following areas:

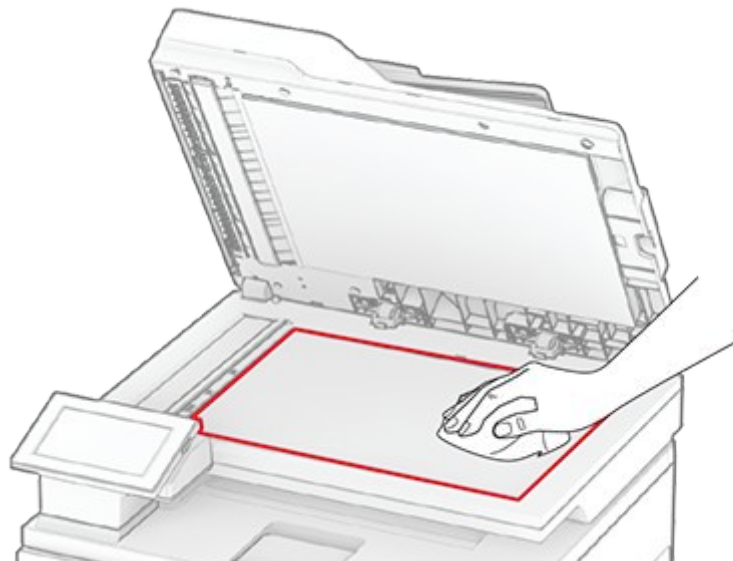
- Scanner glass pad



- ADF glass



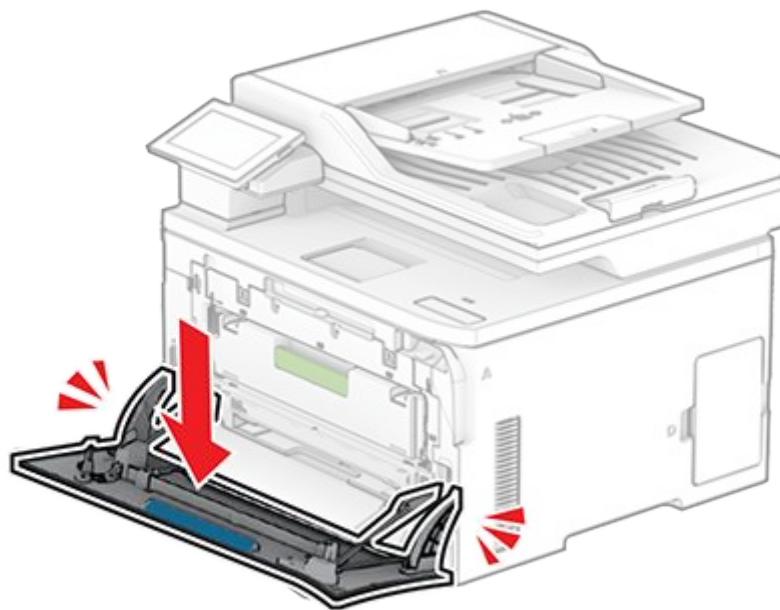
- Scanner glass



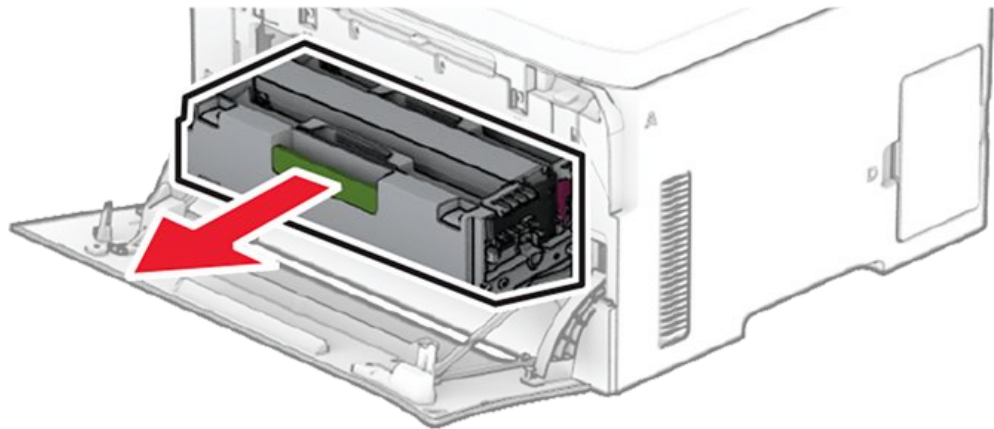
3. Close the scanner cover.

CLEANING THE PICK TIRES

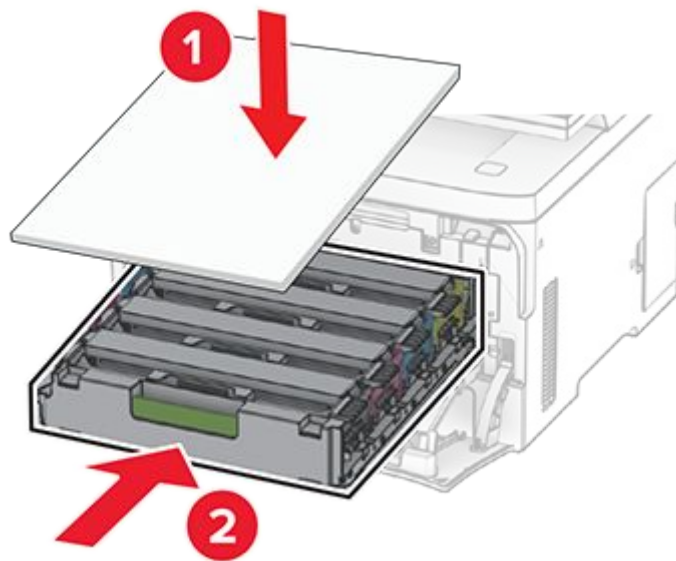
1. Turn off the printer.
2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then from the printer.
3. Open the front door, and then firmly push it down.



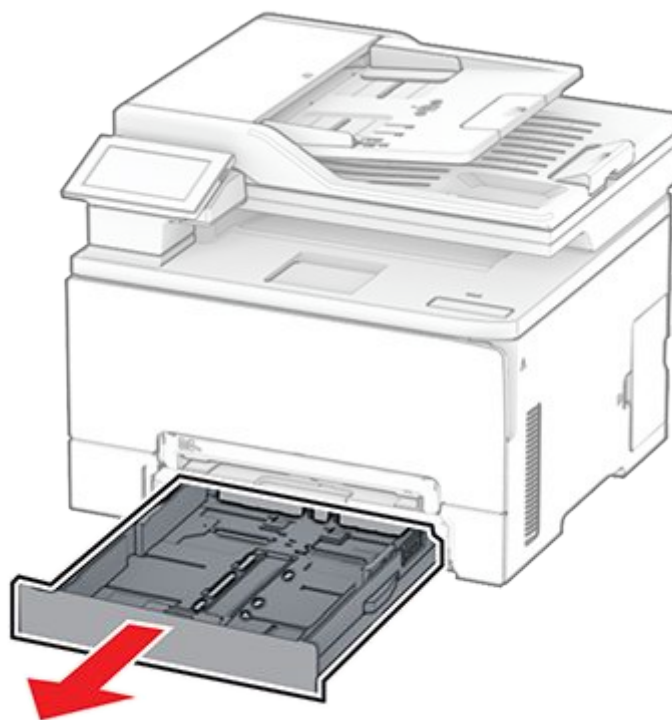
4. Pull out the print cartridge tray.



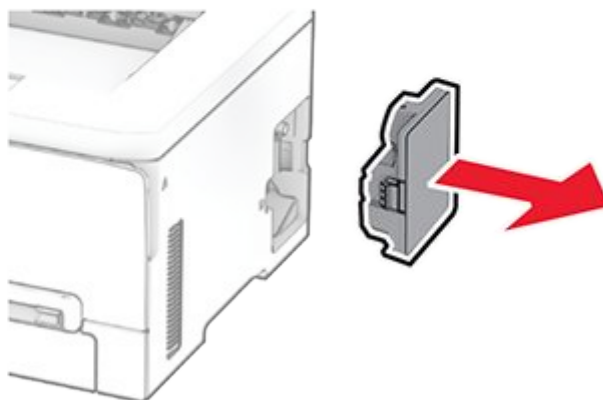
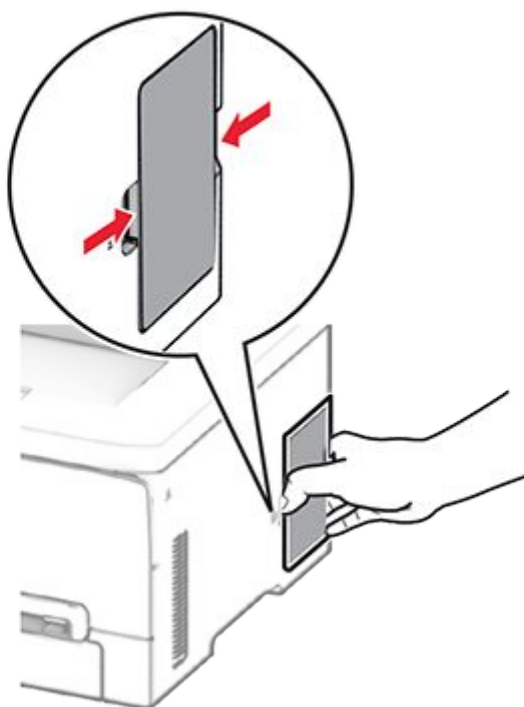
5. To avoid stray toner contamination, place a sheet of paper on top of the print cartridge tray, and then insert the print cartridge tray.



6. Close the front door.
7. Remove the tray.

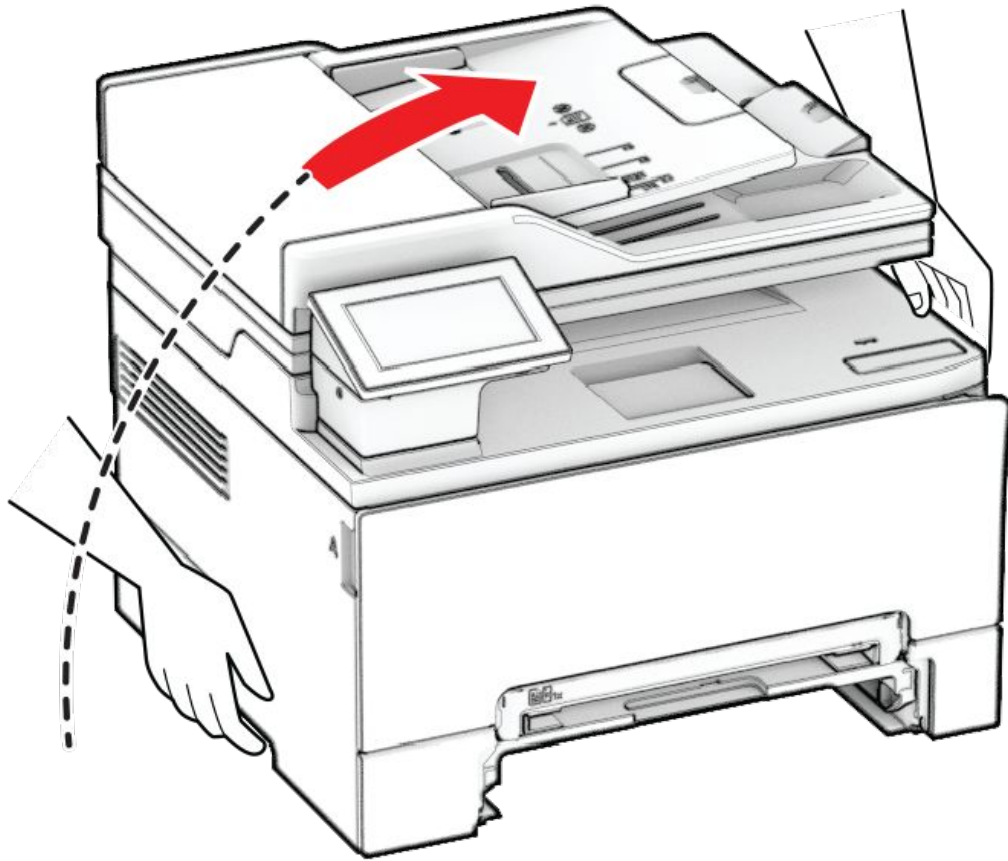


8. Remove the waste toner bottle.

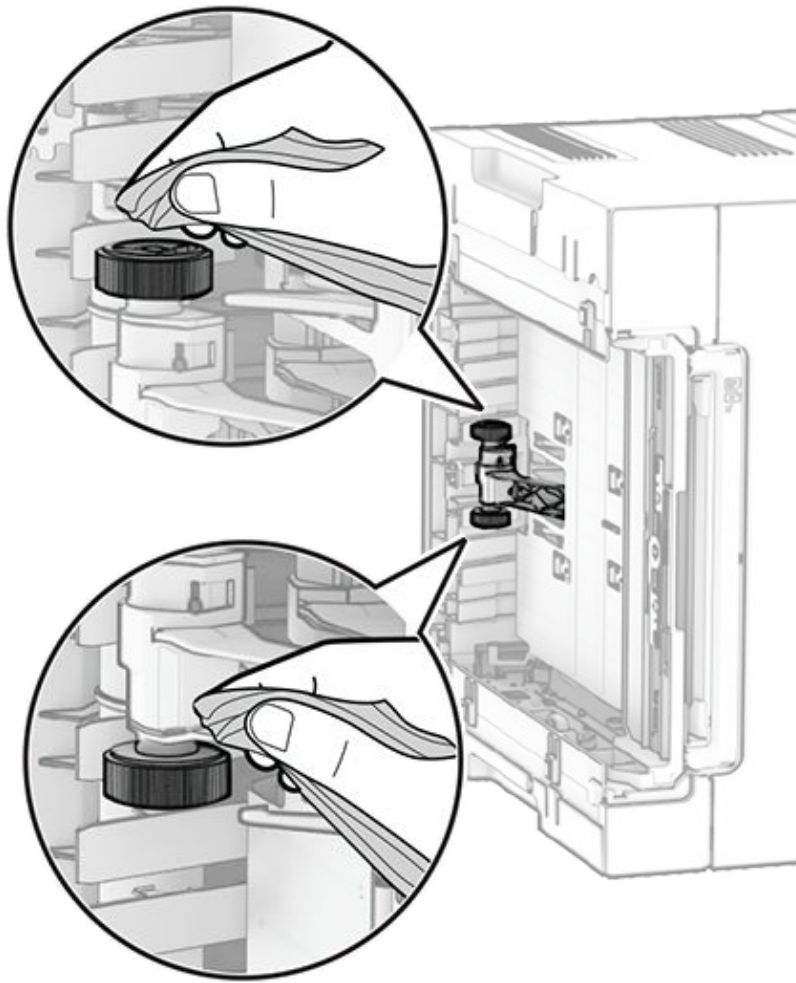


 **Note:** To avoid spilling the toner, place the bottle in an upright position.

9. Position the printer on its side.



10. Apply isopropyl alcohol to a soft, lint-free cloth, and then wipe the pick tires.



11. Return the printer to its original position, and then insert the waste toner bottle.
12. Insert the tray.
13. Open the front door, and then firmly push it down.
14. Pull out the print cartridge tray.
15. Remove the paper, and then insert the print cartridge tray.
16. Close the front door.
17. Connect the power cord to the printer, and then to the electrical outlet.



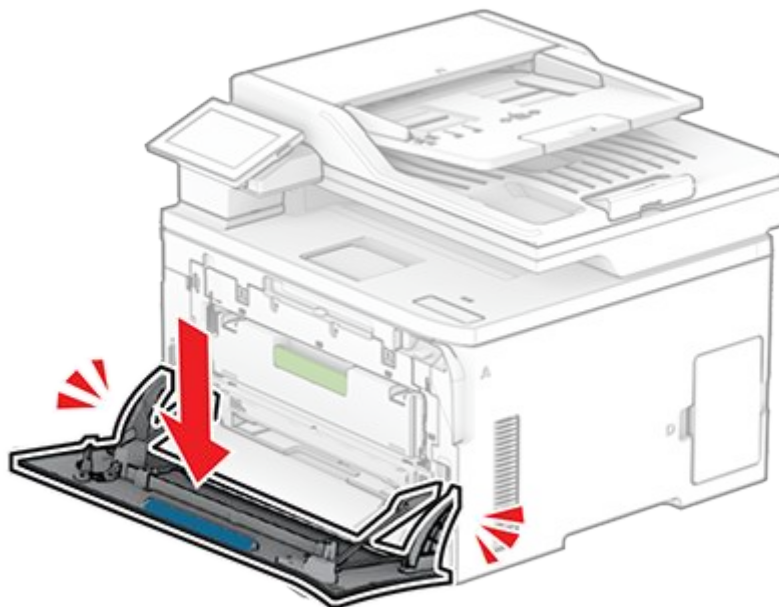
CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

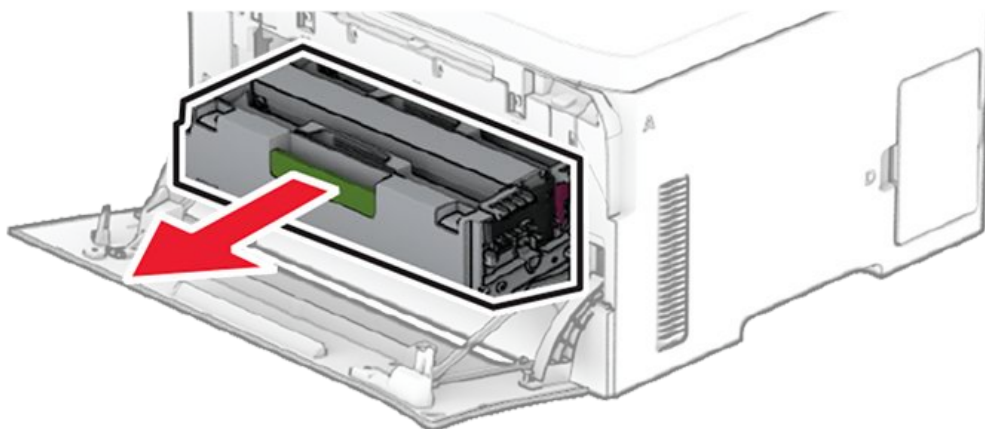
18. Turn on the printer.

CLEANING THE PRINT CARTRIDGE CONTACTS

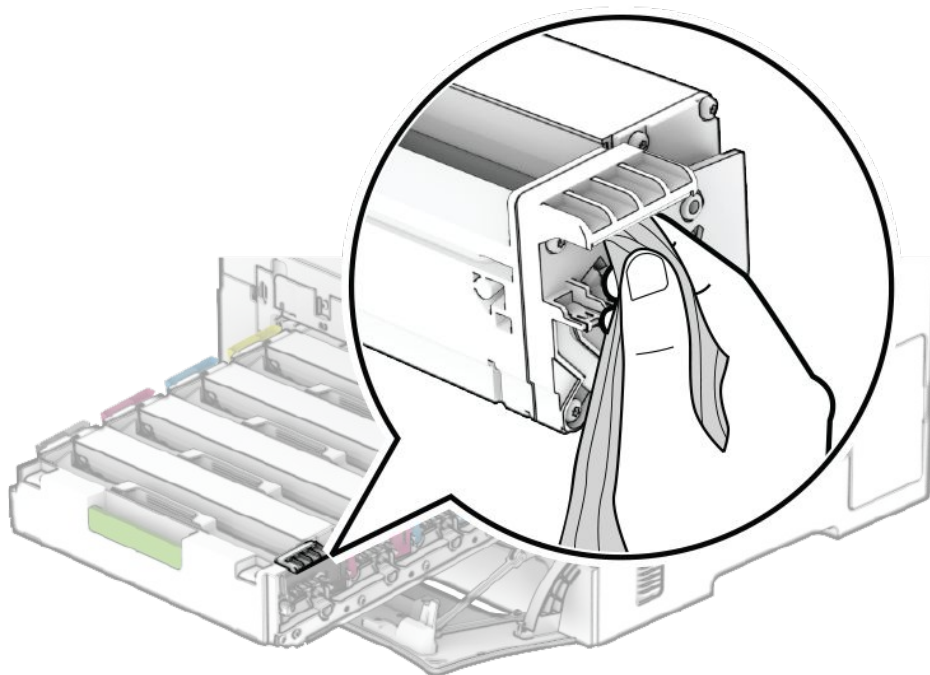
1. Open the front door, and then firmly push it down.



2. Pull out the print cartridge tray.



3. Using a dry, soft, lint-free cloth, wipe the gold contacts in all the print cartridges.



4. Insert the print cartridge tray, and then close the door.

Saving energy and paper

CONFIGURING THE POWER SAVE MODE SETTINGS

Sleep mode

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Power Management** › **Timeouts** › **Sleep Mode**.
2. Set the amount of time that the printer stays idle before it enters **Sleep Mode**.

Hibernate mode

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Power Management** › **Timeouts** › **Hibernate Timeout**.
2. Set the amount of time that the printer stays idle before it enters Hibernate mode.

Notes

- For **Hibernate Timeout** to work, set **Hibernate Timeout on Connection** to **Hibernate**.
- The Embedded Web Server is disabled when the printer is in Hibernate mode.

ADJUSTING THE BRIGHTNESS OF THE DISPLAY

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Preferences**.
2. In the **Screen Brightness** menu, adjust the setting.

CONSERVING SUPPLIES

- Print on both sides of the paper.



Note: Two-sided printing is the default setting in the printer.

- Print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper.
- Use the preview feature to see how the document looks like before printing it.
- Print one copy of the document to check its content and format for accuracy.

Moving the printer to another location



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

If the printer weight is greater than 20 kg (44 lb), then it may require two or more people to lift it safely.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

When moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Make sure that all doors and trays are closed.
- Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer.
- If the printer has separate floor-standing optional trays or output options attached to it, then disconnect them before moving the printer.
- If the printer has a caster base, then carefully roll it to the new location. Use caution when passing over thresholds and breaks in flooring.
- If the printer does not have a caster base but is configured with optional trays or output options, then remove the output options and lift the printer off the trays. Do not try to lift the printer and any options at the same time.
- Always use the handholds on the printer to lift it.
- Any cart used to move the printer must have a surface able to support the full footprint of the printer.
- Any cart used to move the hardware options must have a surface able to support the dimensions of the options.
- Keep the printer in an upright position.
- Avoid severe jarring movements.
- Make sure that your fingers are not under the printer when you set it down.
- Make sure that there is adequate clearance around the printer.



Note: Damage to the printer caused by improper moving is not covered by the printer warranty.

Troubleshoot a problem

This chapter contains

Print quality issues	265
Printer error codes.....	286
Paper jams	294
Printing problems.....	326
Connectivity problems.....	327
Hardware options problems.....	328
Issues with supplies.....	329
Paper handling problems	338
Emailing problems.....	340
Faxing problems	341
Scanning problems.....	343
System problems.....	349
Color quality problems.....	351
Contacting customer support.....	353

11. Troubleshoot a problem

Print quality issues

BEST PRACTICES FOR MAINTAINING PRINT QUALITY

- Use only genuine print cartridges, toner cartridges, and fusers instead of third-party supplies.
- Use the correct paper type and size. Identify the recommended printable side of the paper before loading. Match the printer settings to the paper loaded.
- Choose high-quality paper made for laser printers and copiers. Use paper from an unopened package. Old paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity.
- Keep the default print settings unless changing them is necessary.
- If an issue occurs, perform a manual Color Adjust before printing. Otherwise, let the printer adjust colors automatically when needed.
- Make sure the glass surface of the scanner is completely clean and free of dirt, dust, fingerprints, or any other substances that may affect scanning quality.
- Keep the imaging unit, imaging kit, or cartridge in its packaging until ready for use to minimize light exposure.
- Avoid touching the photoconductor drum or transfer belt and minimize its exposure to light.
- Place the printer on a flat, sturdy, and stable surface and within its temperature and humidity specifications.
- Plug the printer directly into an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet, not a power strip or surge protector.

Factors that affect print quality output

- Software used to send the file
 - Different programs, such as PowerPoint, Adobe, Edge, handle color differently. For example, Microsoft Office often uses RGB, while Adobe sends CMYK.
- Printer firmware used
 - Use the latest firmware version for best results.
- Print driver selection
 - Use the latest driver selection for best results.
 - Avoid outdated third-party drivers.
- Operating system (OS)
 - Print output can vary by OS. For example, Windows, macOS, Linux, Android.
- Print job complexity
 - Long or complex jobs may impact print or copy quality.
 - If issues occur, send smaller jobs or allow the printer to cool.

- Information technology policies of the company or organization
 - Policies may override user settings. For example, force black-and-white printing and enable the toner saver setting.
- Component life
 - Replaceable printer components, such as cartridges or imaging units, that have reached the end of their rated life can affect print or copy quality.
- Color differences between the computer screen and actual print
 - Monitors use RGB while printers use CMYK. Colors may not match exactly.

PRINT QUALITY ISSUES GUIDE

To prevent or resolve common print quality problems, see [Best practices for maintaining print quality on page 265](#).

Look for the image that matches your print quality issue. Click the link to see the troubleshooting steps.

Missing print

- Blank page
- Partially blank page

Examples:

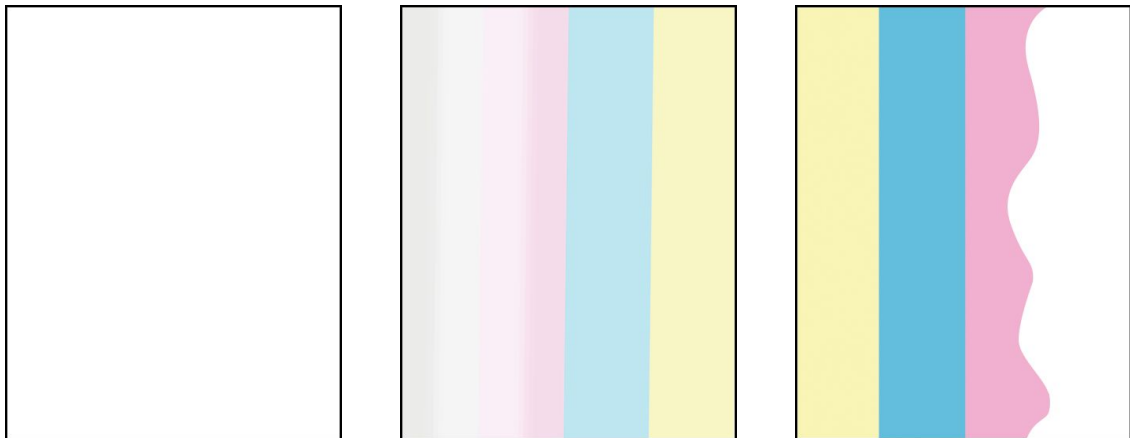
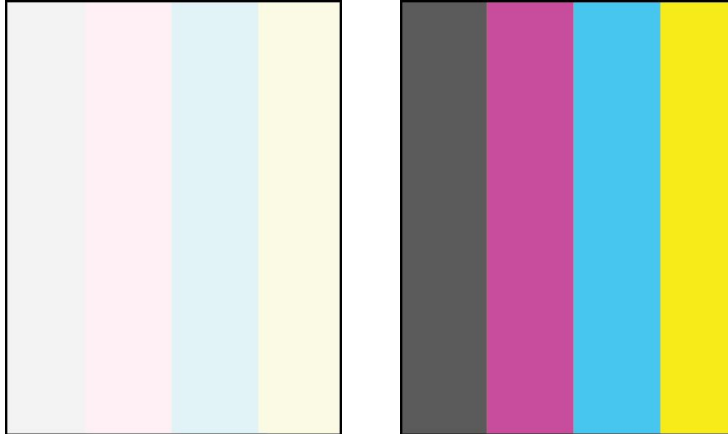


Image is too light or too dark

- Light print
- Faded print
- Dark print

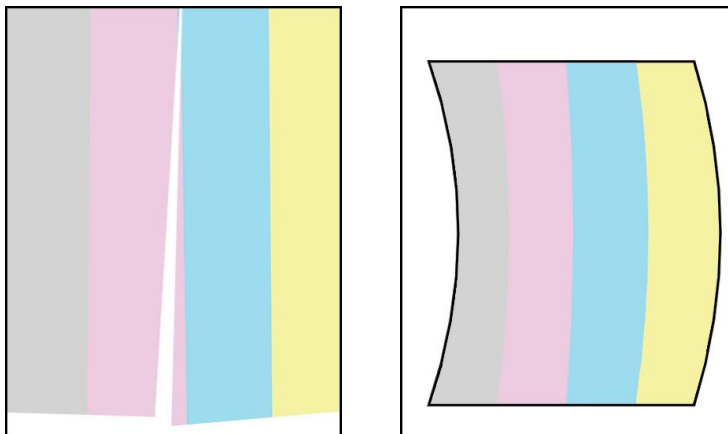
Examples:



Folded, wrinkled, or curled paper

- Folded paper
- Wrinkled paper
- Curled paper

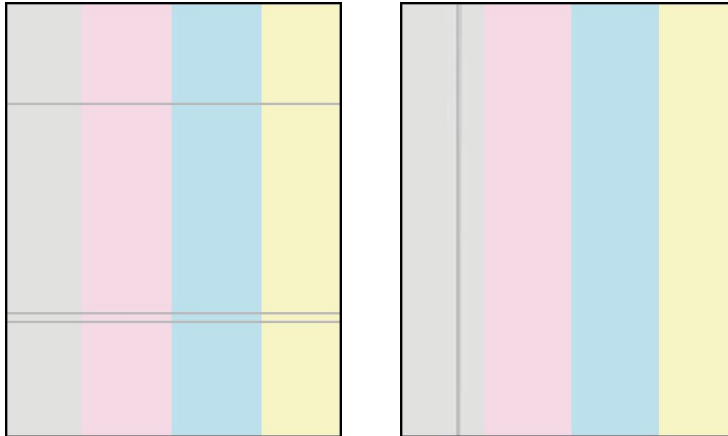
Examples:



Dark vertical or horizontal lines

- Black lines
- Dark streaks
- Dark bands

Examples:



Light vertical or horizontal lines

- White lines
- Line streaks
- Light bands

Examples:



Repeating defects

- Repetitive marks
- Ghosting
- Identical marks at fixed intervals

Examples:

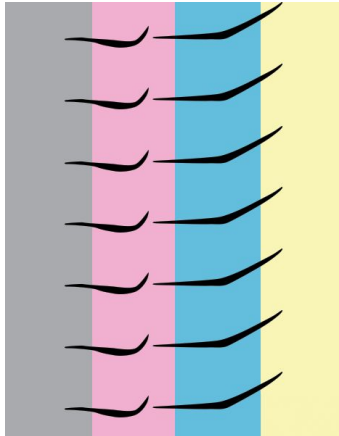
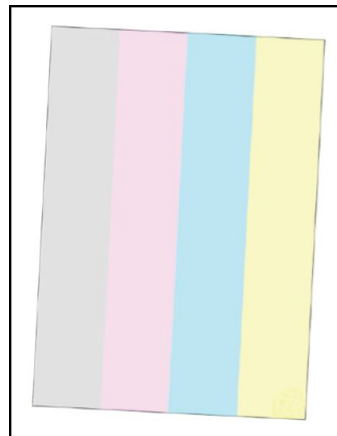
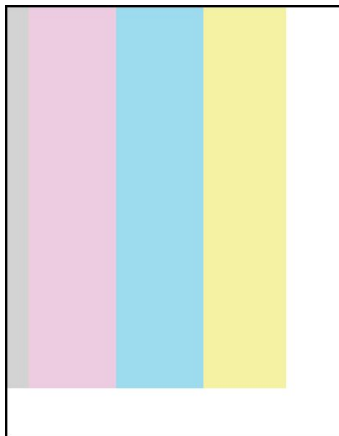


Image is not correctly placed on page

- Incorrect margins
- Skewed print
- Tilted page

Examples:



Gray or light background

- Shaded background
- Tinted background

Examples:

Leonard GXTMedia Print Quality Test			
Fonts	Double-Strike	Font Sizes, Pfr, n	
Alto 12pt	Double	3 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	6 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	9 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	12 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	15 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	18 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	24 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	36 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	48 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	72 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	144 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	288 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	576 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	1152 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	2304 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	4608 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	9216 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	18432 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	36864 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	73728 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	147456 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	294912 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	589824 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	1179648 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	2359296 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	4718592 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	9437184 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	18874368 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	37748736 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	75497472 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	150994944 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	301989888 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	603979776 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	1207959552 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	2415919104 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	4831838208 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	9663676416 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	19327352832 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	38654705664 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	77309411328 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	154618822656 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	309237645312 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	618475290624 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	1236950581248 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	2473901162496 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	4947802324992 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	9895604649984 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	19791209299968 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	39582418599936 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	79164837199872 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	158329674399744 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	316659348799488 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	633318697598976 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	1266637395197952 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	2533274790395904 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	5066549580791808 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	10133099161583616 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	20266198323167232 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	40532396646334464 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	81064793292668928 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	162129586585337856 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	324259173170675712 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	648518346341351424 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	1297036692682702848 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	2594073385365405696 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	5188146770730811392 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	10376293541461622784 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	20752587082923245568 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	41505174165846491136 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	83010348331692982272 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	166020696663385964544 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	332041393326771929088 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	664082786653543858176 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	1328165573307087716352 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	2656331146614175432704 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	5312662293228350865408 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	10625324586456701730816 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	21250649172913403461632 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	42501298345826806923264 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	85002596691653613846528 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	170005193383307227693056 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	340010386766614455386112 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	680020773533228910772224 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	1360041547066457821544448 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	2720083094132915643088896 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	5440166188265831286177792 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	10880332376531662572355584 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	21760664753063325144711168 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	43521329506126650289422336 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	87042659012253300578844672 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	174085318024506601157689344 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	348170636049013202315378688 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	696341272098026404630757376 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	1392682544196052809261514752 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	2785365088392105618523029504 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	5570730176784211237046059008 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	11141460353568422474092118016 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	22282920707136844948184236032 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	44565841414273689896368472064 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	89131682828547379792736944128 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	178263365657094759585473888256 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	356526731314189519170947776512 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	713053462628379038341895553024 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	1426106925256758076683791106048 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	2852213850513516153367582212096 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	5704427701027032306735164424192 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	11408855402054064613470328848384 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	22817710804108129226940657696768 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	45635421608216258453881315393536 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	91270843216432516907762630787072 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	182541686432865033815525261574144 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	365083372865730067631050523148288 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	730166745731460135262101046296576 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	1460333491462920270524202092593152 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	2920666982925840541048404185186304 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	5841333965851681082096808370372608 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	11682667931703362164193616740745216 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	23365335863406724328387233481490432 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	46730671726813448656774466962980864 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	93461343453626897313548933925961728 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	1869226869072537946270978678518336 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	3738453738145075892541957357036672 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	7476907476290151785083914714073344 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	14953814952580303570167829428146688 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	29907629905160607140335658856293376 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	59815259810321214280671317712586752 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	119630519620642428561342635425173504 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	239261039241284857122685270850347008 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	478522078482569714245370541700694016 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	957044156965139428490741083401388032 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	1914088313930278856981482166802776064 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	3828176627860557713962964333605552128 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	7656353255721115427925928667211104256 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	15312706511442230855851857334422208512 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	30625413022884461711703714668844417024 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	61250826045768923423407429337688834048 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	122501652091537846846814858675377668096 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	245003304183075693693629717350755336192 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	490006608366151387387259434701510672384 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	980013216732302774774518869403021344768 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	1960026433464605549549037738806042697536 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	3920052866929211099098075477612085395072 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	7840105733858422198196150955224170790144 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	15680211467716844396392301910448341580288 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	31360422935433688792784603820896683160576 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	62720845870867377585569207641793366321152 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	125441691741734755171138415283586732642304 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	250883383483469510342276830567173465284608 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	501766766966939020684553661134346930569216 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	1003533533933878041369107322268693861138432 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	2007067067867756082738214644537387722276864 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	4014134135735512165476429289074775444553728 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	8028268271471024330952858578149550889107456 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	16056536542942048661905717156299101778214912 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	32113073085884097323811434312598203556429824 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	64226146171768194647622868625196407112859648 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	128452292343536389295245737250392814225719296 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	256904584687072778590491474500785628451438592 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	513809169374145557180982949001571256902877184 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	1027618338748291114361965898003142513805754368 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	2055236677496582228723931796006285027611508736 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	4110473354993164457447863592012570055223017472 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	8220946709986328914895727184025140110446034944 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	16441893419972657829791454368050280220892069888 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	32883786839945315659582908736100560441784139776 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	65767573679890631319165817472201120883568279552 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	131535147359781262638331634944402241767136559104 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	263070294719562525276663269888804483534273118208 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	526140589439125050553326539777608967068546236416 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	1052281178878250101106653079555217937137092472832 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	2104562357756500202213306159110435874274184945664 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	4209124715513000404426612318220871748548369891328 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	8418249431026000808853224636441743497096739782656 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	16836498862052001617706449272883486994193479565312 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	33672997724104003235412898545766973988386959130624 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	67345995448208006470825797091533947976773918261248 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	134691990896416012941651594183067895953547836522496 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	269383981792832025883303188366135791907095673044992 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	538767963585664051766606376732271583814191346089984 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	1077535927171328103533212753464543167628382692179968 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	2155071854342656207066425506929086335256765384359936 pt	}
Alto 12pt	Double	4310143708685312414132851013858172670513530768719872 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	8620287417370624828265702027716345341027061537439744 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	17240574834741249656531404055432690682054123074879488 pt	
Alto 12pt	Double	34481149669482499313062808110865381364108246149758976 pt	}

Solid black or color pages

- Full page black or color print
- Blackout print

Example:



Compressed images appear on prints

- Stretched image
- Distorted print

Example:



Fuzzy or blurry print

- Poor print resolution
- Low print sharpness

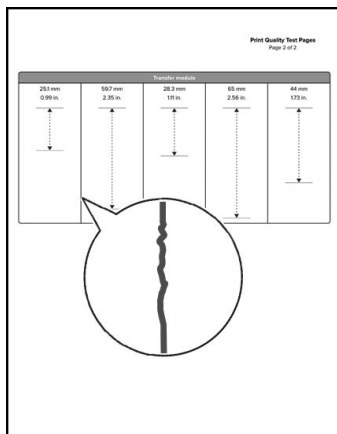
Example:



Wiggly, wavy or distorted lines

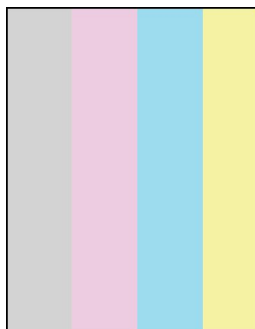
- Warped lines
- Rippling lines

Example:

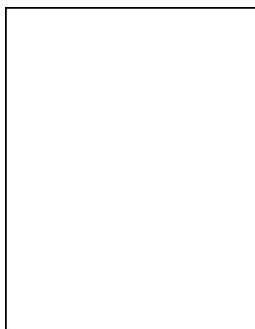


MISSING PRINT

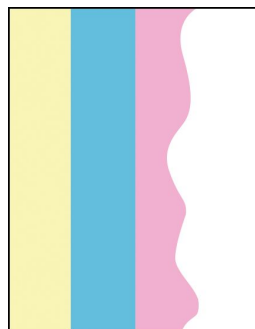
Expected print output



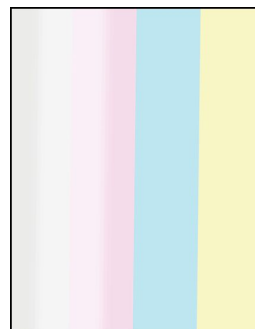
Defective print output



Defective print output



Defective print output



Issue description

The printed page is completely blank or contains sections where content is partially missing.

Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 266](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
- Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.

2. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

3. Check the toner darkness setting. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Print > Quality > Toner Darkness**.

Notes

- If the print is too dark, then set the value to **Light** and print again.
- If the print is too light, then set the value to **Dark** and print again.
- Change the value back to **Normal** if there are no significant changes in the printed page.

4. Initiate the color adjust process. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Advanced Imaging › Color Adjust**.

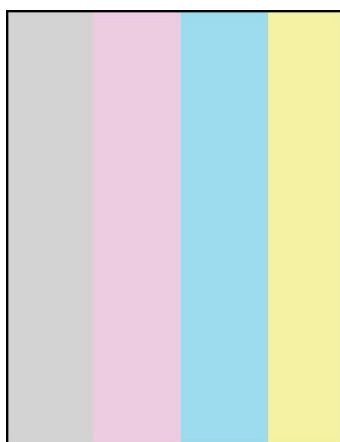


Note: The color adjust process takes about one minute to complete.

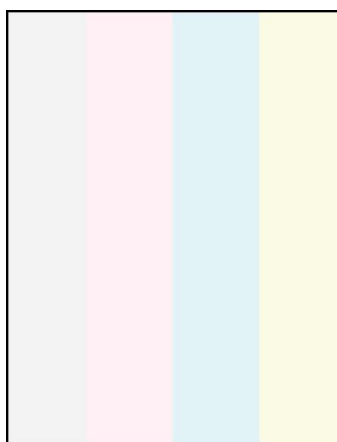
5. If your color print is only printing black, then do the following:
 - a. Check if black only mode is enabled. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Print Mode**. If the setting is **Black and White**, then change it to **Color**.
 - b. Check the print driver settings. Make sure that the driver is not set to print in black and white. With a document open, click **File › Print › Properties**. In the dialog box, click **Color Printing**. If **Xerox Black and White** is enabled, then change it to **Color**.
6. Check the print cartridge tray for improper installation.
 - If the print quality issue is occurring in black, then remove and reinstall the black print cartridge.
 - If the print quality issue is occurring in cyan, magenta, or yellow, then remove and reinstall the respective print cartridges.

IMAGE IS TOO LIGHT OR TOO DARK

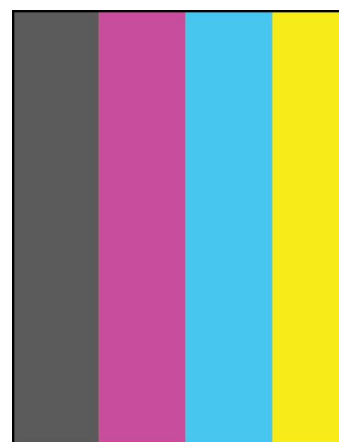
Expected print output



Defective print output



Defective print output



Issue description

The printed output is significantly lighter or darker than expected, text and images appear faded or overly dark. In some cases, fine details are lost due to excessive darkness or insufficient contrast.

Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Troubleshooting › Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 266](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
 - Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.
2. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

3. Check the toner darkness setting. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Toner Darkness**.

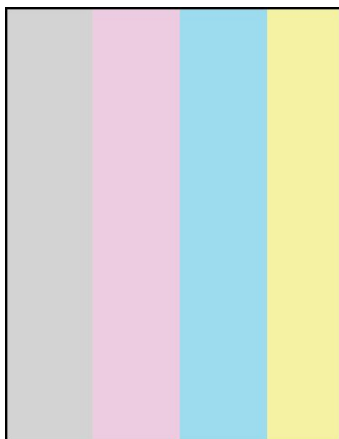
Notes

- If the print is too light, then set the value to **Dark** and print again.
 - Change the value back to **Normal** if there are no significant changes in the printed page.
4. Make sure that Color Saver is turned off. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Color Saver**.
 5. Initiate the color adjust process. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Advanced Imaging › Color Adjust**.

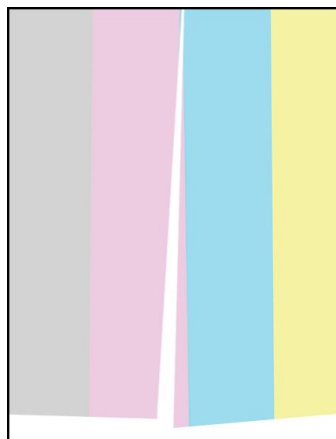
 **Note:** The color adjust process takes about one minute to complete.

FOLDED, WRINKLED, OR CURLED PAPER

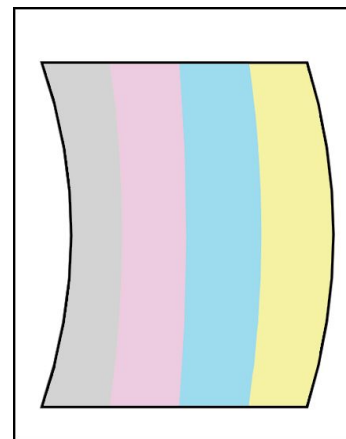
Expected print output



Defective print output



Defective print output



Issue description

The printed pages have folds, wrinkles, or curled edges.

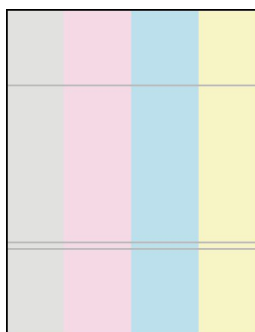
Folded, wrinkled, or curled paper is usually caused by a mismatch in printer settings or paper with excessive or uneven moisture.

Troubleshooting steps

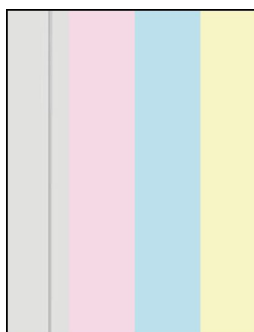
1. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
2. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).
3. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
4. Make sure that the paper loaded is from a fresh package.

VERTICAL OR HORIZONTAL LINES

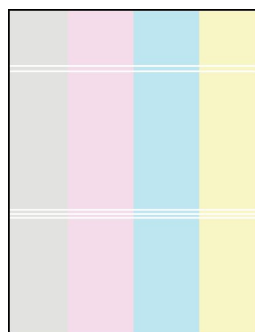
Defective print output



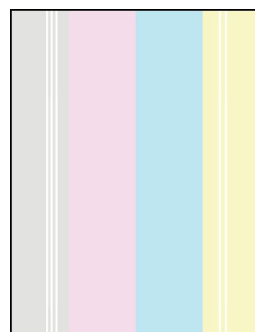
Defective print output



Defective print output



Defective print output



Issue description

The printed page shows unwanted vertical or horizontal lines across the page, resulting in streaks or banding that affect image clarity.

Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 266](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
 - Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.
2. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

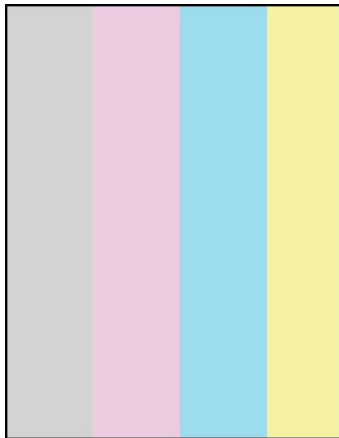
Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

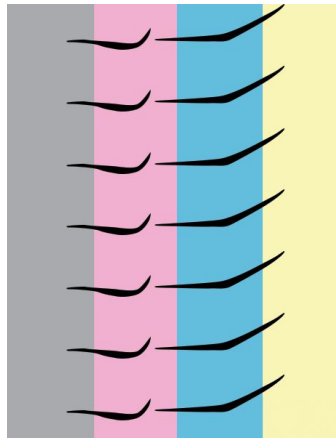
3. Check the print cartridge tray for improper installation.
 - If the print quality issue is occurring in black, then remove and reinstall the black print cartridge.
 - If the print quality issue is occurring in cyan, magenta, or yellow, then remove and reinstall the respective print cartridges.

REPEATING DEFECTS

Expected print output



Defective print output



Issue description

The printed page shows the same mark or spot appearing over and over at equal distances down the page.

Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Troubleshooting** › **Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 266](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

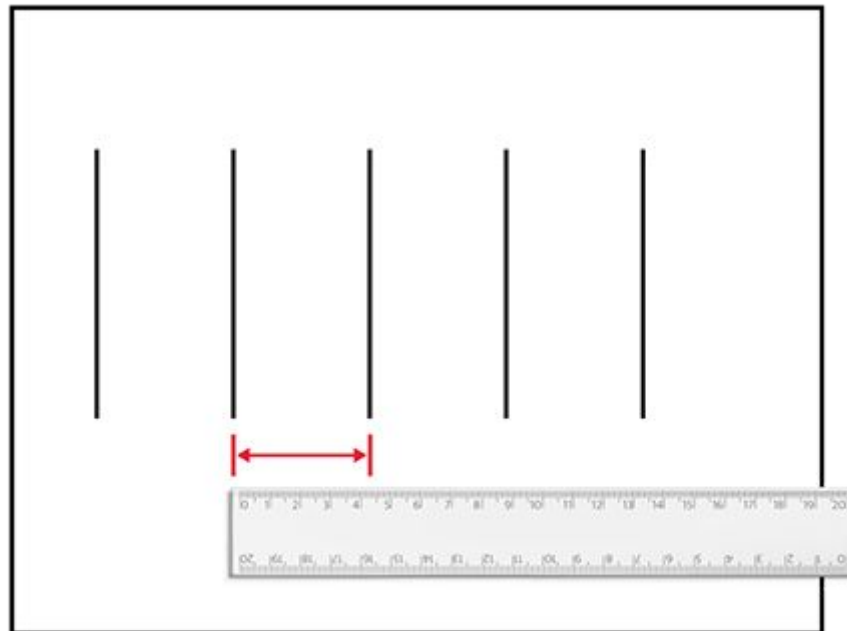
Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
 - Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.
2. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

3. Measure the distance between the repeating defects using a ruler. If the distances are small, marking the first defect and the second defect with a pencil or pen will make them easier to measure.



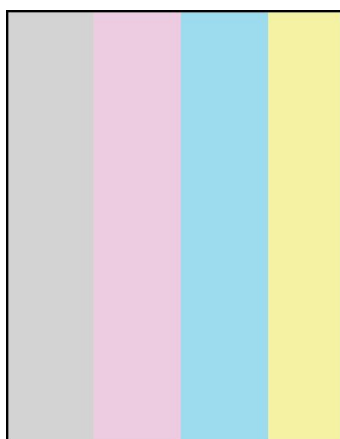
4. Match the distance between the repeating defects to its corresponding replaceable part. Refer to the following table to determine which part to replace.

Distance	Action
25.7 mm (1.01 in.)	◦ If the defect occurs in black, then replace the black print cartridge. ◦ If the defect occurs in cyan, magenta, or yellow, then replace the specific print cartridge where the issue occurs.
35.3 mm (1.39 in.)	
75.6 mm (2.98 in.)	
26.7 mm (1.05 in.)	

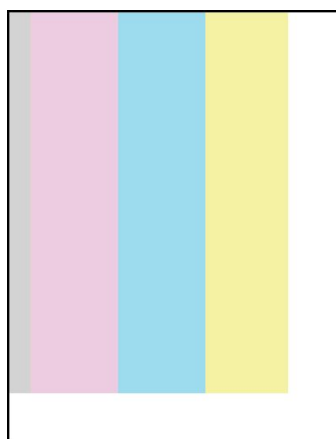
Distance	Action
56.5 mm (2.22 in.)	Replace the fuser.  Note: Only an authorized service technician can replace this part. Contact customer support .
25.1 mm (0.99 in.) 59.7 mm (2.35 in.) 28.3 mm (1.11 in.) 65.0 mm (2.56 in.) 44.0 mm (1.73 in.)	Replace the transfer module.  Note: Only an authorized service technician can replace this part. Contact customer support .

IMAGE IS NOT CORRECTLY PLACED ON PAGE

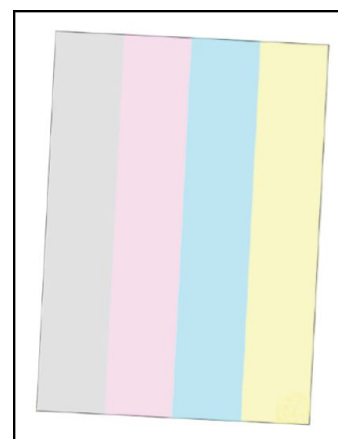
Expected print output



Defective print output



Defective print output



Issue description

Printed pages are not straight or properly aligned. Margins may be wrong, and the content can look tilted, shifted to one side, or even cut off.

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see **Loading trays**.
2. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact **customer support**.
3. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see **Loading trays**.
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:

- The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
- The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).

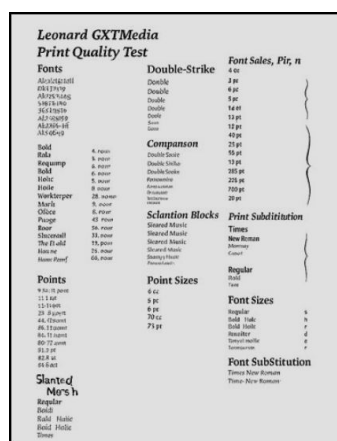
5. Make sure that the margin, paper size, and other settings in the original document match the print driver and printer settings.

GRAY OR LIGHT BACKGROUND

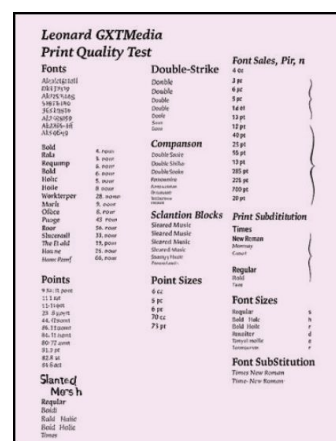
Expected print output



Defective print output



Defective print output



Issue description

The printed page has a light to medium gray tint or shaded background that covers the entire sheet or a large portion of it.

Troubleshooting steps

1. If the printer has been used continuously, allow it to cool down for several minutes, then check if the issue is resolved.
2. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Troubleshooting › Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 266](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
 - Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).

- The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).
4. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

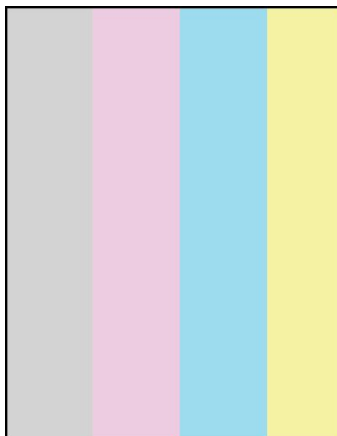
5. Check the toner darkness setting. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Toner Darkness**.

Notes

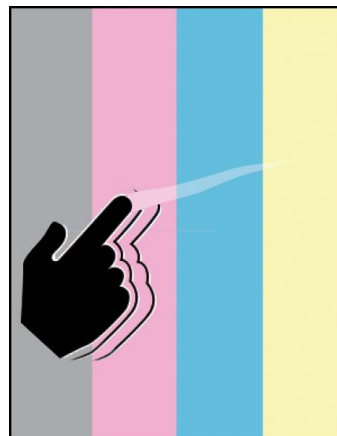
- If the print is too dark, then set the value to **Light** and print again.
 - If the print is too light, then set the value to **Dark** and print again.
 - Change the value back to **Normal** if there are no significant changes in the printed page.
6. Initiate the color adjust process. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Advanced Imaging › Color Adjust**.
-  **Note:** The color adjust process takes about one minute to complete.
7. Check the print cartridge tray for improper installation.
 - If the print quality issue is occurring in black, then remove and reinstall the black print cartridge.
 - If the print quality issue is occurring in cyan, magenta, or yellow, then remove and reinstall the respective print cartridges.

TONER EASILY RUBS OFF

Expected print output



Defective print output



Issue description

Printed text or images can be wiped or rubbed off the page easily, leaving smudges or blank spots.

If the toner is rubbing off too easily, then the printer setting likely does not match the paper you are using.

Troubleshooting steps

1. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).
2. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 266](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

 **Note:** Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.

3. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

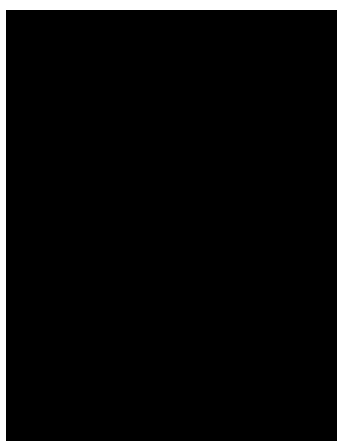
4. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

SOLID BLACK OR COLOR PAGES

Expected print output



Defective print output



Defective print output



Issue description

The printed page comes out fully black or colored with no visible text or images.

Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 266](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
- Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.

2. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

3. Check the print cartridge tray for improper installation.
 - If the print quality issue is occurring in black, then remove and reinstall the black print cartridge.
 - If the print quality issue is occurring in cyan, magenta, or yellow, then remove and reinstall the respective print cartridges.

COMPRESSED IMAGES ON PRINTS

Expected print output



Defective print output



Issue description

Some images on the printed page look squished or compressed, making them appear smaller or distorted compared to their original shape.

Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 266](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
 - Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.
2. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).
 3. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

4. Check the print cartridge tray for improper installation.
 - If the print quality issue is occurring in black, then remove and reinstall the black print cartridge.
 - If the print quality issue is occurring in cyan, magenta, or yellow, then remove and reinstall the respective print cartridges.

FUZZY OR BLURRY PRINT

Expected print output



Defective print output



Issue description

Printed text or images look unclear, smudged, or out of focus instead of sharp and crisp. This makes the output hard to read or gives graphics a fuzzy appearance.

Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Troubleshooting › Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 266](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
 - Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.
2. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).
 3. Make sure that the paper loaded is from a fresh package.
 4. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

5. Check the toner darkness setting. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Toner Darkness**.

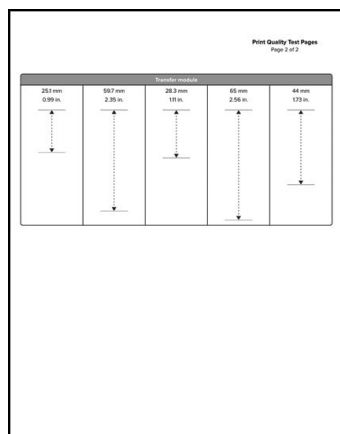
Notes

- If the print is too dark, then set the value to **Light** and print again.
 - If the print is too light, then set the value to **Dark** and print again.
 - Change the value back to **Normal** if there are no significant changes in the printed page.
6. Initiate the color adjust process. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Advanced Imaging › Color Adjust**.

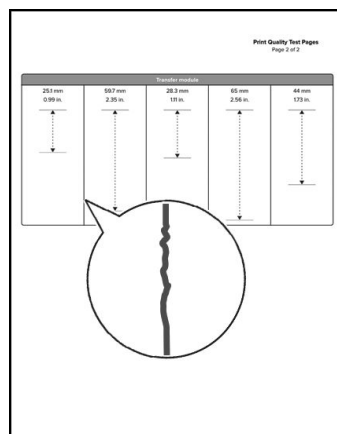
 **Note:** The color adjust process takes about one minute to complete.

WIGGLY, WAVY, OR DISTORTED LINES AND TEXT

Expected print output



Defective print output



Issue description

The printed page shows lines or text that appear wavy, uneven, or distorted instead of straight and sharp.

Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 266](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
- Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.

Printer error codes

INTERVENTION REQUIRED ERROR CODES

Error codes	Error message	Solution
3.01	The standard bin is full.	Remove the paper from the bin, and then select Continue job .
8.01, 8.02	Close door [x].	Keep the indicated door closed unless performing maintenance.
8.12, 8.13	Close tray [x] and door [x]	Keep the indicated door and tray closed unless performing maintenance.

Error codes	Error message	Solution
9.00	Printer had to restart. Last job may be incomplete.	Reprint any jobs which did not finish printing before the reboot.
11.11, 11.21, 11.31	Load [source] with [type] [size].	For more information, see the Loading error in trays on page 338 .
11.12, 11.22, 11.32	Load [source] with [type] [size] [orientation].	
11.81	Load [source] with [type] [size].	For more information, see the Loading error in the manual feeder on page 338 .
11.82	Load [source] with [type] [size] [orientation].	
12.11, 12.21, 12.31	Change [source] to [type] [size].	For more information, see the Loading error in trays on page 338 .
12.12, 12.22, 12.32	Change [source] to [type] [size] [orientation].	
12.81	Change [source] to [type] [size].	For more information, see the Loading error in the manual feeder on page 338 .
12.82	Change [source] to [type] [size] [orientation].	
24.04	Paper too small.	For more information, see Paper size mismatch (two-sided printing) on page 339 .
34.00	Paper too short.	For more information, see Insufficient paper size for print on page 339 .
37.01	Insufficient memory to collate job.	For more information, see Insufficient memory on page 349 .
37.03	Insufficient memory, some held jobs were deleted.	For more information, see Insufficient memory on page 349 .
38.00	Scanned document is too long.	For more information, see Scan job hang-up on page 347

Error codes	Error message	Solution
38.01	Memory full.	For more information, see Insufficient memory on page 349 .
39.01, 39.02	Complex page, some data may not have printed.	For more information, see Insufficient memory on page 349 .
50.00	PPDS font error.	Install the PPDS font indicated in the print job, and then select Dismiss to let the printer search for the substitute font.
52.00	Not enough free space in flash memory for resources.	Try one or more of the following: • Select Dismiss to clear the message and continue printing. • Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored in the flash memory.  Note: Downloaded fonts and macros that are not previously stored in the flash memory are deleted. • Install a storage drive.
71.01	No fax station name.	Set up fax name and fax number. 1. From the control panel, navigate to Settings › Fax › Fax Setup › General Fax Settings. 2. Enter the fax name and fax number. For more information, see Setting up the fax function using analog fax on page 57.
71.02	No fax station number.	
71.03	Fax disabled.	For more information, see Fax connection error .
71.04	Line connected in wrong jack.	

Error codes	Error message	Solution
71.06	HTTPS Fax Server error.	1. Perform a Power-On-Reset on the printer. Do the following: a. Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord. b. Wait 30 seconds to discharge electrical energy and clear buffered data. c. Plug the power cord back in, and then turn on the printer. d. Allow the printer to fully initialize before sending a print job. 2. Make sure that your printer is connected to a stable network and has access to the internet. 3. Verify that your network proxy and firewall rules allow outgoing traffic to the etherFAX API. 4. Make sure that etherFAX is properly set up. For more information, see Setting up the fax function using etherFAX on page 58.
71.07	HTTPS Fax Server error.	
71.13	Memory full. Cannot send faxes.	1. Clear all print jobs from the printer queue to reset the device and free memory. For more information, see Canceling a print job on page 111. 2. Resend the fax job and reduce fax job complexity. Do the following: a. Fax fewer pages at a time. b. Change the fax resolution to Standard. For more information, see . 3. If you frequently send large or complex print or scan jobs, installing an intelligent storage drive (ISD) can improve job handling and reduce memory-related errors. For more information, see Installing the intelligent storage drive.  Note: The ISD is only supported in certain printer models.

Error codes	Error message	Solution
71.40	Printer's time is incorrect.	Set printer date and time. 1. From the control panel, navigate to Settings › Device › Preferences › Country/Region. 2. Select your country or region. 3. From the control panel, navigate to Settings › Device › Preferences › Date and Time › Configure › Manually Set Date and Time. 4. Set the date and time.
72.01	Email SMTP server not set up.	For more information, see SMTP server error on page 328 .
72.02	Web Link not set up.	For more information, see SMTP server error on page 328 .
75.03	Error communicating with Secure Element.	For more information, see Trusted platform module error on page 329 .

SUPPLY ERROR CODES

Error codes	Error message	Solution
29.40, 29.41, 29.42, 29.43, 29.49	Remove cartridge packaging.	For more information, see Print cartridge smart chip error on page 329 .
31.40A, 31.40A-H, 31.40B-H, 31.41A, 31.41A-H, 31.41B-H, 31.42A, 31.42A-H, 31.42B-H, 31.43A, 31.43A-H, 31.43B-H	Reinstall missing or unresponsive [color] print cartridge.	For more information, see Print cartridge smart chip error on page 329 .
32.40B, 32.40C, 32.40D, 32.40F, 32.41B, 32.41C, 32.41D, 32.41F, 32.42B, 32.42C, 32.42D, 32.42F, 32.43B, 32.43C, 32.43D, 32.43F	Replace unsupported [color] print cartridge.	For more information, see Unsupported print cartridge error on page 330 .
32.40A, 32.40E, 32.41A, 32.41E, 32.42A, 32.42E, 32.43A, 32.43E	Unauthorized [color] cartridge.	For more information, see Unsupported print cartridge error on page 330 .

Error codes	Error message	Solution
32.40J, 32.41J, 32.42J, 32.43J	Replace unsupported [color] print cartridge.	For more information, see Print cartridge supplies plan mismatch .
33.40, 33.41, 33.42, 33.43	Refilled regular [color] print cartridge.	For more information, see Unsupported print cartridge error on page 330 .
42.yy	Replace [color] print cartridge, printer region mismatch.	For more information, see Print cartridge and printer region mismatch on page 332 .
82.00, 82.02, 82.09	Waste toner bottle nearly full.	For more information, see Nearly full or full waste toner bottle on page 333 .
82.12, 82.13, 82.19, 82.20, 82.22, 82.23, 82.29, 82.30, 82.32, 82.33, 82.39, 82.40, 82.42, 82.49	Replace the waste toner bottle.	
88.00, 88.01, 88.02, 88.09	[Color] print cartridge is nearly low.	For more information, see Low or end-of-life print cartridge on page 336 .
88.10c, 88.13c, 88.19c, 88.10k, 88.13k, 88.19k, 88.10m, 88.13m, 88.19m, 88.10y, 88.13y, 88.19y	[Color] print cartridge is low.	
88.20c, 88.23c, 88.29c, 88.20k, 88.23k, 88.29k, 88.20m, 88.23m, 88.29m, 88.20y, 88.23y, 88.29y	[Color] print cartridge is very low, [num] estimated pages remaining.	
88.30c, 88.33c, 88.39c, 88.30k, 88.33k, 88.39k, 88.30m, 88.33m, 88.39m, 88.30y, 88.33y, 88.39y	Replace [color] print cartridge.	For more information, see Low or end-of-life print cartridge on page 336 .
88.40, 88.41, 88.42, 88.48	Replace [color] print cartridge.	

PAPER JAM ERROR CODES

Error codes	Error message	Solution
200.05	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 200.05 Paper jam in tray 1 from the manual feeder on page 314 .

Error codes	Error message	Solution
200.06	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 200.06 Paper jam in the manual feeder on page 313 .
200.15, 200.25, 200.35	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 200.x5 Paper jam in tray 1 or paper jam in doors B and E from tray [x] on page 315 .
200.16	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 200.16 Paper jam in tray 1 .
200.23, 200.33	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 200.x3 Paper jam in the optional tray on page 315 .
200.91	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 200.91 Paper jam in tray 1 on page 315 .
202.03	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 202.03 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder on page 316 .
202.04	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 202.04 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder on page 317 .
202.05	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 202.05 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder on page 317 .
202.13, 202.23, 202.33	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 202.x3 Paper jam in door B from tray [x] on page 317 .
202.14, 202.24, 202.25, 202.34	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 202.x4 Paper jam in door B from tray [x] on page 318 .
202.15, 202.25, 202.35	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 202.x5 Paper jam in door B from tray [x] on page 318 .
232.03, 232.13, 232.23, 232.33	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 232.x3 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder or tray [x] on page 319 .
232.05, 232.15, 232.25, 232.35	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 232.x5 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder or tray [x] on page 320 .
241.91	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 241.91 Paper jam in the manual feeder on page 314 .
242.25, 242.35	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 242.x5 Paper jam in doors B and E from tray [x] on page 321 .
242.33	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 242.33 Paper jam in door E from tray 3 on page 321 .
242.92	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 242.91 Paper jam in doors B and E from tray 2 on page 322 .

Error codes	Error message	Solution
243.35	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 243.35 Paper jam in door B from tray 3 on page 322 .
243.91	Paper jam in [location].	For more information, see 243.91 Paper jam in door E from tray 3 on page 323 .
242.74, 242.75, 242.84, 242.85	Paper loading error in [location].	For more information, see Loading trays .
243.74, 243.75, 243.84, 243.85	Paper loading error in [location].	
280.06	Reload originals in ADF and restart job.	Try one or more of the following: • Scan from the scanner glass. • Scan from the automatic document feeder. • Finish the job without further scanning, and then restart the job. • Cancel the job, and then restart the job. • Make sure that the pages are not stapled, folded, or curled. • Remove all originals, align the pages evenly, and then place them correctly in the ADF tray.
28X.13K, 28X.93K, 28X.15K, 28X.95K, 680.20K, 680.40K, 281.16K, 281.96K	Replace all originals if restarting job.	Try either of the following: • Restart the job. • Cancel the job.
28X.13Q, 28X.93Q, 28X.15Q, 28X.95Q, 680.20Q, 281.16Q, 281.96Q	Replace jammed originals if continuing job.	Try one or more of the following: • Scan from the scanner glass. • Scan from the automatic document feeder. • Finish the job without further scanning. • Cancel the job.
280.06	Scanner jam.	For more information, see 280.06 Reload originals in ADF on page 324 .
280.11	Scanner jam.	For more information, see 280.11 ADF scanner jam on page 325 .
280.13	Scanner jam.	For more information, see 280.13 ADF scanner jam on page 324 .

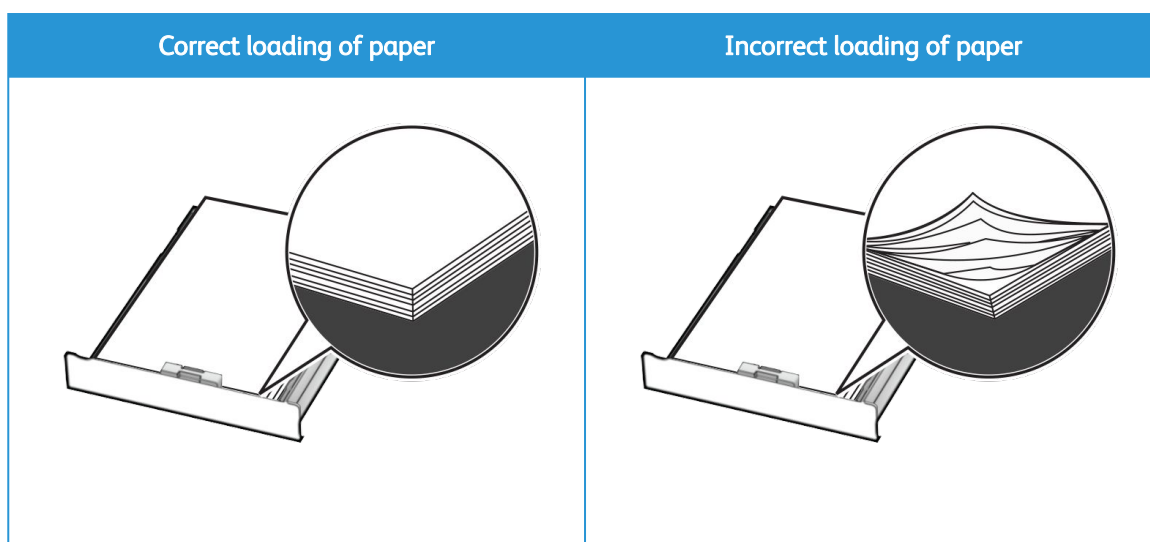
Error codes	Error message	Solution
280.15	Scanner jam.	For more information, see 280.15 ADF scanner jam on page 324 .
295.01	Scanner jam.	For more information, see Paper jam in the automatic document feeder on page 312 .
680.20, 680.40	Scanner jam.	For more information, see Paper jam in the automatic document feeder on page 312 .

Paper jams

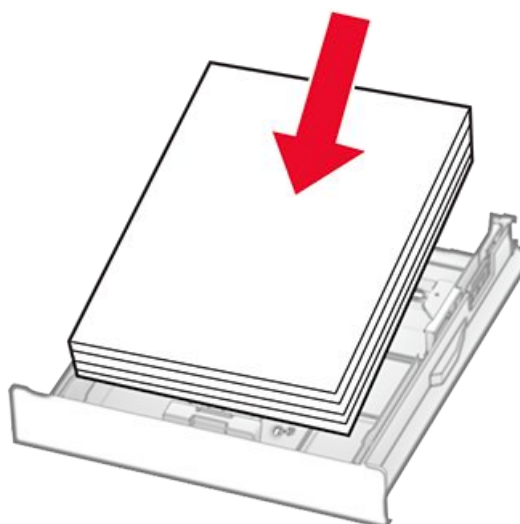
AVOIDING JAMS

Load paper properly

- Make sure that the paper lies flat in the tray.



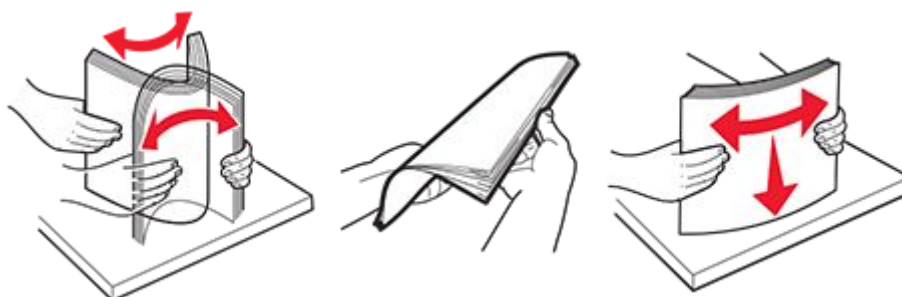
- Do not load or remove a tray while the printer is printing.
- Do not load too much paper. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line.
- Do not slide paper into the tray. Load paper as shown in the illustration.



- Make sure that the paper guides are positioned correctly and are not pressing tightly against the paper or envelopes.
- Push the tray firmly into the printer after loading paper.

Use recommended paper

- Use only recommended paper or specialty paper.
- Do not load paper that is wrinkled, creased, damp, bent, or curled.
- Flex, fan, and align the paper edges before loading.

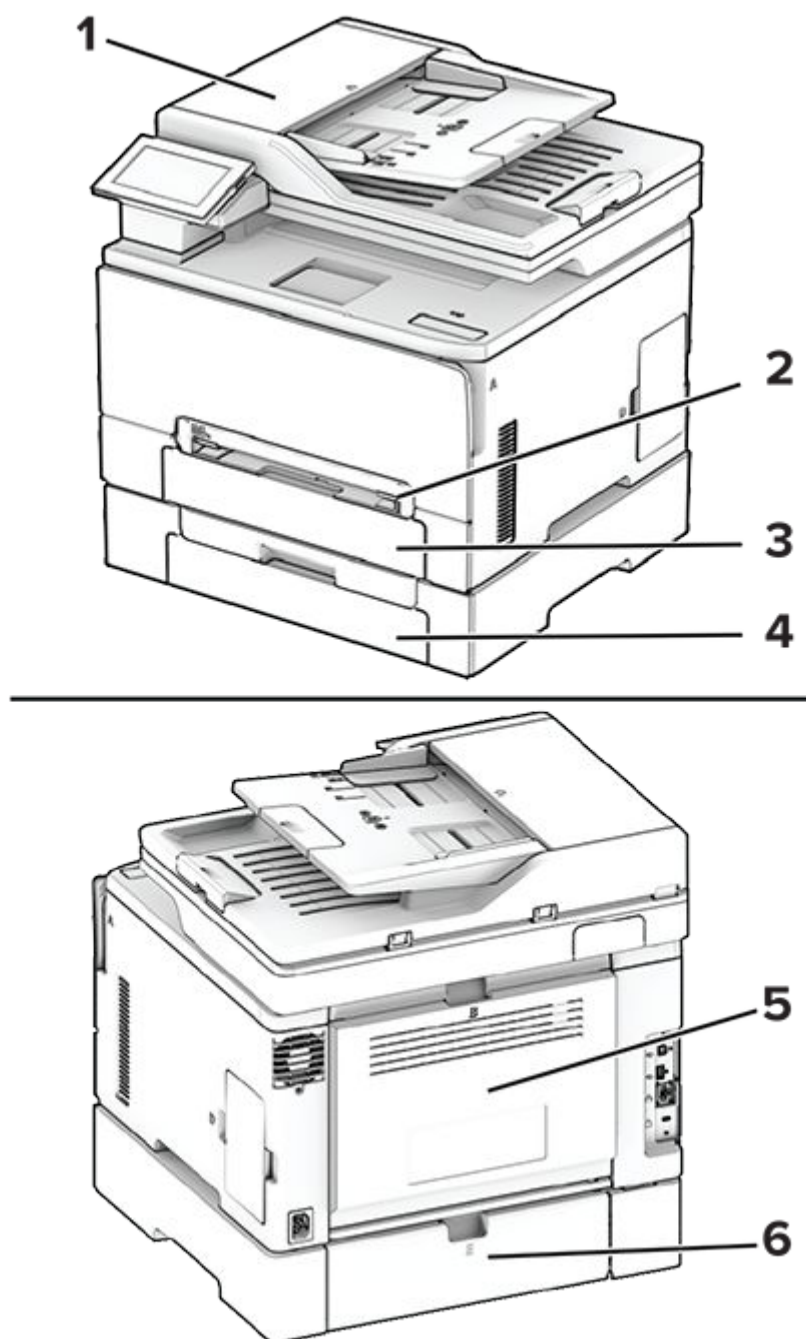


- Do not use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- Do not mix paper sizes, weights, or types in the same tray.
- Make sure that the paper size and type are set correctly on the computer or printer control panel.
- Store paper according to manufacturer recommendations.

IDENTIFYING JAM LOCATIONS

Notes

- When **Jam Assist** is set to **On**, the printer flushes blank pages or pages with partial prints after a jammed page has been cleared. Check your printed output for blank pages.
- When **Jam Recovery** is set to **On** or **Auto**, the printer reprints jammed pages.

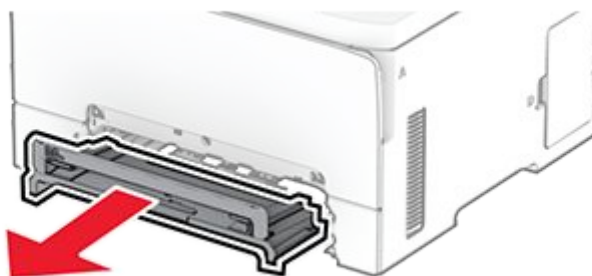
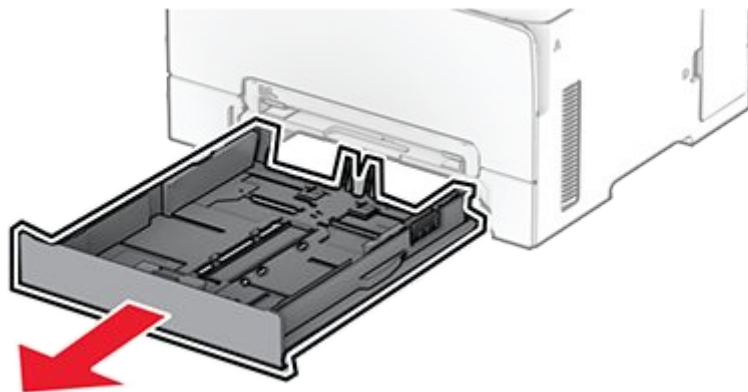


Jam locations	
1	Automatic document feeder
2	Manual feeder
3	Standard tray
4	Optional tray
5	Door B
6	Door E

CLEARING JAMS

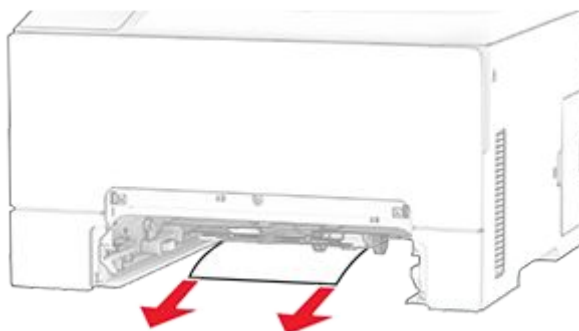
Paper jam in the standard tray

1. Remove the standard tray and the manual feeder.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



3. Insert the manual feeder and the tray.
4. Open door B.

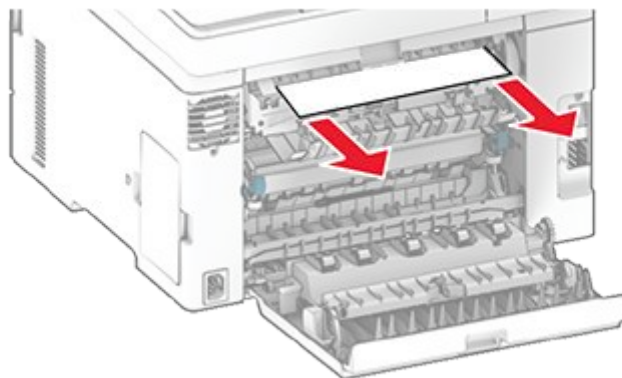
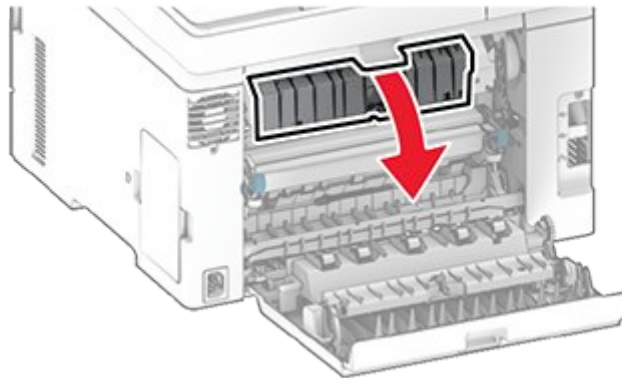


CAUTION—HOT SURFACE

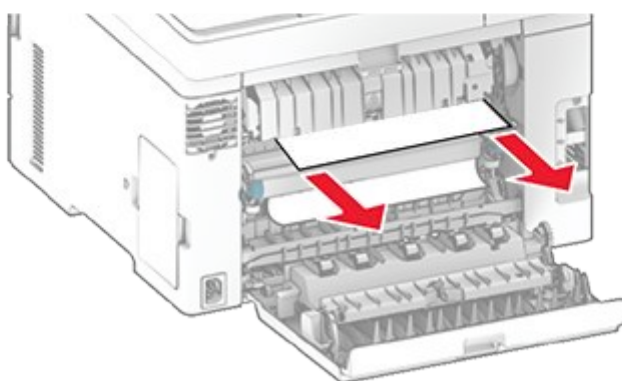
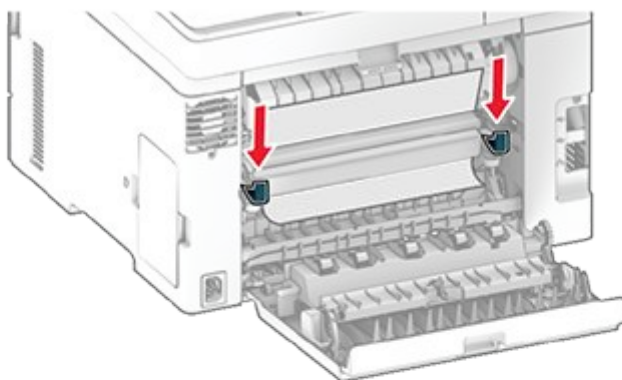
The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.



5. Pull down the fuser cover, and then remove the jammed paper from the fuser.



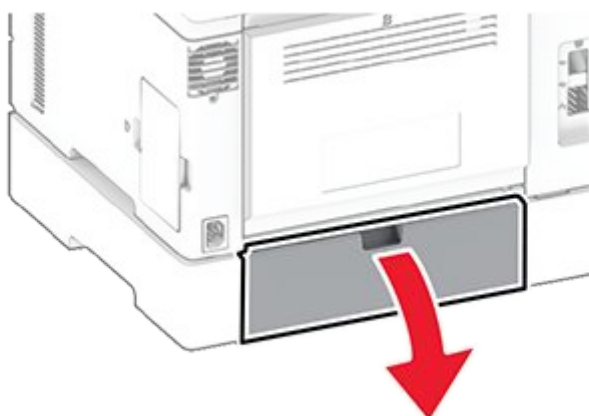
6. Push down the blue latches to release the paper, and then remove the jammed paper.



7. Close door B.

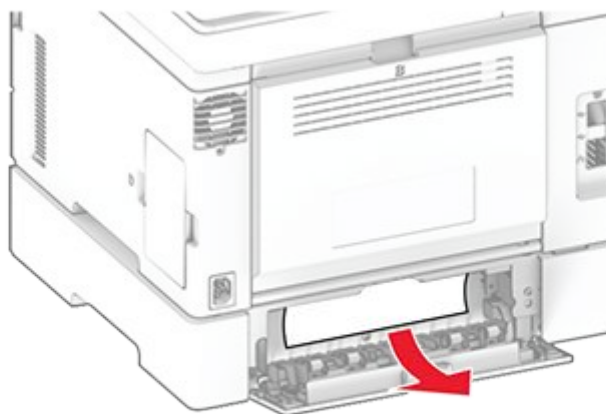
Paper jam in the optional tray

1. Open door E.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.

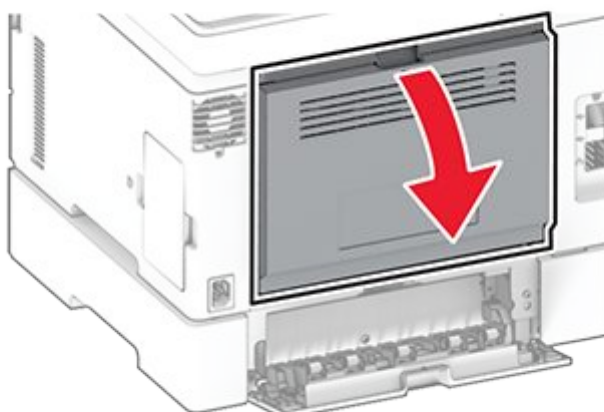


3. Open door B.



CAUTION—HOT SURFACE

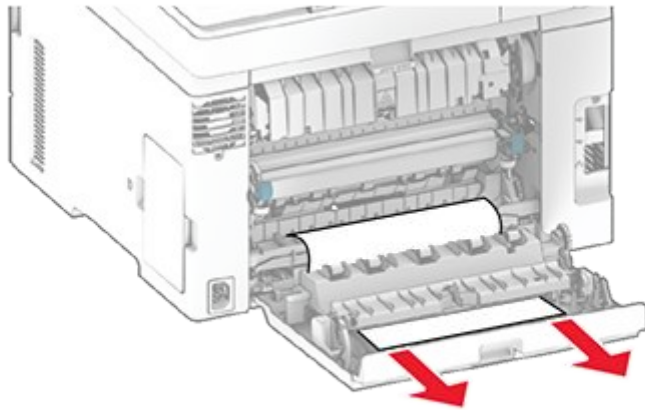
The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.



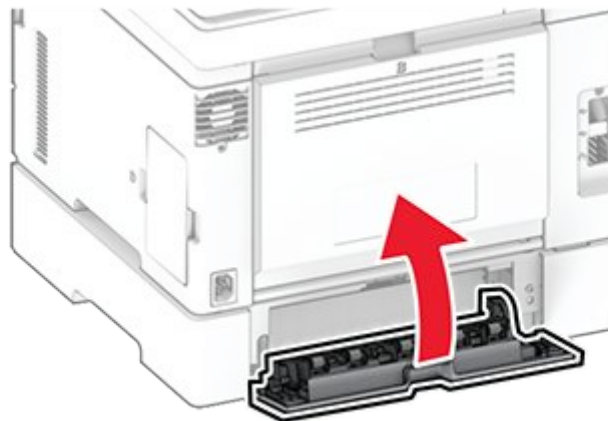
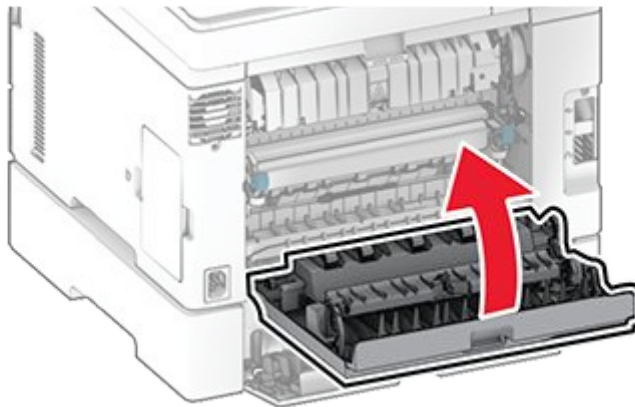
4. Remove the jammed paper.



Note: Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



5. Close door B, and then close door E.

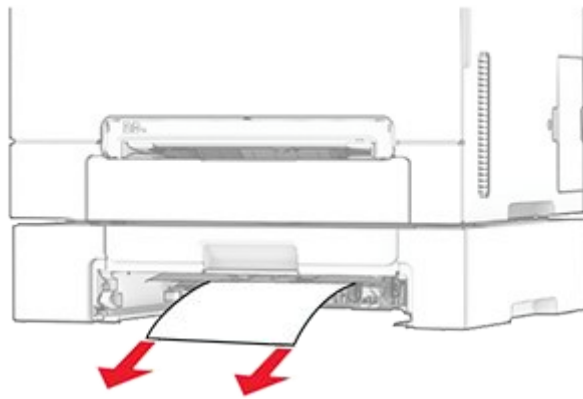


6. Remove the optional tray.



7. Remove the jammed paper.

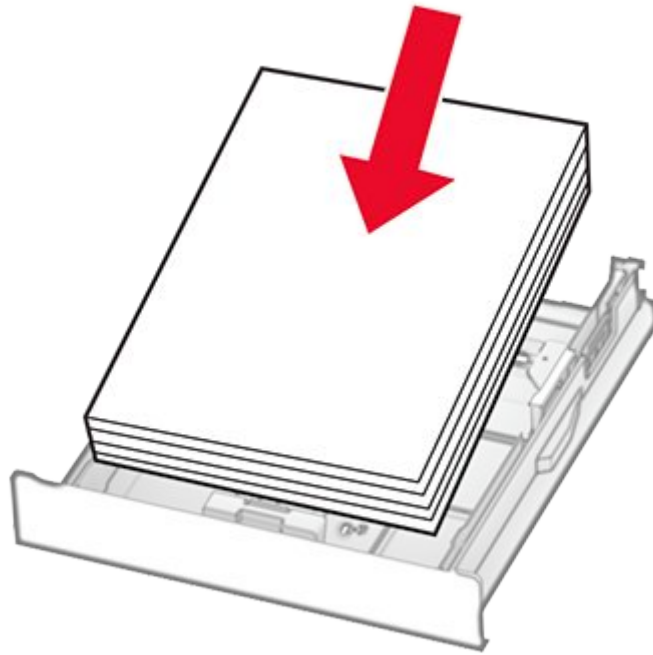
 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



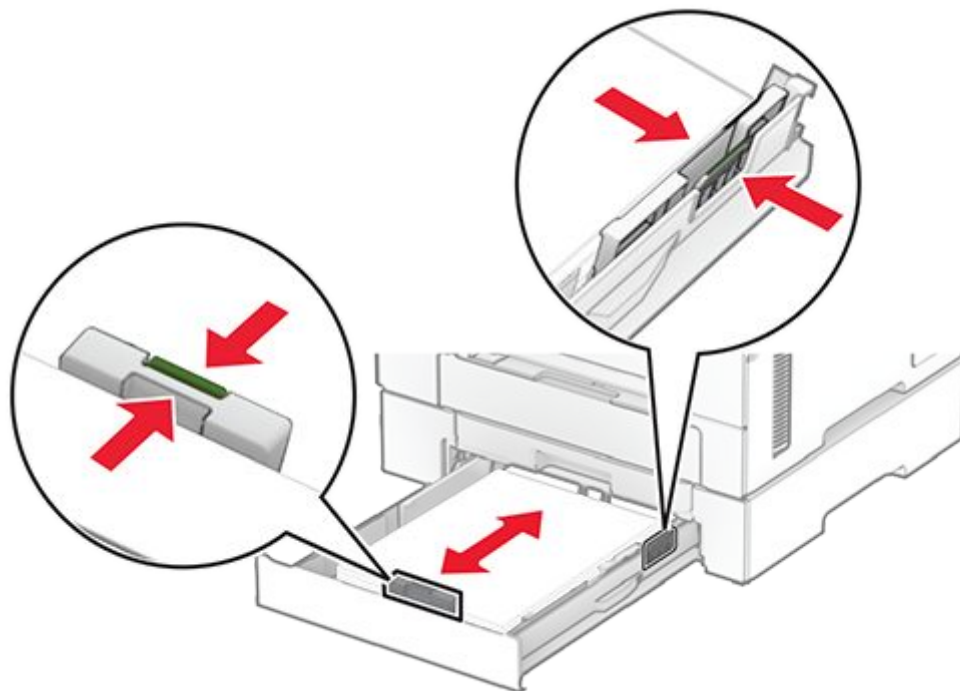
8. Remove the paper stack in the tray.
9. Flex, fan, and align the paper stack before loading.



10. Load the paper stack and make sure that the paper sits flat in the tray.



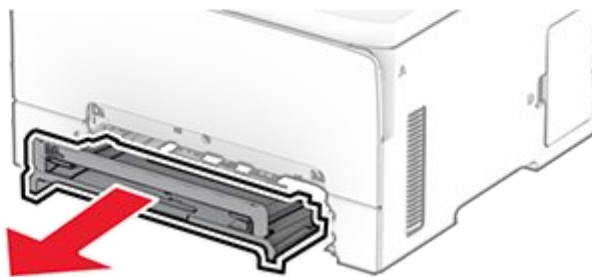
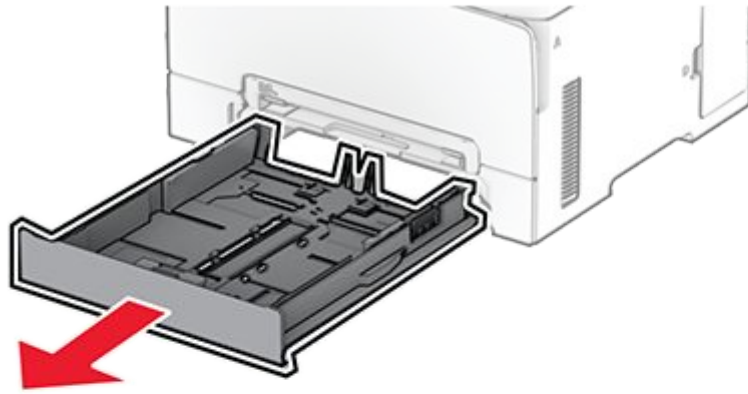
11. Adjust the paper guides.



12. Insert the tray.

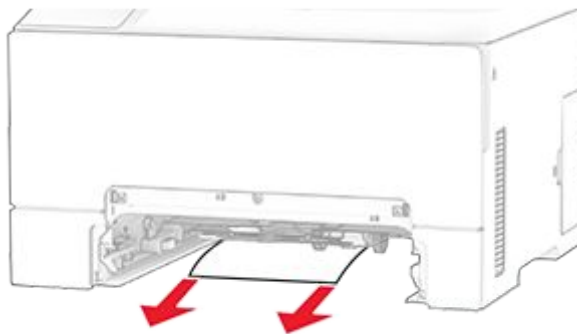
Paper jam in the manual feeder

1. Remove the standard tray, and then the manual feeder.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.

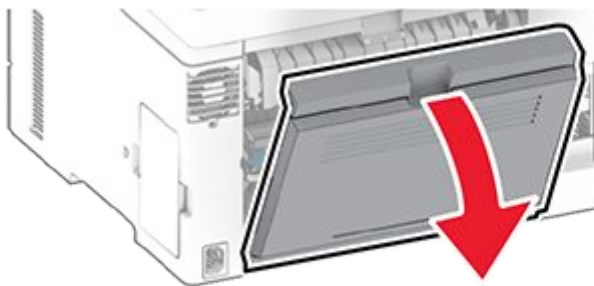


3. Insert the manual feeder, and then the tray.
4. Open door B.



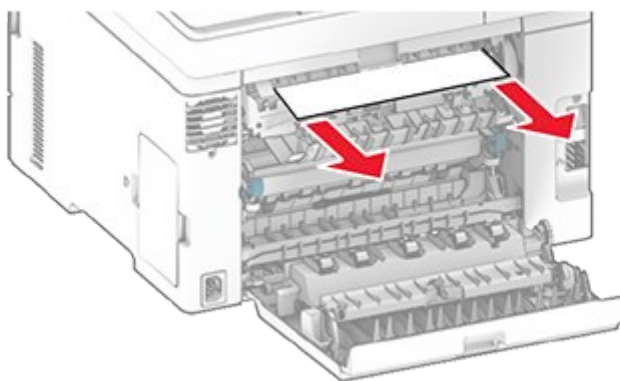
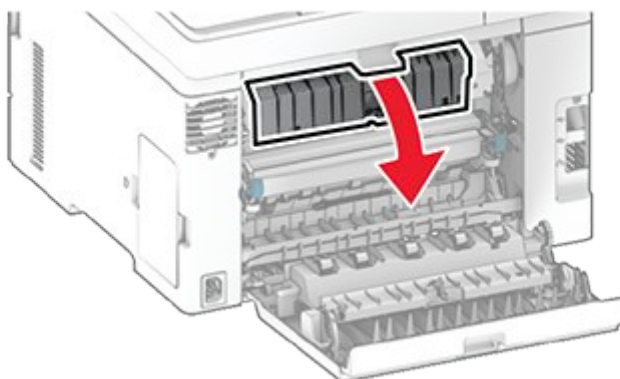
CAUTION—HOT SURFACE

The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.



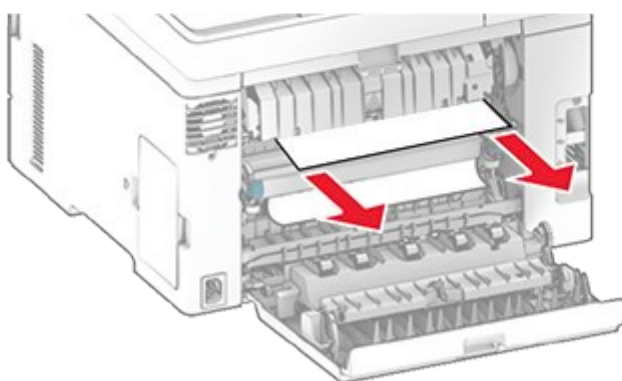
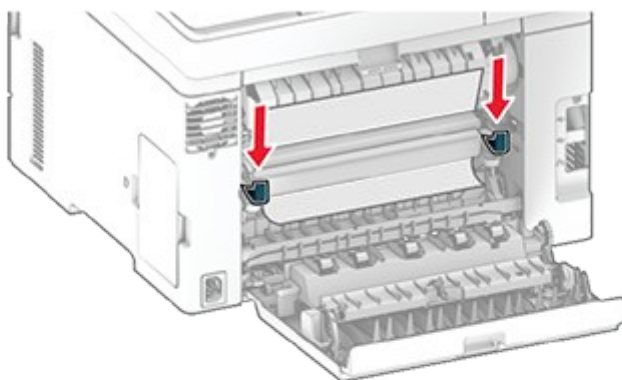
5. Pull down on the fuser cover, and then remove the jammed paper from the fuser.

 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



6. Push down the blue latches to release the paper, and then remove the jammed paper.

 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



7. Close door B.
8. Load only one sheet of paper at a time when using the manual feeder.

 Notes

- Do not load the manual feeder until all previous print jobs are complete and the printer has returned to Ready.
- If you load a sheet into the manual feeder, the printer will print that sheet next.



Paper jam in door B

1. Open door B.

**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE**

The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.



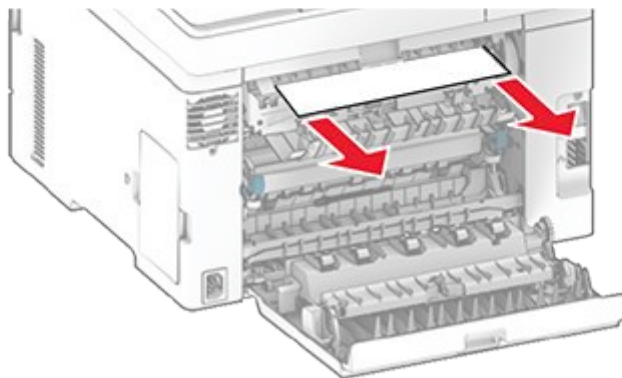
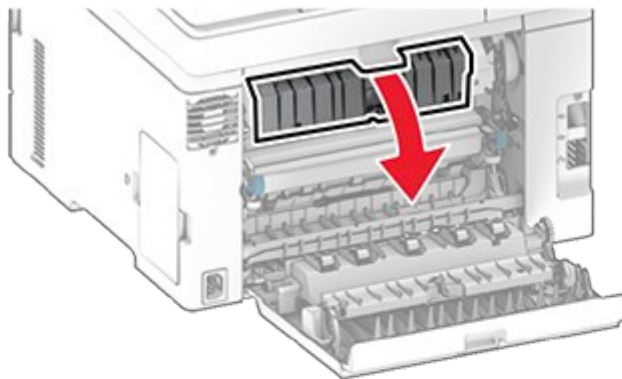
2. Remove the jammed paper from any of the following locations:



Note: Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.

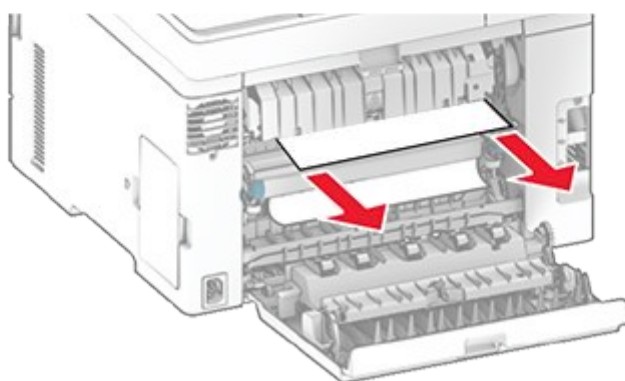
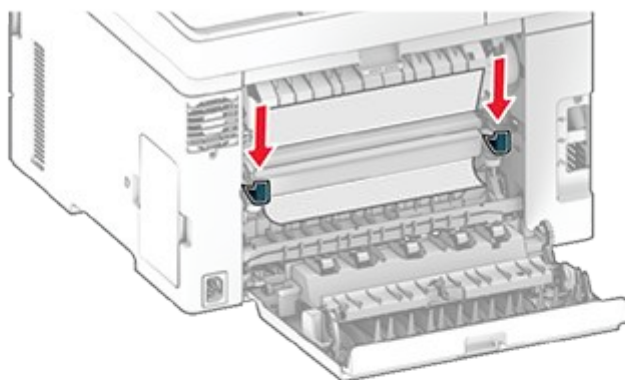
- Fuser area

Pull down the fuser cover, and then remove any jammed paper from the fuser.

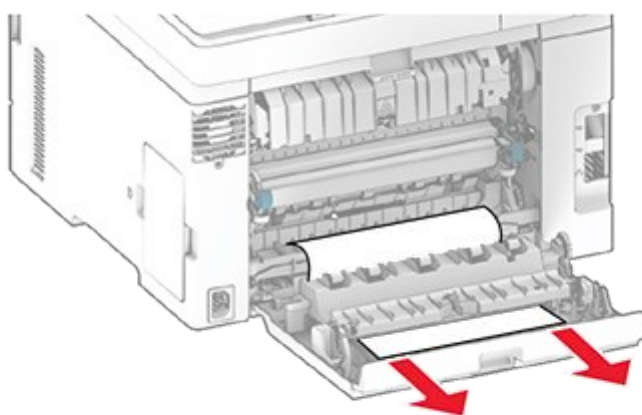


- Below the fuser area

Push down the blue latches to release the paper, and then remove any jammed paper.



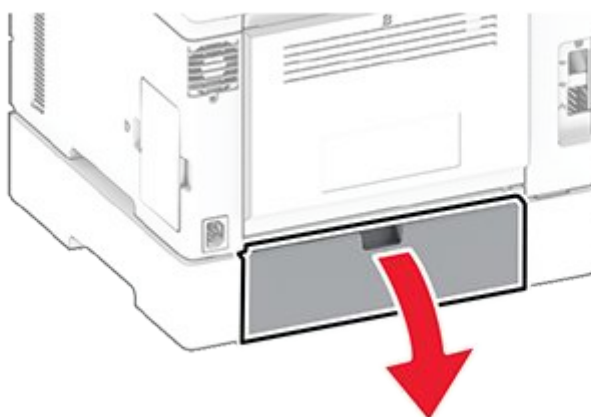
- Duplex unit



3. Close door B.

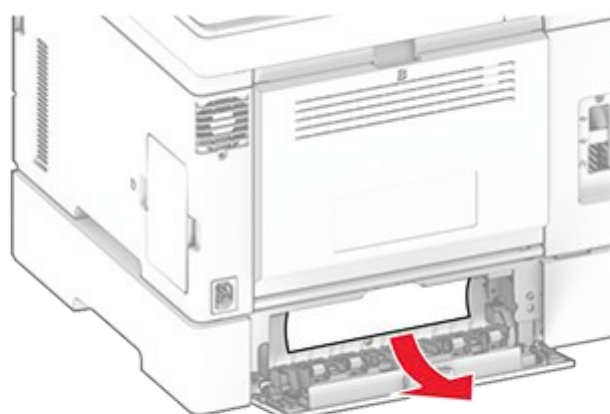
Paper jam in door E

1. Open door E.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

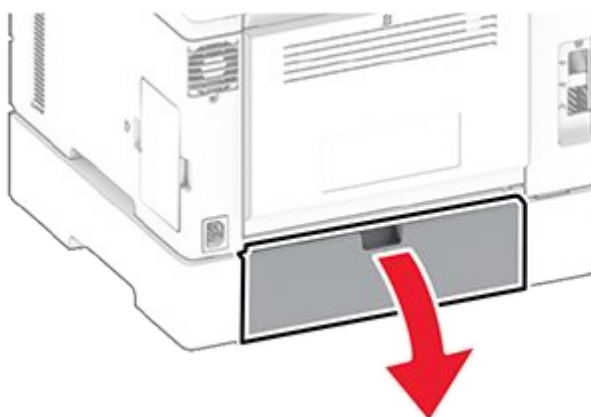
 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



3. Close door E.

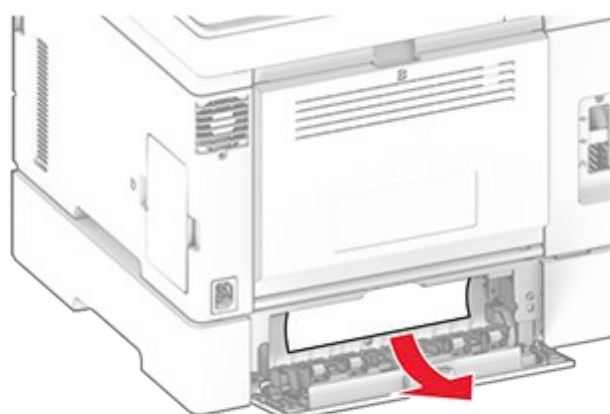
Paper jam in door E and door B

1. Open door E.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.

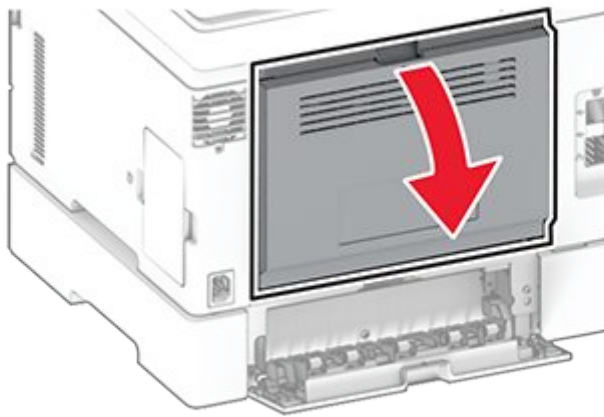


3. Open door B.



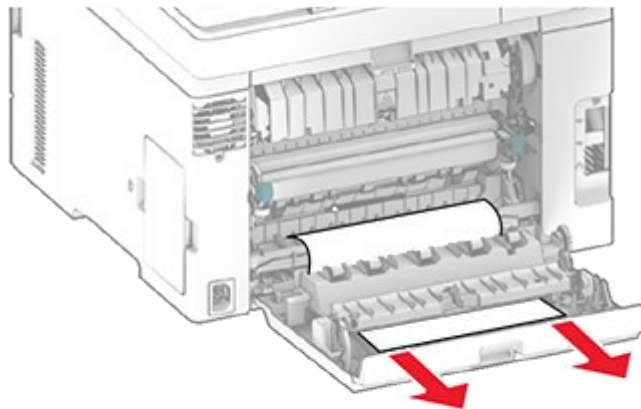
CAUTION—HOT SURFACE

The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.

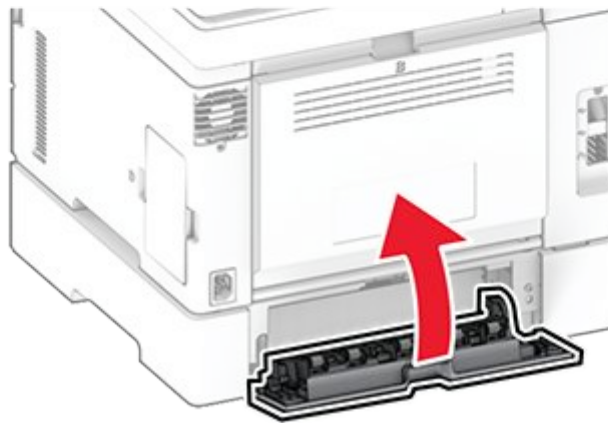
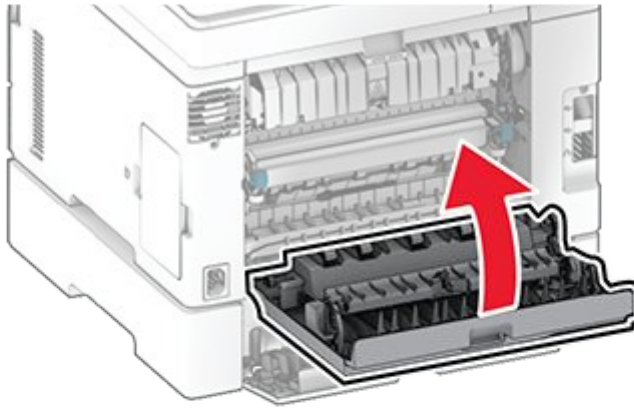


4. Remove the jammed paper.

 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.

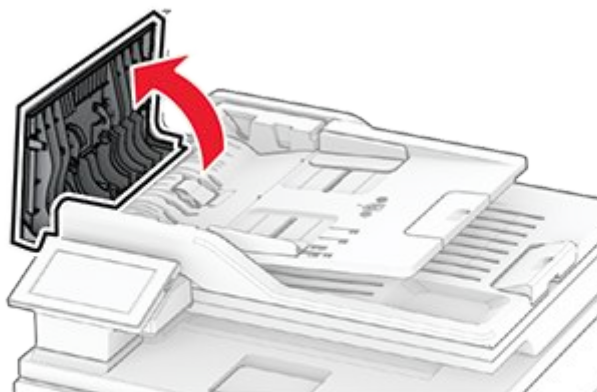


5. Close door B, and then close door E.



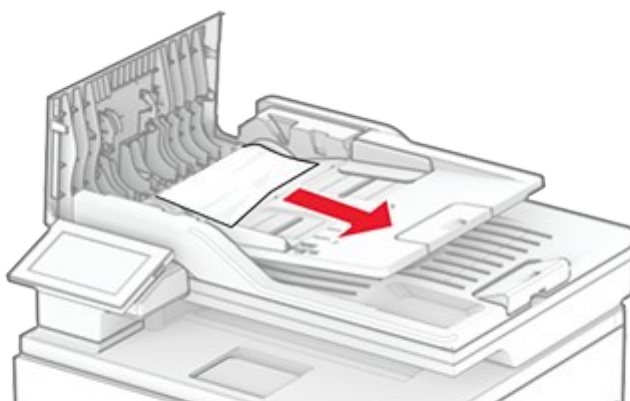
Paper jam in the automatic document feeder

1. Remove all original documents from the ADF tray.
2. Open the ADF cover.



3. Remove the jammed paper.

 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



4. Close the ADF cover.

TROUBLESHOOTING PAPER JAMS

Paper jam in the manual feeder

200.06 Paper jam in the manual feeder

Issue description

Applicable error code: 200.06

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and rear door are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in door B and door E](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the manual feeder. Feed the paper until its leading edge gets pulled in. For more information, see [Loading the manual feeder](#).
3. Make sure that the manual feeder is not damaged. Inspect for physical damage, misalignment, or broken guides. Make sure that all locking mechanisms are intact. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).

241.91 Paper jam in the manual feeder

Issue description

Applicable error code: 241.91

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and rear door are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in door B and door E](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the manual feeder. Feed the paper until its leading edge gets pulled in. For more information, see [Loading the manual feeder](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).
5. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

Paper jam in trays

200.05 Paper jam in tray 1 from the manual feeder

Issue description

Applicable error code: 200.05

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and rear door are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in door B and door E](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the manual feeder. Feed the paper until its leading edge gets pulled in. For more information, see [Loading the manual feeder](#).
3. Make sure that the manual feeder is not damaged. Inspect for physical damage, misalignment, or broken guides. Make sure that all locking mechanisms are intact. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).

- The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).

200.x5 Paper jam in tray 1 or paper jam in doors B and E from tray [x]

Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 200.15
- 200.25
- 200.35

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing the paper jam in the standard tray](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).

200.91 Paper jam in tray 1

Issue description

Applicable error code: 200.91

Troubleshooting step

Make sure that the paper path and rear door are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in door B and door E](#).

200.x3 Paper jam in the optional tray

Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 200.23
- 200.33

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing the paper jam in the standard tray](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the tray pick roller for wear and contamination. Do the following:
 - a. Check for cracks, smooth surfaces, or deformation.
 - b. Check for dust or paper debris. Gently wipe the roller and separator using a damp, soft, lint-free cloth.
5. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).

Paper jam in doors

202.03 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder

Issue description

Applicable error code: 202.03

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and rear door are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in door B and door E](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the manual feeder. Feed the paper until its leading edge gets pulled in. For more information, see [Loading the manual feeder](#).
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).

202.04 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder

Issue description

Applicable error code: 202.04

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and fuser are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in door B](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the manual feeder. Feed the paper until its leading edge gets pulled in. For more information, see [Loading the manual feeder](#).
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).

202.05 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder

Issue description

Applicable error code: 202.05

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and fuser are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in door B](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the manual feeder. Feed the paper until its leading edge gets pulled in. For more information, see [Loading the manual feeder](#).
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).

202.x3 Paper jam in door B from tray [x]

Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 202.13

- 202.23
- 202.33

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing the paper jam in the standard tray](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).

202.x4 Paper jam in door B from tray [x]

Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 202.14
- 202.24
- 202.34

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing the paper jam in the standard tray](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).

202.x5 Paper jam in door B from tray [x]

Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 202.15
- 202.25
- 202.35

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing the paper jam in the standard tray](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).
4. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

202.91 Paper jam in door B

Issue description

Applicable error code: 202.91

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and fuser are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in door B](#).

232.x3 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder or tray [x]

Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 232.03
- 232.13
- 232.23
- 232.33

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing the paper jam in the standard tray](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the tray pick roller for wear and contamination. Do the following:
 - a. Check for cracks, smooth surfaces, or deformation.
 - b. Check for dust or paper debris. Gently wipe the roller and separator using a damp, soft, lint-free cloth.
5. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).

232.x5 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder or tray [x]

Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 232.05
- 232.15
- 232.25
- 232.35

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing the paper jam in the standard tray](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).

- The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).

242.33 Paper jam in door E from tray 3

Issue description

Applicable error code: 242.33

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and rear door are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#). Open door E on tray 2, remove tray 3, and then remove and reload paper.
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).
5. Remove paper from the tray or feeder and inspect for damage or defects. Fan the paper, flip it, and then reload. If the paper is damp, damaged, wavy, or curled, then replace it.

242.x5 Paper jam in doors B and E from tray [x]

Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 242.25
- 242.35

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing the paper jam in the standard tray](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).

2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).
5. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

242.91 Paper jam in doors B and E from tray 2

Issue description

Applicable error code: 242.91

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing the paper jam in the standard tray](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).
5. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

243.35 Paper jam in door B from tray 3

Issue description

Applicable error code: 243.35

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing the paper jam in the standard tray](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).
5. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

243.91 Paper jam in door E from tray 3

Issue description

Applicable error code: 243.91

Troubleshooting

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing the paper jam in the standard tray](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).
5. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

Paper jam in the ADF

280.06 Reload originals in ADF

Issue description

Applicable error code: 280.06

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the original document is loaded correctly in the ADF tray, and then adjust the guides to fit the document size.
2. Make sure that the document is loaded properly. Do the following:
 - a. Make sure that the ADF cover is completely closed.
 - b. Make sure that the document is fully inserted in the ADF tray.

280.13 ADF scanner jam

Issue description

Applicable error code: 280.13

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and ADF are clear of debris and free from obstructions. Verify that the original document loaded into the ADF has no staples, clips, and tears.
 **Note:** If the ADF jams again, record the error code that appears and follow the troubleshooting steps for that specific code.
2. Make sure that the original document is loaded correctly in the ADF tray, and then adjust the guides to fit the document size.
3. Make sure that the paper size, type, and weight of the loaded original documents are supported by the ADF. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).
4. Remove the original document from the ADF tray, make sure it is flat and unstapled, and then reload it. Do not overfill the ADF tray.

280.15 ADF scanner jam

Issue description

Applicable error code: 280.15

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and ADF are clear of debris and free from obstructions. Verify that the original document loaded into the ADF has no staples, clips, and tears.



Note: If the ADF jams again, record the error code that appears and follow the troubleshooting steps for that specific code.

2. Make sure that the original document is loaded correctly in the ADF tray, and then adjust the guides to fit the document size.
3. Make sure that the paper size, type, and weight of the loaded original documents are supported by the ADF. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).
4. Remove the original document from the ADF tray, make sure it is flat and unstapled, and then reload it. Do not overfill the ADF tray.

280.11 ADF scanner jam

Issue description

Applicable error code: 280.11

Troubleshooting step

Make sure that the paper path and ADF are clear of debris and free from obstructions. Verify that the original document loaded into the ADF has no staples, clips, and tears.



Note: If the ADF jams again, record the error code that appears and follow the troubleshooting steps for that specific code.

295.01 ADF scanner jam

Issue description

Applicable error code: 295.01

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and ADF are clear of debris and free from obstructions. Verify that the original document loaded into the ADF has no staples, clips, and tears.



Note: If the ADF jams again, record the error code that appears and follow the troubleshooting steps for that specific code.

2. Make sure that the original document is loaded correctly in the ADF tray, and then adjust the guides to fit the document size.
3. Make sure that the paper size, type, and weight of the loaded original documents are supported by the ADF. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).

4. Remove the original document from the ADF tray, make sure it is flat and unstapled, and then reload it. Do not overfill the ADF tray.

Printing problems

PRINT JOBS DO NOT PRINT

Try one or more of the following:

- From the document that you are trying to print, open the Printing Preferences or Print dialog, and then check if the correct printer is selected.
- Check if the printer is on, and then resolve any error messages that appear on the display.
- Check if the ports are working and if the cables are securely connected to the computer and the printer. For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the printer.
- Turn off the printer, wait for about 30 seconds, and then turn on the printer.
- Remove, and then reinstall the print driver.

CONFIDENTIAL AND OTHER HELD DOCUMENTS DO NOT PRINT

Try one or more of the following:

- From the control panel, check if the documents appear in the **Held Jobs** list.
 **Note:** If the documents are not listed, then print the documents using the Print and Hold options.
- Resolve possible formatting errors or invalid data in the print job.
 - Delete the print job, and then send it again.
 - For PDF files, generate a new file, and then print the document.
- If you are printing from the Internet, then the printer may be reading the multiple job titles as duplicates.
 - For Windows users, make sure to select **Keep duplicate documents** in the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.
 - For Macintosh users, name each job differently.
- Delete some held jobs to free up printer memory.
- Install more printer memory.

JOB PRINTS FROM THE WRONG TRAY OR ON THE WRONG PAPER

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that you are printing on the correct paper.
- Depending on your operating system, specify the paper size and paper type from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog. Make sure that the settings match the paper loaded.



Note: You can also change the setting on the printer control panel. Navigate to **Settings > Paper > Tray Configuration > Paper Size/Type**.

- Check if the trays are linked. For more information, see [Linking trays on page 78](#).

Connectivity problems

CANNOT OPEN EMBEDDED WEB SERVER

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure the printer is on.
- Make sure the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
- Make sure the printer IP address is correct.



Note: You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.

- Make sure that you installed a supported browser.
 - Microsoft Edge
 - Safari version 6 or later
 - Google Chrome™ version 32 or later
 - Mozilla Firefox version 24 or later

- Check if the network connection is working.



Note: If the connection is not working, then contact your administrator.

- Check if the web proxy servers are disabled.



Note: If the servers are disabled, then contact your administrator.

CANNOT CONNECT THE PRINTER TO THE WI-FI NETWORK

Try one or more of the following:

- From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Network/Ports** › **Network Overview** › **Active Adapter**, and then select **Auto**.
- Make sure the printer is connected to the correct Wi-Fi network. For more information, see [Connecting the printer to a Wi-Fi network on page 97](#).



Note: Some routers may share the default Wi-Fi name.

- Make sure that you entered the correct network password.



Note: Take note of the spaces, numbers, and capitalization in the password.

- Make sure the correct wireless security mode is selected. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Network/Ports** › **Wireless** › **Wireless Security Mode**.

ENABLING THE USB PORT

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Network/Ports** › **USB**.
2. Select **Enable USB Port**.

SMTP SERVER ERROR

Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 72.10
- 72.20

Troubleshooting steps

1. Disable the intervention message if you do not plan to use the Email feature.
 - a. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Email** > **Email Setup**.
 - b. Set **Disable "SMTP server not set up" error** to **On**.
2. Enter the **Primary SMTP Gateway** in the **Email Setup** menu. For more information, see [Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 37](#).

UNABLE TO READ FLASH DRIVE

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the printer is not busy processing multiple jobs.
- Make sure that the flash drive is inserted into the front USB port.



Note: The flash drive does not work when inserted into the rear USB port.

- Make sure that the flash drive is supported. For more information, see [Supported flash drives and file types on page 27](#).
- Remove, and then insert the flash drive.

Hardware options problems

CANNOT DETECT A HARDWARE OPTION

Try one or more of the following:

- Turn off the printer, wait for about 30 seconds, and then turn on the printer.
- Make sure that the hardware option is properly installed.

CANNOT DETECT INTERNAL OPTION

Try one or more of the following:

- Turn off the printer, wait for about 30 seconds, and then turn on the printer.
- Print the **Menu Settings Page** report, and then check if the internal option appears in the Installed Features list. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Reports** > **Menu Settings Page**.
- Check if the internal option is installed properly into the controller board.
 1. Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
 2. Make sure that the internal option is installed into the appropriate connector on the controller board.

3. Connect the power cord to the electrical outlet, and then turn on the printer.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

NOT ENOUGH FREE SPACE IN FLASH MEMORY FOR RESOURCES

Try one or more of the following:

- Select **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data that are stored in the flash memory.



Note: Downloaded fonts and macros that are not previously stored in the flash memory are deleted.

- Install a storage drive.

TRUSTED PLATFORM MODULE ERROR

Issue description

Applicable error code: 75.03

Troubleshooting steps

1. Perform a Power-On-Reset on the printer. Do the following:
 - a. Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord.
 - b. Wait 30 seconds to discharge electrical energy and clear buffered data.
 - c. Plug the power cord back in, and then turn on the printer.
 - d. Allow the printer to fully initialize before sending a print job.

2. If the error persists, contact **customer support**.



Note: To continue printer operation, select **Stop Using the Secure Element** on the display.

**Warning—Potential Damage**

- Selecting this option disables the Secure Element for encryption key generation, reducing the overall security level of the device. Contact your printer administrator before proceeding.
- The printer may erase all existing certificates and may erase and reformat the storage drive.

Issues with supplies

PRINT CARTRIDGE SMART CHIP ERROR

Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 29.40
- 29.41
- 29.42
- 29.43
- 29.49
- 31.40
- 31.41
- 31.42
- 31.43

Troubleshooting steps

1. Remove all print cartridges. Make sure all packing materials, such as plastic covers, protective tape, and foam inserts, are fully removed. For more information, see [Setting up the printer](#).
2. Make sure that the print cartridge contacts are not damaged. Do the following:
 - a. Verify the print cartridge is not damaged and free of leaks.
 - b. Confirm the print cartridge is supported and properly installed.
 - c. Make sure that the print cartridge gold contacts are not contaminated.

For more information, see [Cleaning the print cartridge contacts](#).

3. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.



Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

UNSUPPORTED PRINT CARTRIDGE ERROR

Issue description

Applicable error codes:

• 32.40A • 32.40B • 32.40C • 32.40E • 32.41A • 32.41B • 32.41C	• 32.41E • 32.42A • 32.42B • 32.42C • 32.42E • 32.43A • 32.43B	• 32.43C • 32.43E • 33.40 • 33.41 • 33.42 • 33.43
--	--	--

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the print cartridge contacts are not damaged. Do the following:
 - a. Verify the print cartridge is not damaged and free of leaks.
 - b. Confirm the print cartridge is supported and properly installed.
 - c. Make sure that the print cartridge gold contacts are not contaminated.

For more information, see [Cleaning the print cartridge contacts](#).

2. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

3. When installing a genuine aftermarket supply for the first time, do the following:
 - a. Make sure that the correct, supported aftermarket print cartridge is installed.
 - b. When a supply error message appears, make sure that the latest firmware version available for your printer is installed.

PRINT CARTRIDGE SUPPLIES PLAN MISMATCH

Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 32.40J
- 32.41J
- 32.42J
- 32.43J

1. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

2. Make sure that the print cartridge contacts are not damaged. Do the following:
 - a. Verify the print cartridge is not damaged and free of leaks.
 - b. Confirm the print cartridge is supported and properly installed.
 - c. Make sure that the print cartridge gold contacts are not contaminated.

For more information, see [Cleaning the print cartridge contacts](#).

3. When installing a genuine aftermarket supply for the first time, do the following:

- a. Make sure that the correct, supported aftermarket print cartridge is installed.
 - b. When a supply error message appears, make sure that the latest firmware version available for your printer is installed.
4. The printer supplies plan may not match the print cartridge used. Do the following:
- If you do not have a plan conversion code, then contact [customer support](#).
 - If you have a conversion code from customer support, follow the instructions.

 Notes

- Make sure that there are no pending jobs in the printer job queue. If an invalid code is entered three times, then toner conversion feature will be locked for 24 hours before you can try again.
- You may need printer admin access.
- **Using the control panel**
 - a. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Supplies Plan** › **Plan Conversion**.
 - b. Select **Conversion Code**, enter the six-digit conversion code that was provided, and then select **OK**.
 - c. Select **Convert Plan**.
 - d. Select **OK** when the **Plan successfully converted** message appears.
- **Using the Embedded Web Server (EWS)**
 - a. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

 Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
 - Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
- b. Click **Settings** › **Supplies Plan** › **Plan Conversion**.
 - c. Click **Conversion Code**, enter the six-digit conversion code that was provided, and then click **OK**.
 - d. Click **Convert Plan**.
 - e. Click **OK** when the **Plan successfully converted** message appears.

PRINT CARTRIDGE AND PRINTER REGION MISMATCH

Issue description

Applicable error codes:

• 42.01 • 42.02 • 42.03 • 42.04 • 42.05 • 42.09 • 42.10 • 42.12 • 42.13 • 42.14 • 42.15 • 42.19 • 42.20 • 42.21 • 42.23 • 42.24 • 42.25 • 42.29	• 42.30 • 42.31 • 42.32 • 42.34 • 42.35 • 42.39 • 42.40 • 42.41 • 42.42 • 42.43 • 42.45 • 42.49 • 42.50 • 42.51 • 42.52 • 42.53 • 42.54	• 42.59 • 42.60 • 42.60K • 42.61 • 42.61K • 42.62 • 42.62K • 42.63 • 42.63K • 42.64 • 42.64K • 42.90 • 42.91 • 42.92 • 42.93 • 42.94 • 42.95
--	---	--

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the print cartridge region matches the printer region, or use a worldwide print cartridge. For more information, see [Replace cartridge, printer region mismatch](#).
2. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.



Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

NEARLY FULL OR FULL WASTE TONER BOTTLE

Issue description

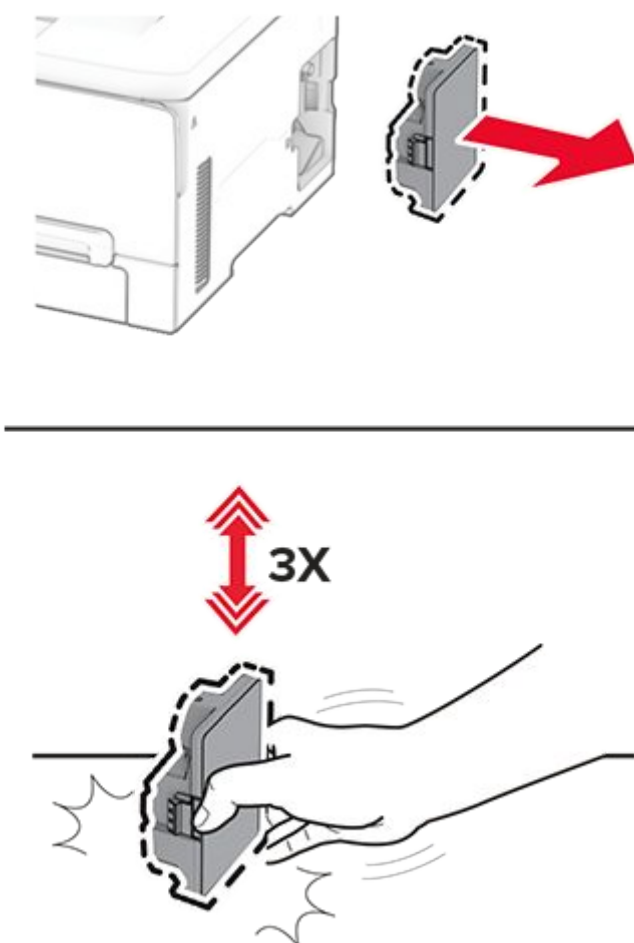
Applicable error codes:

- 82.00
- 82.02
- 82.09
- 82.12

- 82.13
- 82.19
- 82.20
- 82.22
- 82.23
- 82.29
- 82.30
- 82.32
- 82.33
- 82.39
- 82.40
- 82.42
- 82.49

Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the waste toner settles properly in the bottle and is not full. Do the following:
 - a. Remove the waste toner bottle.
 - b. Check if the waste toner bottle is full. If the toner level reaches the sensor detection area, then the bottle is full.
 - c. Gently tap the bottle upright on a table.



 **Note:** The bottle may contain excess toner that could spill. Place paper under the bottle before performing this step.

2. Check if the waste toner bottle is full. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Device** > **Notifications** > **Show Supply Estimates**. If the waste toner bottle is full, replace it. For more information, see [Replacing the waste toner bottle](#).
3. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox waste toner bottle. If the printer is using third-party supplies, then contact your supplier.

 Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

4. If the message appears again after installing genuine, supported supplies, perform a Power-On Reset. Do the following:
 - a. Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord.
 - b. Wait 30 seconds to discharge electrical energy and clear buffered data.
 - c. Plug the power cord back in, and then turn on the printer.
 - d. Allow the printer to fully initialize before sending a print job.

LOW OR END-OF-LIFE PRINT CARTRIDGE

Issue description

Applicable error codes:

• 84.03C	• 88.08K	• 88.13Y	• 88.22M	• 88.31C	• 88.40K
• 84.03K	• 88.09C	• 88.13K	• 88.22Y	• 88.31M	• 88.41C
• 84.13C	• 88.09M	• 88.18C	• 88.22K	• 88.31Y	• 88.41M
• 84.13K	• 88.09Y	• 88.18M	• 88.23C	• 88.31K	• 88.41Y
• 88.00C	• 88.09K	• 88.18Y	• 88.23M	• 88.32C	• 88.41K
• 88.00M	• 88.10C	• 88.18K	• 88.23Y	• 88.32M	• 88.42C
• 88.00Y	• 88.10M	• 88.19C	• 88.23K	• 88.32Y	• 88.42M
• 88.00K	• 88.10Y	• 88.19M	• 88.28C	• 88.32K	• 88.42Y
• 88.01C	• 88.10K	• 88.19Y	• 88.28M	• 88.33C	• 88.42K
• 88.01M	• 88.11C	• 88.19K	• 88.28Y	• 88.33M	• 88.43C
• 88.01Y	• 88.11M	• 88.20C	• 88.28K	• 88.33Y	• 88.43M
• 88.01K	• 88.11Y	• 88.20M	• 88.29C	• 88.33K	• 88.43Y
• 88.02C	• 88.11K	• 88.20Y	• 88.29M	• 88.38C	• 88.43K
• 88.02M	• 88.12C	• 88.20K	• 88.29Y	• 88.38M	• 88.48C
• 88.02Y	• 88.12M	• 88.21C	• 88.29K	• 88.38Y	• 88.48M
• 88.02K	• 88.12Y	• 88.21M	• 88.30C	• 88.38K	• 88.48Y
• 88.08C	• 88.12K	• 88.21Y	• 88.30M	• 88.40C	• 88.48K
• 88.08M	• 88.13C	• 88.21K	• 88.30Y	• 88.40M	
• 88.08Y	• 88.13M	• 88.22C	• 88.30K	• 88.40Y	

Troubleshooting steps

1. Check the remaining life of the print cartridge. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Device > Notifications > Show Supply Estimates**. Replace any print cartridge that is nearly end-of-life or end-of-life. For more information, see [Replacing a print cartridge](#).
2. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.



Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

3. If the message appears again after installing genuine, supported supplies, perform a Power-On Reset. Do the following:
 - a. Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord.
 - b. Wait 30 seconds to discharge electrical energy and clear buffered data.

- c. Plug the power cord back in, and then turn on the printer.
- d. Allow the printer to fully initialize before sending a print job.

REPLACE CARTRIDGE, PRINTER REGION MISMATCH

To correct this problem, purchase a cartridge with the correct region that matches the printer region, or purchase a worldwide cartridge.

Region	Numeric code
Global	0
North America (United States, Canada), Australia, New Zealand, Puerto Rico	1
European Union, Iceland, Liechtenstein, Norway, Switzerland, and United Kingdom	2
Asia Pacific	3
Latin America	4
Rest of Europe, Middle East, Africa	5
Xerox Distribution	7
People's Republic of China	C

REFILLED REGULAR [COLOR] CARTRIDGE

Select **OK** to continue.

For more information, see the printer statement of limited warranty.

NON-XEROX SUPPLY

The printer has detected a non-Xerox supply or part installed in the printer.

Your Xerox printer is designed to function best with genuine Xerox supplies and parts. Use of third-party supplies or parts may affect the performance, reliability, or life of the printer and its imaging components.

All life indicators are designed to function with Xerox supplies and parts and may deliver unpredictable results if third-party supplies or parts are used. Imaging component usage beyond the intended life may damage your Xerox printer or associated components.



Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by the use of third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty.

To accept any and all of these risks and to proceed with the use of non-genuine supplies or parts in your printer, touch **Continue** when a confirmation dialog box appears.

If you do not want to accept these risks, then remove the third-party supply or part from your printer and install a genuine Xerox supply or part. For more information, see [Using genuine Xerox supplies on page 230](#).

Paper handling problems

LOADING ERROR IN THE MANUAL FEEDER

Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 11.81
- 11.82
- 12.81
- 12.82

Troubleshooting steps

1. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the manual feeder. Feed the paper until its leading edge gets pulled in. For more information, see [Loading the manual feeder](#).
3. Make sure that the manual feeder is not damaged. Inspect for physical damage, misalignment, or broken guides. Make sure that all locking mechanisms are intact. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).

LOADING ERROR IN TRAYS

Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 11.11
- 11.12
- 11.21
- 11.22
- 11.31
- 11.32
- 12.11
- 12.12
- 12.21
- 12.22
- 12.31
- 12.32

Troubleshooting steps

1. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).

INSUFFICIENT PAPER SIZE FOR PRINT

Issue description

Applicable error code: 34.00

Troubleshooting steps

1. Check the page setup before printing. Make sure that the original document—whether from a print job or a copy job—matches the selected paper size.
2. Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights](#).
3. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

PAPER SIZE MISMATCH (TWO-SIDED PRINTING)

Issue description

Applicable error code: 24.04

Troubleshooting steps

1. The error is most likely caused by attempting two-sided printing on paper that is too narrow. Load only paper sizes supported for two-sided printing, such as A4, Letter, Legal, or Oficio. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).

PAPER CURL

Try one or more of the following:

- Adjust the guides in the tray to the correct position of the paper loaded.
- Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog. Make sure that the setting matches the paper loaded.



Note: You can also change the setting on the printer control panel. Navigate to **Settings > Paper > Tray Configuration > Paper Size/Type**.

- Remove the paper, flip it over, and then reload the paper.
- Load paper from a fresh package.



Note: Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store the paper in its original wrapper until you are ready to use it.

ENVELOPE SEALS WHEN PRINTING

Try one or more of the following:

- Use an envelope that has been stored in a dry environment.



Note: Printing on envelopes with high moisture content can seal the flaps.

- Make sure that the paper type is set to **Envelope**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Paper > Tray Configuration > Paper Size/Type**.

Emailing problems

DISABLING THE “SMTP SERVER NOT SET UP” ERROR MESSAGE

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Email > Email Setup**.
2. Set **Disable “SMTP server not set up” error** to **On**.

To prevent the error from happening again, do one or more of the following:

- Update the printer firmware. For more information, see the **Updating firmware** section.
- Configure the email SMTP settings. For more information, see [Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 37](#).

CANNOT SEND EMAILS

Try one more of the following:

- Make sure that the email SMTP settings are configured correctly. For more information, see [Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 37](#).
- Make sure that the printer is connected to a network and the network is connected to the Internet.

- If your email service provider is Microsoft, Outlook, or Hotmail, then configure the OAuth2.0 settings. For more information, see the Setting up OAuth 2.0 Authentication for Email Server using the Embedded Web Server section in .

Faxing problems

CALLER ID IS NOT SHOWN

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Fax** > **Fax Setup** > **Fax Receive Settings** > **Admin Controls**.
2. Set **Enable Caller ID** to **On**.

CANNOT SEND OR RECEIVE FAXES USING ANALOG FAX

Try one or more of the following:

- Resolve any error messages that appear on the display.
- Make sure that the cable connections for the telephone, handset, or answering machine are secure.
- Check for a dial tone.
 - Call the fax number to check if it is working properly.
 - If you are using the On Hook Dial feature, then turn up the volume to check if you hear a dial tone.
- Check the telephone wall jack.
 1. Connect the analog telephone directly to the wall jack.
 2. Listen for a dial tone.
 3. If you do not hear a dial tone, then use a different telephone cable.
 4. If you still do not hear a dial tone, then connect the analog telephone to a different wall jack.
 5. If you hear a dial tone, then connect the printer to that wall jack.
- Check if the printer is connected to an analog phone service or to the correct digital connector.
 - If you are using an Integrated Services for Digital Network (ISDN) telephone service, then connect to an analog telephone port of an ISDN terminal adapter. For more information, contact your ISDN provider.
 - If you are using DSL, then connect to a DSL filter or router that supports analog use. For more information, contact your DSL provider.
 - If you are using a private branch exchange (PBX) telephone service, then make sure that you are connecting to an analog connection on the PBX. If none exists, then consider installing an analog telephone line for the fax machine.
- Temporarily disconnect other equipment and disable other telephone services.
 1. Disconnect other equipment (such as answering machines, computers, modems, or telephone line splitters) between the printer and the telephone line.
 2. Disable call waiting and voice mail. For more information, contact your telephone company.
- Scan the original document one page at a time.

CAN RECEIVE BUT NOT SEND FAXES USING ANALOG FAX

Try one or more of the following:

- Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 20](#).

- Set up the shortcut number properly.
 - Check if the shortcut number is set for the telephone number that you want to dial.
 - Dial the telephone number manually.

CAN SEND BUT NOT RECEIVE FAXES USING ANALOG FAX

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the paper source is not empty.
- Check the ring count delay settings. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **Fax Receive Settings** › **Rings to Answer**.
- If the printer is printing blank pages, then see [Missing print](#).

CANNOT SET UP ETHERFAX

Try one or more of the following:

- Check the printer connectivity.
 1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Reports** › **Network** › **Network Setup Page**.
 2. Check the network status on the printed page.
- Make sure that the printer is connected to a network and the network is connected to the Internet.
- Make sure that etherFAX is set up correctly. For more information, see [Setting up the fax function using etherFAX on page 58](#).

If the problem persists, then go to <https://www.etherfax.net/>

CANNOT SEND OR RECEIVE FAXES USING ETHERFAX

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the printer is connected to a network and the network is connected to the Internet.
- Make sure that etherFAX is set up correctly. For more information, see [Setting up the fax function using etherFAX on page 58](#).
- Split large documents into smaller file sizes.

If the problem persists, then go to <https://www.etherfax.net/>

POOR FAX PRINT QUALITY

Try one or more of the following:

- Resolve any print quality defects.
 1. Print the **Test Quality Pages**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Troubleshooting** › **Print Quality Test Pages**.
 2. Correct any print quality defects. For more information, see the **Print quality issues** section.
- If you are using an analog fax, then decrease the incoming fax transmission speed.

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **Fax Receive Settings** › **Admin Controls**.
2. In the **Max Speed** menu, select a lower transmission speed.

MISSING INFORMATION ON THE FAX COVER PAGE

1. Turn off the printer, wait for about 30 seconds, and then turn on the printer.
2. Send or retrieve the fax.

CANNOT SEND THE FAX COVER PAGE FROM THE COMPUTER

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the print driver is updated. For more information, go to www.support.xerox.com.
- Clear the **Always display settings prior to faxing** setting.
 1. From the document that you are trying to fax, open the **Print** dialog.
 2. Select the printer, and then click **Properties**, **Preferences**, **Options**, or **Setup**.
 3. Click **Fax**, and then clear the **Always display settings prior to faxing** setting.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

Scanning problems

SCAN QUALITY ISSUES

Copies or scans are too light or too dark

Issue description

Copies or scanned documents appear consistently faded or overexposed, resulting in reduced readability and poor image quality. Text may appear washed out, gray, or difficult to read in light copies, while dark copies may show excessive background shading, blotches, or loss of detail.

Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Troubleshooting** › **Print Quality Test Pages**. If the test pages are unusually light or dark, then see [Image is too light or too dark](#) in the **Print quality issues** section.
2. Open the scanner cover, and then using a soft, damp, lint-free cloth, wipe the following areas:
 - ADF glass
 - ADF glass pad
 - Scanner glass
 - Scanner glass pad

For more information, see [Cleaning the scanner](#).

3. Initiate the color adjust process. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Print** › **Quality** › **Advanced Imaging** › **Color Adjust**.



Note: The color adjust process takes about one minute to complete.

4. Adjust the darkness setting. Do the following:
 - a. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Copy › Darkness**.
 - b. Adjust the darkness level.
 - If image is too light, then increase the darkness setting.
 - If image is too dark, then decrease the darkness setting.
 - c. Send a copy job.

Light vertical streaks on copies or scans

Issue description

Light vertical streaks appear on copies or scanned documents, running from the top to the bottom of the page. These streaks are visible on multiple pages and can make text or images look uneven or unclear.

Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Troubleshooting › Print Quality Test Pages**. If the same light lines appear on the test pages, then see **Vertical or horizontal lines on page 276** in the **Print quality issues** section.
2. Open the scanner cover, and then using a soft, damp, lint-free cloth, wipe the following areas:
 - ADF glass
 - ADF glass pad
 - Scanner glass
 - Scanner glass pad

For more information, see **Cleaning the scanner**.

Spots on copies or scan when using the scanner glass

Issue description

Spots or small marks appear on copies or scanned documents when using the scanner glass. These spots may appear as dark or light dots or smudges and are visible in the same location on multiple pages.

Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Troubleshooting › Print Quality Test Pages**. If the same spots appear on the test pages, then see **Repeating defects** in the **Print quality issues** section.
2. Load a blank sheet of paper on the scanner glass, and then make a copy. If the copy shows the same spots, clean the scanner glass. For more information, see **Cleaning the scanner**.

Lines on copies or scans when using the ADF

Issue description

Horizontal or vertical lines consistently appear on copies or scanned documents when using the automatic document feeder (ADF). The lines may be dark or light and typically run across the full width or length of the page. This defect is visible on multiple pages within the same job and does not appear when scanning or copying from the scanner glass.

Troubleshooting steps

1. Load a blank sheet of paper into the ADF, and then make a copy.
 - If a line appears on the test copy and matches the line seen on normal copies, cleaning the ADF glass will most likely resolve the issue.
 - If a line appears but it is different from the original defect, the issue is likely with the printer.
 - If no line appears on the test copy, see [Vertical or horizontal lines on page 276](#) in the **Print quality issues** section.
2. Open the scanner cover, and then using a soft, damp, lint-free cloth, wipe the following areas:
 - ADF glass
 - ADF glass pad
 - Scanner glass
 - Scanner glass pad

For more information, see [Cleaning the scanner](#).

CANNOT SCAN TO A COMPUTER

Try one or more of the following:

- Perform a copy job. If the job failed, then turn off the printer, wait for about 30 seconds, and then turn on the printer.
- Check the printer connectivity.
 1. Print the **Network Setup Page**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Reports** > **Network**, and then select **Network Setup Page**.
 2. Check the first section of the page and confirm if the status is connected.
- Make sure that the printer and the computer are connected to the same network.

CANNOT SCAN TO A NETWORK FOLDER

Try one or more of the following:

- Create a network folder shortcut, and then scan a document using the shortcut. For more information, see [Creating a network folder shortcut on page 124](#).
- Make sure that the network folder path and format are correct. For example, `//server_hostname/foldername/path`, where **server_hostname** is a fully qualified domain (FQDN) or IP address.
- Make sure that you have a write access permission to the network folder.
- Make sure that the printer and the network folder are connected to the same network.

- Update the network folder shortcut.
 1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Shortcuts**, and then select a shortcut.



Note: If you have multiple shortcut types, then select **Network Folder**.

3. In the **Share Path** field, type the network folder path. For example, *//server_hostname/foldername/path*.



Note: Always use forward slashes when typing the share path.

4. From the **Authentication** menu, select your authentication method.



Note: If **Authentication** is set to “**Use assigned username and password**,” then in the Username and Password fields, type your credentials.

5. Click **Save**.

PARTIAL COPIES OF DOCUMENT OR PHOTO

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the document or photo is loaded face down on the upper left corner of the scanner glass.
- Check the paper loaded for the following:
 - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 66](#).
 - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 24](#), [Supported paper types on page 26](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 27](#).
- Check the **Copy From** and **Copy To** size settings in the **Copy** menu. Make sure both are set to the correct document and output paper sizes.

SCAN JOB WAS NOT SUCCESSFUL

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the Ethernet or USB cable is securely connected to the computer and the printer.
- Check the file that you want to scan, and make sure that:
 - The file name is not already used in the destination folder.
 - The document or photo that you want to scan is not open in another application.

- Make sure that the **Append time stamp** or the **Overwrite existing file** check box is selected in the destination configuration settings.

SCANNER DOES NOT CLOSE

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove any paper, debris, or foreign objects inside the scanner.
- Clean the lid and frame.
- Check if the hinges or latches are damaged or misaligned. Contact [customer support](#) if there are signs of damage.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

SCANNER DOES NOT RESPOND

Try one or more of the following:

- Check if the power cord is connected properly to the printer and the electrical outlet.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

- Check if the printer is turned on, and then resolve any error messages that appear on the display.
- Turn off the printer, wait for about 30 seconds, and then turn on the printer.

SCAN JOB HANG-UP

Issue description

Applicable error code: 38.00

Troubleshooting steps

1. Clear all scan jobs from the printer queue to reset the device and free memory.
2. Perform a Power-On-Reset on the printer. Do the following:
 - a. Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord.
 - b. Wait 30 seconds to discharge electrical energy and clear buffered data.
 - c. Plug the power cord back in, and then turn on the printer.
 - d. Allow the printer to fully initialize before sending a print job.
3. Reduce scan job complexity.
 - a. Lower the scan resolution (for example, 300 dpi).
 - b. Select a smaller file size or change the file format to PDF or JPEG.
 - c. Scan fewer pages at a time.
4. Verify scan destination and connectivity.
 - a. Confirm that the scan destination (email server, network folder, or USB device) is available.
 - b. Check network connectivity and ensure the IP address settings are correct.

- c. Test scanning to an alternate destination to isolate the issue.
5. If you frequently send large or complex print or scan jobs, installing an intelligent storage drive (ISD) can improve job handling and reduce memory-related errors. For more information, see [Installing the intelligent storage drive](#).



Note: The ISD is only supported in certain printer models.

ADJUSTING SCANNER REGISTRATION

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Device** > **Maintenance** > **Configuration Menu** > **Scanner Configuration** > **Scanner Manual Registration**.
2. In the **Print Quick Test** menu, select **Start**.
3. Place the test page on the scanner glass, and then select **Flatbed Registration**.
4. In the **Copy Quick Test** menu, select **Start**.
5. Compare the test page with the original document.



Note: If the margins of the test page are different from the original document, then adjust the **Left Margin** and **Top Margin** settings.

6. Repeat **step 4** and **step 5** until the margins of the **Copy Quick Test** page closely match the original document.

ADJUSTING ADF REGISTRATION

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Device** > **Maintenance** > **Configuration Menu** > **Scanner Configuration** > **Scanner Manual Registration**.
2. In the **Print Quick Test** menu, select **Start**.
3. Place the test page on the ADF tray.
4. Select **Front ADF Registration** or **Rear ADF Registration**.



Notes

- To align **Front ADF Registration**, place the test page face up, short edge first into the ADF.
- To align **Rear ADF Registration**, place the test page face down, short edge first into the ADF.

5. In the **Copy Quick Test** menu, select **Start**.
6. Compare the test page with the original document.



Note: If the margins of the test page are different from the original document, then adjust the **Horizontal Adjust** and **Top Margin** settings.

7. Repeat **step 5** and **step 6** until the margins of the **Copy Quick Test** page closely match the original document.

System problems

COLLATED PRINTING DOES NOT WORK

Try one or more of the following:

- From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Print** › **Layout** › **Collate**, and then select **On [1,2,1,2,1,2]**.
- From the document that you are trying to print, open the Printing Preferences or Print dialog, and then select **Collate**.
- Reduce the number of pages to print.

INDICATOR LIGHT IS ALTERNATING BETWEEN BLUE AND BLINKING RED

A communication issue has occurred between the controller board and the control panel card.

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then wait for 30 seconds.
3. Connect the power cord to the electrical outlet.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

4. Turn on the printer.

INSUFFICIENT MEMORY

Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 37.01
- 37.03
- 38.01
- 39.01
- 39.02

Troubleshooting steps

1. Clear all print jobs from the printer queue to reset the device and free memory. For more information, see [Canceling a print job on page 111](#).
2. Perform a Power-On-Reset on the printer. Do the following:
 - a. Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord.
 - b. Wait 30 seconds to discharge electrical energy and clear buffered data.
 - c. Plug the power cord back in, and then turn on the printer.
 - d. Allow the printer to fully initialize before sending a print job.
3. Reduce print job complexity from the computer.
 - a. Print fewer pages at a time.

- b. For PDF files, enable **Print as Image**.
 - c. Lower the print resolution. If **Highest Quality** is enabled, change it to **Standard**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Print** › **Quality** › **Print Resolution**.
 - d. Disable advanced features, such as duplex, booklet printing, and secure print.
4. Verify whether the printer supports the Xerox® Print and Scan Experience app. For more information, see [Xerox® Print and Scan Experience App](#). If not supported, use a PCL driver to reduce memory usage.
 5. If you frequently send large or complex print or scan jobs, installing an intelligent storage drive (ISD) can improve job handling and reduce memory-related errors. For more information, see [Installing the intelligent storage drive](#).



Note: The ISD is only supported in certain printer models.

JAMMED PAGES ARE NOT REPRINTED

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Notifications** › **Jam Content Recovery**.
2. In the **Jam Recovery** menu, select **On** or **Auto**.

THE PRINTER IS NOT RESPONDING

Try one or more of the following:

- Check if the power cord is connected to the electrical outlet.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

- Make sure that the electrical outlet is not turned off by a switch or breaker.
- Check if the printer is on.
- Make sure that the printer is not in Sleep or Hibernate Mode.
- Make sure that the cables connecting the printer and computer are connected to the correct ports.
- Turn off the printer, install the hardware options, and then turn on the printer. For more information, see the documentation that came with the option.
- Install the correct print driver.
- Turn off the printer, wait for about 30 seconds, and then turn on the printer.

TRAY LINKING DOES NOT WORK

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the linked trays contain the same paper size and paper type and loaded in the same orientation.
- Make sure that the paper guides are positioned correctly.
- Set the paper size and paper type to match the paper loaded in the linked trays. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Paper** › **Tray Configuration** › **Paper Size/Type**.
- Make sure that **Tray Linking** is set to **Automatic**. For more information, see [Linking trays on page 78](#).

Color quality problems

MODIFYING THE COLORS IN PRINTED OUTPUT

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Print** > **Quality** > **Advanced Imaging** > **Color Correction**.
2. In the **Color Correction** menu, select **Manual**.
3. In the **Color Correction Content** menu, select the appropriate color conversion setting.

Object type	Color conversion tables
RGB Image RGB Text RGB Graphics	◦ Vivid—Produces brighter, more saturated colors and can be applied to all incoming color formats. ◦ sRGB Display—Produces an output that approximates the colors shown on a computer monitor. Black toner usage is optimized for printing photographs. ◦ Display-True Black—Produces an output that approximates the colors shown on a computer monitor. This setting uses only black toner to create all levels of neutral gray. ◦ sRGB Vivid—Provides an increased color saturation for the sRGB Display color correction. Black toner usage is optimized for printing business graphics. ◦ Off
CMYK Image CMYK Text CMYK Graphics	◦ US CMYK—Applies color correction to approximate the Specifications for Web Offset Publishing (SWOP) color output. ◦ Euro CMYK—Applies color correction to approximate Euroscale color output. ◦ Vivid CMYK—Increases the color saturation of the US CMYK color correction setting. ◦ Off

FAQ ABOUT COLOR PRINTING

What is RGB color?

RGB color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of red, green, or blue used to produce a certain color. Red, green, and blue light can be added in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. Computer screens, scanners, and digital cameras use this method to display colors.

What is CMYK color?

CMYK color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black used to reproduce a particular color. Cyan, magenta, yellow, and black inks or toners can be printed in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. Printing presses, inkjet printers, and color laser printers create colors in this manner.

How is color specified in a document to be printed?

Software programs are used to specify and modify the document color using RGB or CMYK color combinations. For more information, see the software program Help topics.

How does the printer know what color to print?

When printing a document, information describing the type and color of each object is sent to the printer and is passed through color conversion tables. Color is translated into the appropriate amounts of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black toner used to produce the color you want. The object information determines the application of color conversion tables. For example, it is possible to apply one type of color conversion table to text while applying a different color conversion table to photographic images.

What is manual color correction?

When manual color correction is enabled, the printer employs user-selected color conversion tables to process objects. Manual color correction settings are specific to the type of object being printed (text, graphics, or images). It is also specific to how the color of the object is specified in the software program (RGB or CMYK combinations). To apply a different color conversion table manually, see [Modifying the colors in printed output on page 351](#).

If the software program does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations, then manual color correction is not useful. It is also not effective if the software program or the computer operating system controls the adjustment of colors. In most situations, setting the Color Correction to Auto generates preferred colors for the documents.

How can I match a particular color (such as a corporate logo)?

From the printer Quality menu, nine types of Color Samples sets are available. These sets are also available from the Color Samples page of the Embedded Web Server. Selecting any sample set generates multiple-page prints consisting of hundreds of colored boxes. Each box contains a CMYK or RGB combination, depending on the table selected. The observed color of each box is obtained by passing the CMYK or RGB combination labeled on the box through the selected color conversion table.

By examining Color Samples sets, you can identify the box with color closest to the color being matched. The color combination labeled on the box can then be used for modifying the color of the object in a software program. For more information, see the software program Help topics. Manual color correction may be necessary to use the selected color conversion table for the particular object.

Selecting which Color Samples set to use for a particular color-matching problem depends on:

- The Color Correction setting being used (Auto, Off, or Manual)
- The type of object being printed (text, graphics, or images)
- How the color of the object is specified in the software program (RGB or CMYK combinations)

If the software program does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations, then the Color Samples pages are not useful. Additionally, some software programs adjust the RGB or CMYK combinations

specified in the program through color management. In these situations, the printed color may not be an exact match of the Color Samples pages.

THE PRINT APPEARS TINTED

Try one or more of the following:

- From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Print** › **Quality** › **Advanced Imaging**, and then select **Color Adjust**.
- From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Print** › **Quality** › **Advanced Imaging**, select **Color Balance**, and then adjust the settings.

Contacting customer support

To accurately diagnose your issue, our support agents must perform diagnostic troubleshooting with you during your call. Make sure you are near your device so you can follow the on-screen or spoken instructions.

If you are not near your device, you can call us back when you are ready.

Have the following information ready when you contact support:

- Printer model and serial number
- A brief description of the issue
- Any error messages (if applicable)



Note:

- For instructions on locating the printer serial number or the , see [Finding the printer serial number on page 14](#).
- Depending on your printer model, the serial number is 9, 10, or 13 digits. Look for **SN** or **XSN–Xerox Serial Number** on the label.

Technical support is also available by phone:

- For Xerox, go to <https://support.xerox.com>, and then click **Contact Support**.
- For Lexmark (U.S. or Canada), call **1-800-539-6257**. For other countries or regions, go to www.lexmark.com/supportdirectory.

Recycling and disposal

This chapter contains

All Countries	355
North America.....	355
European Union	355
Other Countries.....	356

12. Recycling and disposal

All Countries

If you are managing the disposal of your Xerox product, please note that the printer may contain lead, mercury, perchlorate, and other materials whose disposal may be regulated due to environmental considerations. The presence of these materials is fully consistent with global regulations applicable at the time that the product was placed on the market.

For recycling and disposal information, contact your local authorities.

Perchlorate Material: This product may contain one or more Perchlorate-containing devices, such as batteries. Special handling may apply. For more information, go to www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

BATTERY REMOVAL

Batteries should only be replaced by a manufacturer-approved service facility.

North America

Xerox operates an equipment take-back and reuse/recycle program. Contact your Xerox representative (1-800-ASK- XEROX) to determine if this Xerox product is part of the program.

For more information about Xerox environmental programs, visit www.xerox.com/environment.

For recycling and disposal information, contact your local authorities.

European Union



These symbols indicate that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) Directive (2012/19/EU), the Battery Directive (2006/66/EC) and national legislation implementing those Directives.

If a chemical symbol is printed beneath the symbol shown above, in accordance with the Battery Directive, this indicates that a heavy metal (Hg = Mercury, Cd = Cadmium, Pb = Lead) is present in this battery or accumulator at a concentration above an applicable threshold specified in the Battery Directive.

Some equipment may be used in both a domestic/household and a professional/business application. Private households within European Union may return used electrical and electronic equipment to designated collection facilities free of charge. For more information about collection and recycling of old products and batteries, contact your local municipality, your waste disposal service or the point of sale where you purchased the items. In some member states, when you purchase new equipment, your local retailer may be required to take back your old equipment free of charge. For more information, contact your retailer.

Business Users in the European Union, in accordance with European legislation, end of life electrical and electronic equipment subject to disposal must be managed within agreed procedures. If you wish to

discard electrical and electronic equipment, contact your dealer or supplier, local reseller or Xerox representative for end of life take-back information prior to disposal.

Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. Your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources.

DISPOSAL OUTSIDE OF THE EUROPEAN UNION

These symbols are only valid in the European Union. If you wish to discard these items, please contact your local authorities or dealer and ask for the correct method of disposal.

Other Countries

Please contact your local waste management authority to request disposal guidance.

Notices

This chapter contains

Product information.....	358
Edition and legal notices	358
Specifications.....	359
Environmental and sustainability notices	361
Notices for fax products	364
Notices for wireless products	367
Class B device notices	370
Other regulatory notices	372

Notices

Product information

Product name:

Xerox® C305ae; Xerox® XC2432; Xerox® ZC364 Color Multifunction Printers

Machine type:

3501

Models:

8L0

Edition and legal notices

EDITION NOTICES

June 2026

The following paragraph does not apply to any country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: XEROX CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION “AS IS” WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions; therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This publication could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in later editions. Improvements or changes in the products or the programs described may be made at any time.

References in this publication to products, programs, or services do not imply that the manufacturer intends to make these available in all countries in which it operates. Any reference to a product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any existing intellectual property right may be used instead. Evaluation and verification of operation in conjunction with other products, programs, or services, except those expressly designated by the manufacturer, are the user's responsibility.

For Xerox technical support, go to <https://www.support.xerox.com/>.

For information on Xerox's privacy policy governing the use of this product, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/about/privacy-policy>.

For information on supplies and downloads, go to <https://www.xerox.com>.

GOVERNMENT END USERS

The Software and accompanying documentation are “commercial” as defined in FAR 2.101. For civilian agencies, consistent with FAR 12.212, commercial computer software or commercial computer software documentation are licensed to the U.S. Government under the vendor's standard commercial license(s) customarily provided to the public, and the Government shall have only those rights specified in such license(s), to the extent consistent with Federal law and otherwise meeting Government needs. For Department of Defense (DoD) agencies, consistent with DFARS 227.7202-1 and 227.7202-3, commercial computer software or commercial computer software documentation are licensed to DoD under the vendor's standard commercial license(s) customarily provided to the public, and the Government shall have only the rights specified in such license(s), unless additional rights are expressly negotiated and expressly stated in the contract or an addendum.

LICENSING NOTICES

All licensing notices associated with this product can be viewed from the Xerox support site.

Specifications

LASER NOTICE

The printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of DHHS 21 CFR, Chapter I, Subchapter J for Class I (1) laser products, and elsewhere is certified as a Class 1 consumer laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 60825-1:2014, EN 60825-1:2014+A11:2021, and EN 50689:2021.

Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The laser system and printer are designed so there is never any human access to laser radiation above a Class I level during normal operation, user maintenance, or prescribed service conditions. The printer has a non-serviceable printhead assembly that contains a laser with the following specifications:

Class: IIb (3b) AlGaAs

Nominal output power (milliwatts): 10

Wavelength (nanometers): 770–800

TEMPERATURE INFORMATION

Operating temperature and relative humidity (RH) ¹	10 to 32.2°C (50 to 90°F) and 15 to 80 % RH 15.6 to 32.2°C (60 to 90°F) and 8 to 80 % RH Maximum wet-bulb temperature ³ : 22.8°C (73°F) Non-condensing environment
Printer / cartridge / imaging unit long-term storage ²	15.6 to 32.2°C (60 to 90°F) and 8 to 80 % RH Maximum wet-bulb temperature ³ : 22.8°C (73°F)
Printer / cartridge / imaging unit short-term shipping	-40 to 40°C (-40 to 104°F)

¹ In some cases, performance specifications (such as cartridge usage and first-page-out speed) must be measured at a standard office environment of approximately 22.2°C (72°F) and 45 % RH.

² Supplies shelf life is approximately 2 years. This is based on storage in a standard office environment at 22°C (72°F) and 45 % humidity.

³ Wet-bulb temperature is determined by the air temperature and the relative humidity.

POWER REQUIREMENTS

The following nominal voltage ranges are supported in applicable countries or regions: 100–110 V / 50Hz, 110–127 V / 60Hz, and 220–240 V / 50Hz (not dual-voltage).

PRODUCT POWER CONSUMPTION

The following table documents the power consumption characteristics of the product.

 **Note:** Some modes may not apply to your product.

Mode	Description	Power consumption (Watts)
Printing	The product is generating hard-copy output from electronic inputs.	One-sided: 432 Two-sided: 274
Copy	The product is generating hard-copy output from hard-copy original documents.	394
Scan	The product is scanning hard-copy documents.	27.1
Ready	The product is waiting for a print job.	17.5
Sleep Mode	The product is in a high-level energy-saving mode.	0.78
Hibernate	The product is in a low-level energy-saving mode.	0.1
Off	The product is plugged into an electrical outlet, but the power switch is turned off.	0.1

The power consumption levels listed in the previous table represent time-averaged measurements. Instantaneous power draws may be substantially higher than the average. Values are subject to change. See www.xerox.com for current values.

SLEEP MODE

This product is designed with an energy-saving mode called **Sleep Mode**. The Sleep Mode saves energy by lowering power consumption during extended periods of inactivity. The Sleep Mode is automatically engaged after this product is not used for a specified period of time, called the **Sleep Mode Timeout**.

Factory default Sleep Mode Timeout for this product (in minutes):	15
---	----

By using the configuration menus, the Sleep Mode Timeout can be modified between 1 minute and 120 minutes, or between 1 minute and 114 minutes, depending on the printer model. If the printer speed is less than or equal to 30 pages per minute, then you can set the timeout only up to 60 minutes or 54 minutes, depending on the printer model. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a low value reduces energy consumption, but may increase the response time of the product. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a high value maintains a fast response, but uses more energy. Some models support a **Deep Sleep Mode**, which further reduces power consumption after longer periods of inactivity.

HIBERNATE MODE

This product is designed with an ultra-low power operating mode called **Hibernate mode**. When operating in Hibernate Mode, all other systems and devices are powered down safely. The Hibernate mode can be entered in any of the following methods:

- Using the Hibernate Timeout
- Using the Schedule Power modes

Factory default Hibernate Timeout for this product in all countries or regions	3 days
--	--------

The amount of time the printer waits after a job is printed before it enters Hibernate mode can be modified between one hour and one month.

Notes on EPEAT-registered imaging equipment products:

- Standby power level occurs in Hibernate or Off mode.
- The product shall automatically power down to a standby power level of ≤ 1 W. The auto standby function (Hibernate or Off) shall be enabled at product shipment.

OFF MODE

If this product has an off mode which still consumes a small amount of power, then to completely stop product power consumption, disconnect the power supply cord from the electrical outlet.

TOTAL ENERGY USAGE

It is sometimes helpful to estimate the total product energy usage. Since power consumption claims are provided in power units of Watts, the power consumption should be multiplied by the time the product spends in each mode in order to calculate energy usage. The total product energy usage is the sum of each mode's energy usage.

Environmental and sustainability notices

NOISE EMISSION LEVELS

The following measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779 and reported in conformance with ISO 9296.

 **Note:** Some modes may not apply to your product.

1-meter average sound pressure, dBA	
Printing	One-sided, mono: 51 One-sided, color: 53 Two-sided, mono: 50 Two-sided, color: 52
Scanning	Mono: 55 Color: 45
Copying	Mono: 57 Color: 50
Ready	14

Values are subject to change. See www.xerox.com for current values.

WASTE FROM ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT (WEEE) DIRECTIVE



The WEEE logo signifies specific recycling programs and procedures for electronic products in countries of the European Union. We encourage the recycling of our products.

If you have further questions about recycling options, visit the Xerox website at www.xerox.com for your local sales office phone number.

INDIA E-WASTE NOTICE



This product including components, consumables, parts and spares complies with the “India E-Waste Rules” and prohibits use of lead, mercury, hexavalent chromium, polybrominated biphenyls or polybrominated diphenyl ethers in concentrations exceeding 0.1 % by weight and 0.01 % by weight for cadmium, except for the exemption set in the Rule.

LITHIUM-ION RECHARGEABLE BATTERY



This product may contain a coin-cell, lithium-ion rechargeable battery, which should only be removed by a trained technician. Crossed-out wheelie bin means the product should not be discarded as unsorted waste

but must be sent to separate collection facilities for recovery and recycling. In the event the battery is removed, do not dispose of the battery in your household waste. There may be separate collection systems for batteries in your local community, such as a battery-recycling drop-off location. The separate collection of waste batteries assures appropriate treatment of waste including reuse and recycling and prevents any potential negative effects on human health and environment. Please responsibly dispose of the batteries.

REGULATION (EU) 2023/1542

This product may contain a coin-cell lithium rechargeable battery. This battery complies with Regulation (EU) 2023/1542. Compliance is indicated by the CE marking:



This product may contain one of the following coin-cell batteries:

- Battery identification: Seiko Model Number MS621FE
Manufacturer: Seiko Instruments Inc.
Manufacturer address: 8, Nakase 1-chome, Mihama-ku, Chiba-shi, Chiba 261-8507, Japan
- Battery identification: Panasonic Model Number ML621
Manufacturer: Panasonic Energy Co., Ltd.
Manufacturer address: 1-1 Matsushita-cho, Moriguchi City, Osaka 570-8511, Japan
- Battery identification: FDK Model Number ML621
Manufacturer: FDK Corporation
Manufacturer address: Shibaura Crystal Shinagawa, 1-6-41 Konan, Minato-ku, Tokyo 108-8212 Japan

For the latest battery information, go to https://www.xerox.com/downloads/usa/en/e/environment_batterydirectivematrix.pdf.

ENVIRONMENTAL LABELING FOR PACKAGING

Per Commission Regulation Decision 97/129/EC Legislative Decree 152/2006, the product packaging may contain one or more of the following symbols.

A recycling symbol consisting of three arrows forming a triangle, with the number '20' in the center and the letters 'PAP' below it.	This symbol indicates that the packaging may contain corrugated fiberboard.
A recycling symbol consisting of three arrows forming a triangle, with the number '21' in the center and the letters 'PAP' below it.	This symbol indicates that the packaging may contain non-corrugated fiberboard.



This symbol indicates that the packaging may contain paper.

For more information, go to www.xerox.com/en-us/about/ehs/reduce-waste/packaging-and-sorting, and then choose your country or region. Information on available packaging recycling programs is included with the information on product recycling.

PRODUCT DISPOSAL

Do not dispose of the printer or supplies in the same manner as normal household waste. Consult your local authorities for disposal and recycling options.

RETURNING XEROX SUPPLIES FOR REUSE OR RECYCLING

The Xerox Cartridge Collection Program allows you to return used cartridges and other used supplies for free to Xerox for reuse or recycling.

To return Xerox cartridges for reuse or recycling, do the following:

1. Go to www.xerox.com/recycling.
2. Select your country or region.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

ENERGY STAR®

Any Xerox product bearing the ENERGY STAR emblem on the product or on a start-up screen is certified to comply with Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) ENERGY STAR requirements as of the date of manufacture.



Notices for fax products

REGULATORY NOTICES FOR TELECOMMUNICATION TERMINAL EQUIPMENT

This section contains regulatory information pertaining to products that contain the analog facsimile card:

Regulatory Type/Model Number:

LEX-M14-002 or LEX-M03-002

NOTICE TO USERS OF THE US TELEPHONE NETWORK: FCC REQUIREMENTS

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules and the requirements adopted by the Administrative Council for Terminal Attachments (ACTA). On the back of this equipment is a label that

contains, among other information, a product identifier in the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. If requested, this number must be provided to your telephone company.

This equipment uses the RJ-11C Universal Service Order Code (USOC) jack.

A plug and jack used to connect this equipment to the premises' wiring and telephone network must comply with the applicable FCC Part 68 rules and requirements adopted by the ACTA. Use a compliant telephone cord (RJ-11) that is 26 AWG or larger when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network. See your setup documentation for more information.

The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is used to determine the number of devices that may be connected to a telephone line. Excessive RENs on a telephone line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most but not all areas, the sum of RENs should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to a line, as determined by the total RENs, contact your local telephone company. For products approved after July 23, 2001, the REN for this product is part of the product identifier that has the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. The digits represented by ## are the REN without a decimal point (for example, 03 is a REN of 0.3). For earlier products, the REN is shown separately on the label.

If this equipment causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. If advance notice is not practical, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. You will also be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC.

The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations or procedures that could affect the operation of this equipment. If this happens, the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make necessary modifications to maintain uninterrupted service.

If you experience trouble with this equipment, for repair or warranty information, contact Xerox Corporation at www.xerox.com or your Xerox representative. If the equipment is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you disconnect the equipment until the problem is resolved.

This equipment contains no user serviceable parts. For repair and warranty information, contact Xerox Corporation. See the previous paragraph for contact information.

Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission, or corporation commission for information.

If your home has specially wired alarm equipment connected to the telephone line, ensure the installation of this equipment does not disable your alarm equipment. If you have questions about what will disable alarm equipment, consult your telephone company or a qualified installer.

The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device, including fax machines, to send any message unless said message clearly contains in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page or on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent and an identification of the business or other entity, or other individual sending the message, and the telephone number of the sending machine or such business, other entity, or individual. (The telephone number provided may not be a 900 number or any other number for which charges exceed local or long-distance transmission charges.)

See your user documentation in order to program this information into your fax machine.

NOTICE TO USERS OF THE CANADIAN TELEPHONE NETWORK

This product meets the applicable Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada technical specifications.

The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) indicates the maximum number of devices allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The termination of an interface may consist of any combination of devices subject only to the requirement that the sum of the RENs of all the devices not exceed five. The REN is located on the product label.

This equipment uses CA11A telephone jacks.

Avis réservé aux utilisateurs du réseau téléphonique du Canada

Ce produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada.

Le numéro REN (ringer equivalence number : numéro d'équivalence de sonnerie) indique le nombre maximum d'appareils pouvant être connectés à l'interface téléphonique. En bout de ligne, le nombre d'appareils qui peuvent être connectés n'est pas directement limité, mais la somme des REN de ces appareils ne doit pas dépasser cinq. Le numéro REN est indiqué sur l'étiquette produit.

Cet équipement utilise des prises de téléphone CA11A.

NOTICE TO USERS OF THE NEW ZEALAND TELEPHONE NETWORK

The following are special conditions for the Facsimile User Instructions. The grant of a telepermit for any item of terminal equipment indicates only that Spark has accepted that the item complies with minimum conditions for connection to its network. It indicates no endorsement of the product by Spark, nor does it provide any sort of warranty. Above all, it provides no assurance that any item will work correctly in all respects with another item of telepermitted equipment of a different make or model, nor does it imply that any product is compatible with all of Spark's network services.

This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Spark "111" Emergency Service.

This equipment may not provide for the effective hand-over of a call to another device connected to the same line.

This equipment should not be used under any circumstances that may constitute a nuisance to other Spark customers.

This equipment is not capable, under all operating conditions, of correct operation at the higher speeds for which it is designed. Spark will accept no responsibility should difficulties arise in such circumstances.

The decadic (or pulse) dialing on this device is unsuitable for use on the Spark network in New Zealand.

For correct operation, the total of all the Ringer Equivalence Numbers (RENs) of all parallel devices connected to the same telephone line may not exceed 5. The REN of this device is located on the label.

This device uses an RJ-11C modular connector. Contact your point of purchase if a BT adapter is required.

The Lexmark part number is 80D1873.

Some parameters required for compliance with Spark's telepermit requirements are dependent on the equipment associated with this device. The associated equipment shall be set to operate within the following limits for compliance to Spark's specifications:

- There shall be no more than 10 call attempts to the same number within any 30 minute period for any single manual call initiation, and
- The equipment shall go on-hook for a period of not less than 30 seconds between the end of one attempt and the beginning of the next call attempt.
- The equipment shall be set to ensure that automatic calls to different numbers are spaced such that there is not less than 5 seconds between the end of one call attempt and the beginning of another.

JAPANESE TELECOM NOTICE

The installed optional modem is in compliance with Japanese Telecommunication Law and has been Certified by JATE, with the following Certification Number:

A18-0046001 or A11-0160001JP

	Lexmark International, Inc.
	LEX-M14-002 or LEX-M03-002
	A18-0046001 or A11-0160001JP

USING THIS PRODUCT IN SWITZERLAND

This product requires a Swiss billing tone filter (Lexmark part number 80D1877) to be installed on any line which receives metering pulses in Switzerland.

Utilisation de ce produit en Suisse

Cet appareil nécessite l'utilisation d'un filtre de tonalité de facturation suisse (n° de référence Lexmark : 80D1877) devant être installé sur toute ligne recevant des impulsions de comptage en Suisse.

Verwendung dieses Produkts in der Schweiz

Für dieses Produkt muss ein schweizerischer Billing Tone Filter zur Zählzeichenübertragung (Lexmark Teilenummer 80D1877) für jede Leitung installiert werden, über die in der Schweiz Zeitsteuertakte übertragen werden.

Uso del prodotto in Svizzera

Questo prodotto richiede un filtro toni Billing svizzero, (codice Lexmark 80D1877) da installare su tutte le linee che ricevono impulsi remoti in Svizzera.

Notices for wireless products

REGULATORY NOTICES FOR WIRELESS PRODUCTS

This section contains regulatory information that applies only to wireless models.

If in doubt as to whether your model is a wireless model, then see the "Wireless support" section or go to <https://support.xerox.com/>.

MODULAR COMPONENT NOTICE

Wireless models contain one of the following modular components:

AzureWave Technologies, Inc. Regulatory Type/Model Number AW-CM267NF; FCC ID:TLZ-CM267NF; IC:6100A-CM267NF

AzureWave AW-CM467-SUR; FCC ID:TLZ-CM467; IC:6100A-CM467

Lexmark Regulatory Type/Model Number LEX-M08-001; FCC ID:IYLLLEXM08001; IC:2376A-LEXM08001

To determine which modular components are installed in your particular product, refer to the labeling on your actual product.

EXPOSURE TO RADIO FREQUENCY RADIATION

The radiated output power of this device is far below the radio frequency exposure limits of the FCC and other regulatory agencies. A minimum separation of 20 cm (8 inches) must be maintained between the antenna and any persons for this device to satisfy the RF exposure requirements of the FCC and other regulatory agencies.

INNOVATION, SCIENCE AND ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT CANADA

This device complies with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada license-exempt RSS standards. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada

Cet appareil est conforme aux normes RSS exemptes de licence d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada. Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) cet appareil ne doit pas causer d'interférences et (2) il doit accepter toutes les interférences, y compris les celles qui peuvent entraîner un fonctionnement indésirable.

SINGAPORE IMDA STATEMENT

This product is approved for use in Singapore.



EUROPEAN COMMUNITY (EC) DIRECTIVES CONFORMITY

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directive 2014/53/EU on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to radio equipment. A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Manufacturer or may be obtained at <https://safety sheets.business.xerox.com/>. Compliance is indicated by the CE marking:



Restrictions

This radio equipment is restricted to indoor use only. Outdoor use is prohibited. This restriction applies to all the countries listed in the table below:



AT	BE	BG	CH	CY	CZ	DE	DK	EE
EL	ES	FI	FR	HR	HU	IE	IS	IT
LI	LT	LU	LV	MT	NL	NO	PL	PT
RO	SE	SI	SK	TR	UK (NI)			

EU and other countries statement of radio transmitter operational frequency bands and maximum RF power

This radio product transmits in either the 2.4GHz (2.412–2.472GHz in the EU) or 5GHz (5.15–5.35, 5.47–5.725GHz in the EU) bands. The maximum transmitter EIRP power output, including antenna gain, is $\leq$ 20dBm for both bands.

UNITED KINGDOM (UK) CONFORMITY

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of the Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. A declaration of conformity is available upon request from the UK Importer or may be obtained at <https://safetysheets.business.xerox.com>.

Compliance is indicated by the UKCA marking:



Restrictions or requirements in the UK

This radio equipment is restricted to indoor use only. Outdoor use is prohibited.

UK statement of radio transmitter operational frequency bands and maximum RF power

This radio product transmits in either the 2.4GHz (2.412–2.472 GHz in the UK) or 5GHz (5.15–5.35, 5.47–5.725 in the UK) bands. The maximum transmitter EIRP power output, including antenna gain, is $\leq$ 20dBm for both bands.

NOTICE TO USERS IN THAILAND

ประกาศถึงผู้ใช้ในประเทศไทย

This radiocommunication equipment has the electromagnetic field strength in compliance with the Safety Standard for the Use of Radiocommunication Equipment on Human Health announced by the National Telecommunications Commission.

เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด



เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้ ได้รับยกเว้น ไม่ต้องได้
รับใบอนุญาตให้มี ใช้ซึ่งเครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม
หรือตั้งสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมตามประกาศ กสทช.
เรื่อง เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม และสถานีวิทยุ
คมนาคมที่ได้รับยกเว้นไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาต
วิทยุคมนาคมตามพระราชบัญญัติวิทยุคมนาคม
พ.ศ. 2498



กสทช. | โทรคมนาคม
กำกับดูแลเพื่อประชาชน
Call Center 1200 (InsWรี)

Class B device notices

FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION (FCC) COMPLIANCE INFORMATION STATEMENT

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Class B limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult your point of purchase or service representative for additional suggestions.

The manufacturer is not responsible for radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Notes

To assure compliance with FCC regulations on electromagnetic interference for a Class B computing device, use a properly shielded and grounded cable such as Lexmark part number 1021231 for parallel attach or 1021294 for USB attach. Use of a substitute cable not properly shielded and grounded may result in a violation of FCC regulations.

Any questions regarding this compliance information statement should be directed to:
Responsible Party: Xerox Corporation

Address: 800 Phillips Road, Webster, NY 14580

Email: regulatory@lexmark.com

INNOVATION, SCIENCE AND ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT CANADA COMPLIANCE STATEMENT

This Class B digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Standard ICES-003.

Avis de conformité aux normes de l'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada

Cet appareil numérique de classe B est conforme aux exigences de la norme canadienne relative aux équipements pouvant causer des interférences NMB-003.

EUROPEAN COMMUNITY (EC) DIRECTIVES CONFORMITY

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2014/30/EU, 2014/35/EU, 2009/125/EC, and 2011/65/EU as amended by (EU) 2015/863 on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits, the ecodesign of energy-related products, and on the restrictions of use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment.

A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Manufacturer or may be obtained at <https://safety sheets.business.xerox.com/>.

This product satisfies the Class B limits of EN 55032 and safety requirements of EN 62368-1.

UNITED KINGDOM (UK) CONFORMITY

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of the Electromagnetic Compatibility Regulations 2016, the Electrical Equipment (Safety) Regulations 2016, the Ecodesign for Energy-Related Products and Energy Information (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2019, and the Restriction of the Use of Certain Hazardous Substances in Electrical and Electronic Equipment Regulations 2012.

A declaration of conformity is available upon request from the UK Importer or may be obtained at <https://safety sheets.business.xerox.com/>.

This product satisfies the Class B limits of BS EN 55032 and safety requirements of BS EN 62368-1.

COMMISSION REGULATION (EU) 2023/826

As part of this regulation, manufacturers are required to post information about the Off modes and Network Standby ("sleep") modes of products, including the available network connections, the power consumption in sleep mode for each connection and the default timeout to sleep mode.

To view Xerox's declarations of product sleep modes, go to <https://safety sheets.business.xerox.com/>.

Other regulatory notices

STATIC SENSITIVITY NOTICE



This symbol identifies static-sensitive parts. Do not touch the areas near these symbols without first touching a metal surface in an area away from the symbol.

To prevent damage from electrostatic discharge when performing maintenance tasks such as clearing paper jams or replacing supplies, touch any exposed metal frame of the printer before accessing or touching interior areas of the printer even if the symbol is not present.

APPLICABILITY OF REGULATION (EU) 2019/2015 AND (EU) 2019/2020

Per Commission Regulation (EU) 2019/2015 and (EU) 2019/2020, the light source contained within this product or its component is intended to be used for Image Capture or Image Projection only, and is not intended for use in other applications.

THE UK PRODUCT SECURITY AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS INFRASTRUCTURE ACT 2022 (PSTI ACT)—SUMMARY STATEMENT OF COMPLIANCE

Xerox Corporation, 800 Phillips Road Webster, NY 14580 USA, declares that this product complies with the applicable security requirements in Schedule 1 of The Product Security and Telecommunications Infrastructure (Security Requirements for Relevant Connectable Products) Regulations 2023. The defined support period for this product is a period of five (5) years post ceasing of production, unless otherwise notified to the market by Xerox Corporation.

A copy of the Statement of Compliance is available for download at the following web page: <https://safetysheets.business.xerox.com/>.

THE AUSTRALIA SECURITY STANDARD FOR CONSUMER GRADE RELEVANT PRODUCTS—SUMMARY STATEMENT OF COMPLIANCE

Xerox Corporation, 800 Phillips Road Webster, NY 14580 USA, declares that this product complies with the applicable security requirements of Part 1 of Schedule 1 of the Cyber Security (Security Standards for Smart Devices) Rules 2025. The defined support period for this product is a period of five (5) years post ceasing of production, unless otherwise notified to the market by Xerox Corporation.

A copy of the Statement of Compliance is available for download at the following web page: <https://safetysheets.business.xerox.com/>.

THAILAND NBTC TECHNICAL STANDARDS CONFORMITY STATEMENT

คำประกาศเรื่องการเป็นไปตามมาตรฐานทางเทคนิคของ กสทช. ประเทศไทย

This telecommunication equipment conforms to the technical standards or requirements of NBTC.

เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้มีความสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานหรือข้อกำหนดทางเทคนิคของ กสทช.

